

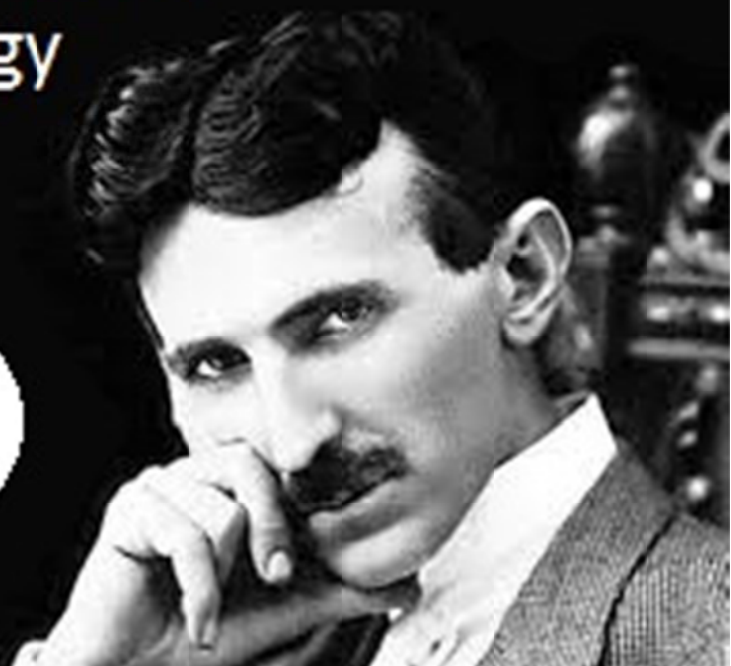
62 Tesla Patents

For the DIY Engineering Researcher

Fully Restored Tesla Patents for:

- Motors and Generators
- High Frequency Engineering
- Power Distribution
- Radiant Energy

**FREE
REPORT**



Please Enjoy These 62 Tesla Patents to Aid You in Your Research.

“Let the future tell the truth and evaluate each one according to his work and accomplishments. The present is theirs; the future for which I have really worked, is mine”

-Nikola Tesla

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

ELECTRICAL TRANSMISSION OF POWER.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 511,915, dated January 2, 1894.

Original application filed May 15, 1888, Serial No. 273,993. Divided and this application filed December 3, 1888. Serial No. 292,476. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, a subject of the Emperor of Austria-Hungary, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented a new and useful Method of Electrical Transmission of Power, of which the following is a description, this application being a division of an application filed by me on May 15, 1888, Serial No. 273,993, and for the method of operating motors contained in such application.

In former patents granted to me I have shown and described a system for the electrical transmission of power characterized by the following particulars: The motor contains independent energizing circuits and the generator has corresponding induced or current generating circuits which are connected by independent line circuits with those of the motor. The disposition of the generator coils is such that the currents developed in the circuits including them will have a certain difference of phase, for example, that the maximum periods of the currents generated in one of its circuits coincide with the minimum periods of the currents produced in the other circuit, and the corresponding energizing circuits of the motor are so arranged that the two currents co-operate to effect a progressive shifting of the magnetic poles or the points of maximum magnetic effect in the motor in consequence of which a rotation of its movable element is maintained.

My present invention involves this system of electrical power transmission; its distinguishing characteristic being the mode or method of generating or producing the alternating currents which run or operate the motor.

This invention is carried out in the following way: Instead of generating directly the alternating currents in each of the circuits which include the energizing coils of the motor, as by means of the induced coils of a magneto electric machine, I generate or produce an alternating current in but one of such circuits directly and by means of such current induce the proper current in the other energizing motor circuit. When the inde-

pendent currents are both produced in the magneto machine it will be observed that the two line or transmitting circuits will of necessity extend the entire distance from the generator to the motor, but that by the method herein provided, one line circuit may be dispensed with as one circuit or that from the generator may be brought into the proper inductive relation to the other at any desired point.

The following is illustrative of the manner in which I carry out this invention: I employ as a motor, for example, a subdivided annular field magnet within which is mounted a suitable armature, such as a cylinder or disk wound with two coils at right angles, each of which is closed upon itself. On opposite sides of the annular field magnet I wind two coils of insulated wire of a size adapted to carry the current from the generator. Over these coils or close to them in any of the well understood ways I wind secondary coils. I also wind on the annular field magnet midway between the first mentioned coils a pair of coils which I connect up in circuit with the secondary coils. The last pair of coils I make of finer wire than the main or line and secondary coils and with a greater number of convolutions that they may have a greater relative magnetizing and retarding effect than either of the others. By connecting up the main coils in circuit with a generator of alternating currents the armature of the motor will be rotated. It is probable that this action is explained by the following theory: A current impulse on the line passing through the main coils establishes the magnetic poles of the annular field magnets at points midway between said coils. But this impulse produces in the secondary coils a current which, circulating through the second pair of energizing coils tends to establish the poles at points ninety degrees removed from their first position with the result of producing a movement or shifting of the poles in obedience to the combined magnetizing effect of the two sets of coils. This shifting continued by each successive current impulse establishes what may be termed a rotary effort and operates to maintain the armature in rotation.

In the drawings annexed I have shown in Figure 1 an alternating current generator connected with a motor, shown diagrammatically and constructed in accordance with my invention, and in Fig. 2 a diagram of a modified form of motor.

A designates any ordinary form of alternating current generator and B B the line wires for connecting the same with the motor.

C is the annular field magnet of the motor.

D D are two main coils wound on opposite sides of the ring or annular field and connected up with the line, and having a tendency to magnetize the ring C with opposite poles midway between the two coils.

E E are two other magnetizing coils wound midway between coils D D, but having a stronger magnetizing influence for a current of given strength than coils D D.

F F are the secondary coils which are associated with the main coils D D. They are in circuits which include the coils E E respectively, the connections being made in such order that currents induced in coils F and circulating in coils E will act in opposition to those in coils D in so far only as the location of the magnetic poles in the ring C is concerned.

The armature may be of any of the forms used by me in my alternating current system and is shown as wound with two closed coils G H at right angles to each other.

In order to prolong the magnetizing effect of the induced currents in producing a shifting of the poles, I have carried the principle of the construction exhibited in Fig. 1 farther, thereby obtaining a stronger and better rotary effect.

Referring to Fig. 2, C is an annular field magnet having three pairs or oppositely located sets of polar projections K L M. Upon one pair of these projections, as K, the main energizing coils D are wound. Over these are wound the secondary coils E. On the next polar projections L L are wound the second energizing coils F which are in circuit with coils E. Tertiary induced coils E' are then wound over the coils F and on the remaining polar projections M the third energizing coils F' are wound and connected up in the circuit of the tertiary coils E'. The cylindrical or disk armature core N in this motor has polar projections wound with coils O forming closed circuits. My object in constructing the motor in this way is to effect more perfectly a shifting of the points of maximum magnetic effect. For assuming the

operation of the motor to be due to the action above set forth—the first effect of a current impulse in this motor will be to magnetize the pole pieces K K, but the current thereby induced in coils E magnetizes the pole pieces L and the current induced in turn in coils E' magnetizes the pole pieces M. The pole pieces are not magnetized, at least to their full extent, simultaneously by this means, but there is enough of a retardation or delay to produce a rotary effect or influence upon the armature. The application of this principle is not limited to the special forms of motor herein shown, as any of the double circuit alternating current motors invented by me and described in former Letters Patent to me may be adapted to the same purpose. This method or mode of producing the currents in the independent energizing circuits of the motor may be carried out in various ways, and it is not material to the invention broadly considered, what devices be employed in effecting the result, viz: the induction from or by the current from the generator or source, of the current or currents which co-operate therewith in producing the rotation of the motor.

I would state that in using the word generator, I mean either a primary generator, such as a magneto machine, or a secondary generator, such as an electrical converter, and in claiming protection for inducing the current in one set of energizing coils by the current which circulates in another, I would be understood as including the induction of the secondary current from the current from the same source as that which traverses the motor coils whether it be flowing in the same branch or part of the circuit or not.

What I claim is—

1. The method of operating electro-magnetic motors having independent energizing circuits, as herein described, which consists in passing an alternating current through one of the energizing circuits and inducing by such current the current in the other energizing circuit of the motor, as set forth.

2. The method of operating electro-magnetic motors having independent energizing circuits as herein described, which consists in developing an alternating current in one of said energizing circuits and inducing thereby currents in the other energizing circuit or circuits, as herein set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

GEO. N. MONRO,
EDWARD T. EVANS.

(No Model.)

N. TESLA.
ELECTRICAL TRANSMISSION OF POWER.

No. 511,915.

Patented Jan. 2, 1894.

Fig. 1

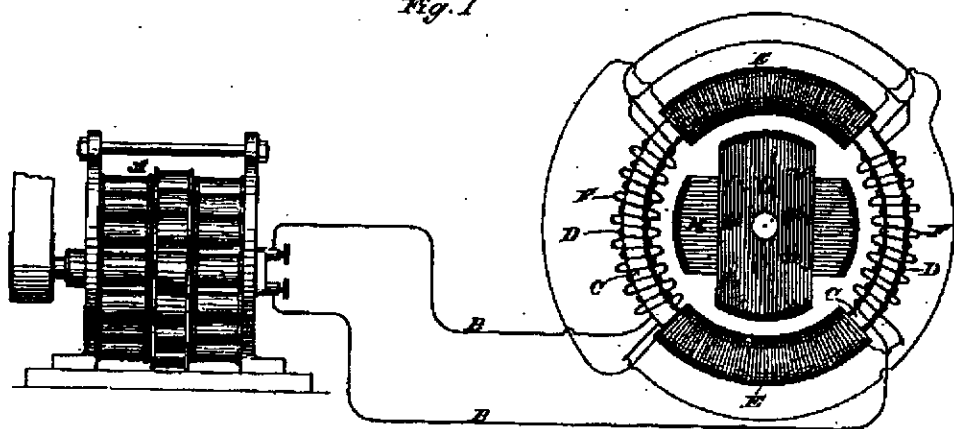
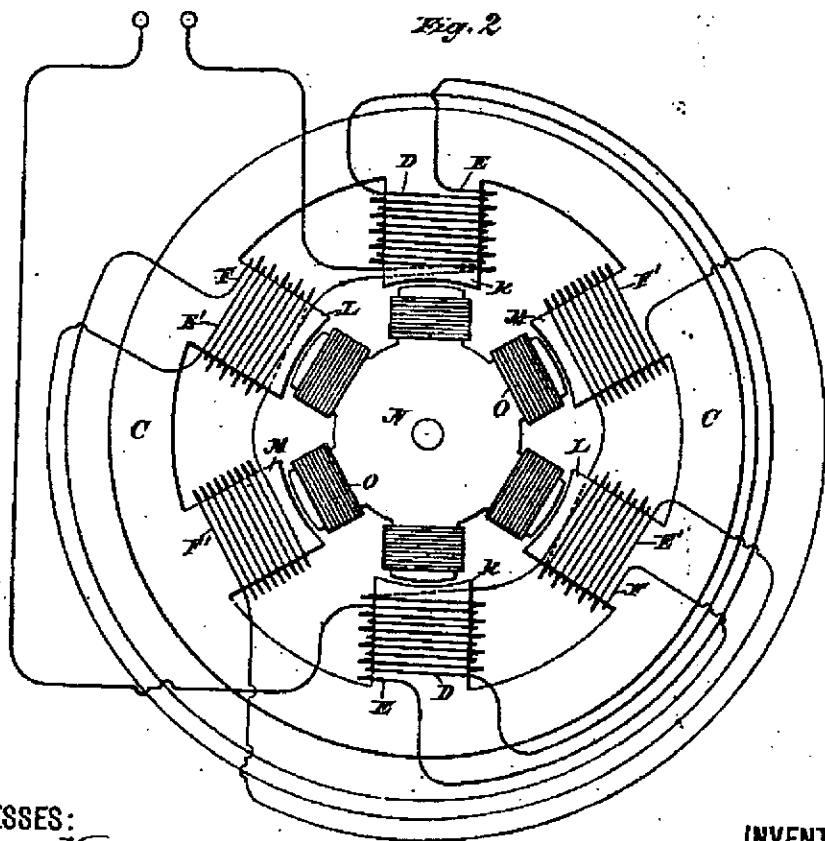


Fig. 2



WITNESSES:

Raphael Heller
W. F. Newbury

INVENTOR

Nikola Tesla

BY

Duncan, Curtis & Page

ATTORNEYS.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

ELECTRICAL CONDUCTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 514,167, dated February 6, 1894.

Application filed January 2, 1892. Serial No. 416,773. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a citizen of the United States, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Line Conductors for Systems of Electrical Distribution, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

In any system of electrical transmission or distribution in which currents of excessively high potential are employed, and more particularly, when the frequency is high, there is a dissipation of energy from the conductor or conductors of the line, due to the electrification of the atmosphere or other surrounding medium, or other causes.

Heretofore it has been usual, in order to prevent loss by dissipation or interference by induction on line conductors, to insulate the same and inclose them in a continuous conducting sheathing or cover which has been connected with the ground by a good conducting path.

The object of my invention is to prevent loss on line conductors in a system of electrical transmission and distribution, more particularly such as that described by me in patent of June 23, 1891, No. 454,622, but in any other system in which alternating or, generally speaking, varying currents of excessively high potential are employed.

I have found that in these systems the use of a conducting sheath or screen around the line conductors and well grounded, or even brought into proximity to external conductors or large bodies, is attended by an actual and generally a serious loss of energy. I therefore maintain the sheath either entirely isolated or connected directly or inductively to the ground through a path which will practically prevent the passage of currents over it. I have found that when a continuous insulating sheath or screen is employed, there is greater liability to loss of energy by inductive action, for unless the sheath or screen be considerably shorter than the current waves passing in the conductor, electromotive forces will be set up between different points in the sheath, which will result in the

passage between such points of induced currents. I, therefore, divide up the sheath or screen into short lengths, very much shorter than the wave lengths of the current used, so that the grounding of any one of such lengths or the approach thereto of a large body will result in an inappreciable loss, or at most a small local draining of the energy, while the tendency of currents to flow between different points in the sheath is effectually overcome. The function of the sheath as a static screen for preventing the dissipation of the electric energy, however, requires for its complete effectiveness an uninterrupted conducting partition or screen around the conductor. I attain this respect in the case of a sectional screen, by causing the ends of the insulated divisions or sections of the same to overlap, interposing a suitable insulating material between the overlapping portions. By means of a conductor or conductors thus protected, I may transmit with slight loss and to great distances currents of very high potential and extremely high frequency.

The invention is illustrated in the accompanying drawings in which—

Figure 1 illustrates portions of the conductor with the earth connections above described. Fig. 2 is a sectional view of a portion of the conductor on an enlarged scale.

A is the central wire or conductor that carries the current.

B is an insulating coating.

C is a conducting sheathing or screen, which may be externally insulated, if so desired. This sheathing is divided up, as shown, into short lengths or sections, and the end of one section overlaps or telescopes with the end of the adjacent sections but is insulated therefrom by the material D.

It is well known that a static screen, to be entirely effective as such, should have a ground connection, but it has been usual in such cases to provide a good electrical connection from the screen to earth. When a current of excessively high potential, however, is used, or when the frequency of the current is very high, such a connection is impracticable on account of the loss which follows. In such cases, therefore, I obtain the

beneficial results of an earth connection while preventing the generally serious loss that would occur in the use of such currents, by providing between the sheath and the ground a path P of very high ohmic resistance or one containing a self-induction coil S properly determined with respect to the existing conditions so that it will effect the described result, or a condenser of very small capacity as shown at R. In such cases the sheathing or screen for practical purposes may be regarded as isolated from the ground, since by the character of the connection employed no appreciable loss results from the passage of current from the sheath to the ground.

No particular plan of construction need be followed in making up this conductor, and no special materials of the several kinds named need be used; the general construction and character of the conductor, apart from the particular features herein described, being entirely well understood by those skilled in the art.

What I claim is—

1. A conductor for electric circuits, composed of a wire for carrying the current, an insulated coating or covering and a surrounding conducting sheath or screen divided into insulated sections, as set forth.

2. A conductor for electric circuits, composed of a wire for carrying the current, a coating or covering of insulating material and a surrounding conducting sheath or screen divided into insulated sections, the ends of which overlap, as set forth.

3. The combination of a wire or conductor for conveying electric currents, an insulated coating or covering therefor, a conducting sheath or screen surrounding the insulating coating and a connection between said sheathing and the ground containing a condenser of very small capacity or its equivalent.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

ERNEST HOPKINSON,

PARKER W. PAGE.

(No Model.)

N. TESLA.
ELECTRICAL CONDUCTOR.

No. 514,167.

Patented Feb. 6, 1894.

Fig. 1

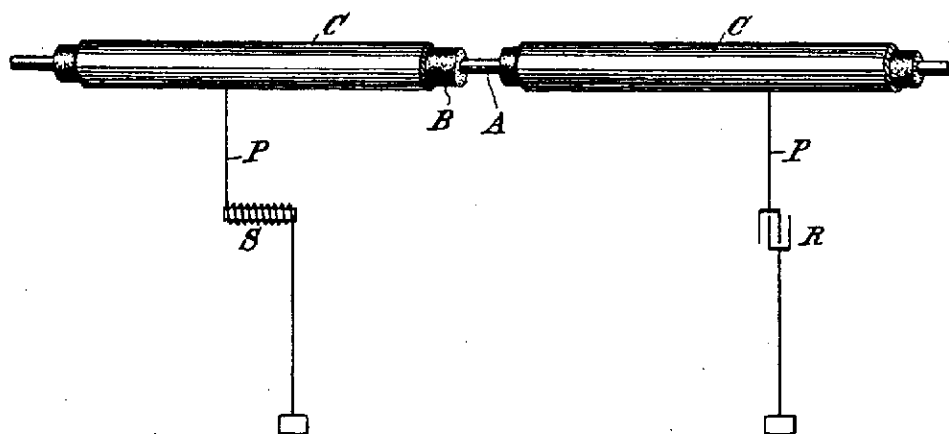
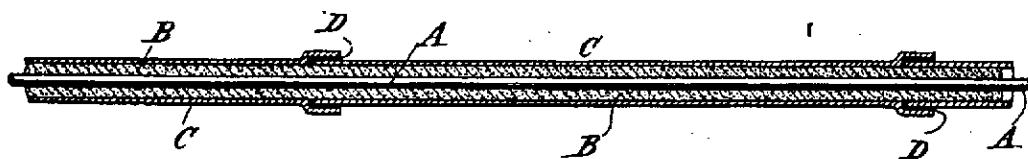


Fig. 2



Witnesses:

Kaptsail Vetter
Ernest Hopkinson

Inventor

Nikola Tesla

by Duncan Hodge
Attorneys

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

MEANS FOR GENERATING ELECTRIC CURRENTS.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 514,168, dated February 6, 1894.

Application filed August 2, 1893. Serial No. 482,194. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a citizen of the United States, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Means for Generating Electric Currents, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

The invention, subject of my present application, is an improvement applicable more especially to the method or system of generating and utilizing electrical energy, heretofore discovered by me, and more fully set forth in Letters Patent No. 454,622, of June 23, 1891, and No. 462,418, of November 3, 1891, and which involves the maintenance of an intermittent or oscillatory discharge of a condenser or circuit of suitable capacity into a working circuit containing translating devices. In systems of this character when the high frequency of the currents employed is due to the action of a disruptive or intermittent discharge across an air gap or break at some point of the circuit, I have found it to be of advantage not only to break up or destroy the least tendency to continuity of the arc or discharge, but also to control the period of the re-establishment of the same, and from investigations made by me with this object in view I have found that greatly improved results are secured by causing the discharge to take place in and through an insulating liquid, such as oil, and instead of allowing the terminal points of the break to remain at a uniform distance from each other, to vary such distance by bringing them periodically in actual contact or sufficiently near to establish the discharge and then separating them, or what is the equivalent of this, throwing in and out of the gap or break a conducting bridge at predetermined intervals. To obtain the best results, moreover, I find it essential to maintain at the point of discharge a flow of the insulating medium, or, in general, such a circulation of the same as will constantly operate to cut off or break up the discharge as fast as it is established. The accomplishment of this latter result involves the employment of some mechanism for maintaining the flow or circulation of the insulating medium past the points of discharge, and

I take advantage of the presence of such mechanism to accomplish a further and beneficial result which is the maintenance of a flow or circulation of the insulating liquid in which I immerse the converter coils used for raising the potential of the current, and also the condenser plates when such are required and used. By this means the insulating liquid surrounding the said coils and plates may be prevented from heating, either by its circulation alone or by the application to it while in motion of a cooling medium, and its requisite qualities preserved for an indefinite time.

Broadly considered the plan contemplated is entirely independent of the special means for carrying it into execution, but in illustration of the preferred manner in which the invention is or may be carried out, I now refer to the drawings which are hereto annexed.

Figure 1 is a diagram of the system and devices employed by me. Fig. 2 is a sectional view of a detail of mechanism.

G represents an electric generator, as for instance, an ordinary alternator, in the circuit of which is the primary P of a transformer, of which S represents the secondary, which is usually of much longer and finer wire than the primary. To the secondary circuit, if it have not of itself sufficient capacity for the purpose herein contemplated, are connected the plates of a condenser C, and at any point in said circuit is a break or gap at which occurs the disruptive discharge. In a portion of the secondary circuit, preferably in series with the condenser, as shown in the drawings, is a primary coil P' with which is associated a secondary S', which latter constitutes the ultimate source of currents for a working circuit D in which or with which are connected translating devices E. Under the conditions assumed it will be understood that by the oscillation or change caused by the action of the discharge, the condenser is charged and discharged setting up in the primary P' an electrical disturbance of enormous frequency, as has been explained in my patent referred to, and as is now well understood. Instead of employing two terminals at a fixed distance, however, for the gap across which the discharge takes place, I vary the distance between them, or what is practically the same

thing, I interpose between said terminals a conductor or a series of conductors successively by means of which the effective distance or length of the path of discharge is or may be varied at will. This I accomplish in the following manner:

A is a pipe or tube that leads into a tank B. To the end of this tube is secured an extension F of insulating material and the two terminals G' G' are caused to project through the sides of the same, as indicated in Fig. 2. Within the extension I secure two cross-bars H which afford bearings for the spindle of a small metallic turbine I, the blades of which, as the turbine revolves, bridge the space between the two terminals, nearly or quite touching the terminals in their movement. If now the tank B be filled with oil and the latter is drawn off or permitted to flow off through the tube A, the turbine will be rotated by the flow, the rate of rotation being dependent upon the rate of flow. By this means the arc or discharge is periodically established through a flow of oil, which secures in the most satisfactory manner the conditions best adapted for practical results.

The further objects of the invention are secured by placing the transformer P' S' in the body of oil in the tank B, and the condenser in a closed receptacle L. Then in order to maintain a circulation of the oil and to provide for the requisite flow which rotates the turbine, I connect the tank B with the condenser box L by means of the pipe A. I also run a pipe M from the box L to a small rotary pump N, and another pipe O from the latter back to the tank B.

When necessary or desirable I may insert in the pipe O a coil R, which is contained in a jacket T through which a cooling medium is passed.

The flow of oil is regulated by the speed at which the pump N is driven, and by this means the period of re-establishment of the arc is controlled.

Having now described my invention and the best means of which I am aware in which the same is or may be carried into effect, what I claim is—

1. In an electric system of the kind de-

scribed, the combination with the points or terminals between which occurs the intermittent or oscillating discharge of means for maintaining between said points and in the path of the discharge a flow of insulating liquid, as set forth.

2. In an electrical system of the kind described, the combination with a transformer, and the points or terminals between which occurs the intermittent or oscillating discharge, of a body of insulating liquid surrounding the same, and means for maintaining a flow or circulation of the same, as set forth.

3. In an electrical system of the kind described, the combination with a transformer and the points or terminals between which occurs the intermittent or oscillating discharge, of receptacles inclosing the same and containing oil and means for maintaining a flow of the oil through said receptacles and around the devices therein, as set forth.

4. In an electrical system of the kind described, the combination with the points or terminals between which occurs the intermittent or oscillating discharge, of a means for maintaining a flow of insulating liquid between the discharge points, and means for varying the length of the path of discharge through such fluid, dependent for operation upon the flow of the same, as set forth.

5. The combination with discharge points immersed in oil, of means for periodically varying the length of the path of discharge between them, as described.

6. The combination with discharge points immersed in oil, of a conductor adapted to periodically bridge the space between such points, as set forth.

7. The combination with discharge points immersed in oil, means for causing a flow of the oil between said points and a metallic turbine mounted between the points and adapted by the rotation produced by the flowing oil to bridge with its vanes or blades the space between the said points.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

ROBT. F. GAYLORD,
PARKER W. PAGE.

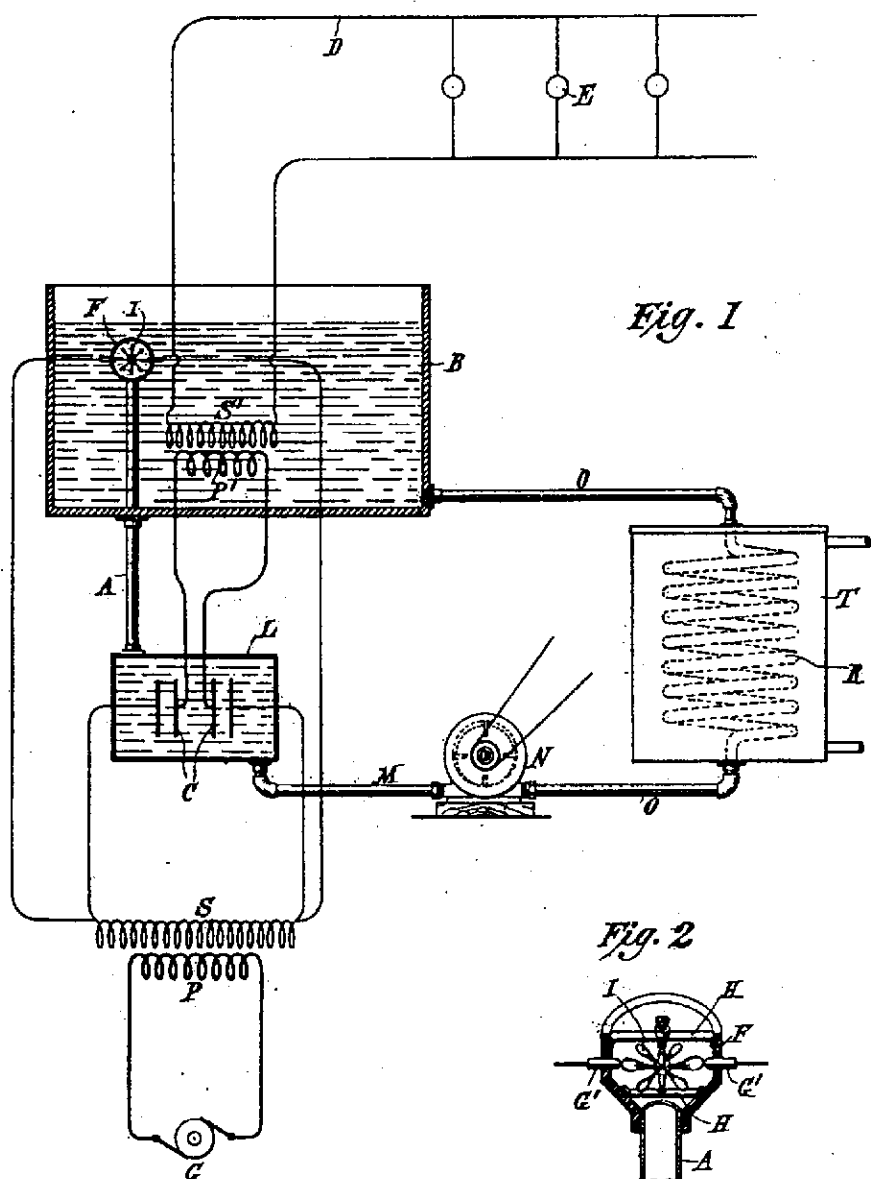
(No Model.)

N. TESLA.

MEANS FOR GENERATING ELECTRIC CURRENTS.

No. 514,168.

Patented Feb. 6, 1894.



Witnesses
Raphael Netter
James H. Galloway

Inventor
Nikola Tesla
By his Attorneys
Duncan & Page

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

ELECTROMAGNETIC MOTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 524,426, dated August 14, 1894.

Application filed October 20, 1888. Serial No. 288,677. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria-Hungary, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, and a resident of New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Electromagnetic Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

In previous patents of the United States notably in those numbered 381,968 and 382,280, dated May 1, 1888, I have shown and described a system of transmitting power by means of electro-magnetic generators and motors. The distinguishing feature of this system was shown to be the progressive movement or shifting of the magnetic poles or points of maximum attraction of a motor, due to the action or effect of alternating currents passed through independent energizing circuits in the motor. To secure this result the two currents must have different phases, the best result being obtained when the two currents differ by a quarter phase, or in other words when the periods of maximum potential of one current coincide with the minimum periods of the other, and conversely. I have also discovered that a single alternating current may be utilized to produce a progression or shifting of the magnetic poles of a motor if the field magnets of the same be of different magnetic susceptibility in different parts so that the magnetic phases of the same will differ. That is to say, if the field magnets are of such character that their different portions will be differently magnetized—in respect to time—by the same current impulse, and so disposed that the difference of magnetic phase will maintain a rotary or progressive shifting of the points of maximum magnetic effect. This may be accomplished in various ways, as may best be explained by reference to the accompanying drawings, in which—

Figure 1 is a diagrammatic view of a motor constructed in accordance with my invention and a generator connected therewith. Fig. 2, is an end view of a modified form of armature for said motor.

Let A designate an ordinary type of alternating current generator in the circuit of which is to be connected a motor or motors, according to my present invention. I construct such motor or motors in the following manner: On a shaft α I mount an armature C, which for convenience of illustration is presumed to be a soft iron plate or disk with two cut-away portions or a bar with rounded ends. Around this armature I place say four poles, D D E E, of soft iron, and, as is usual in all alternating current machines, built up of insulated plates or sections to prevent the heating that would otherwise occur. Each of these cores is surrounded by an energizing coil F and all of these coils are connected to the main circuit from the generator A in series or in any other manner to receive simultaneously the current impulses delivered by the generator. If the cores are all of the same shape or mass, or composition, and the coils are all wound in the same or alternately opposite directions, no rotation would be produced by the passage through the coils of a current, whether alternating or direct, since the attractive forces of the poles upon the soft iron armature would be developed simultaneously and would counterbalance or neutralize each other. But to secure rotation I make, for example, the cores D D short with their coils close to their inner ends and the cores E E long, with their coils removed from the inner ends. By this means I secure a difference in the magnetic phases which the poles exhibit, for while the short cores will respond to the magnetizing effect of an alternation or impulse of current in the coils in a certain time, a greater interval of time will elapse before the same magnetic intensity will be developed at the ends of the longer cores, and in practice I have found that this difference in phase may be utilized to produce the rotation of the armature. The effect being virtually to produce a shifting of the points of maximum magnetic effect similar to that which takes place when two alternating energizing currents, differing in phase are used, as explained in the patents above referred to. The essential difference being that in my patented system the rotation is of-

fects by a time difference of electrical phase, while in the present case it is due to a difference in magnetic phases.

The same or similar results are obtainable by other means. For example, to secure the requisite difference of magnetic phase, I may make two of the cores as E E of greater mass than cores D D, whereby their period of saturation will be greater than of cores D D, or I may make the cores E E of hard iron or steel and the cores D D of soft iron, in which case the cores E E offering greater resistance to magnetic changes, will not exhibit their magnetism as soon after the passage of a current as the cores D D. Or if the cores of one set of poles, as D, D, be removed, the attractive force of the coils or solenoids would be exerted instantly while the magnetic cores E E would lag or have a different phase.

The special form of the motor is largely a matter of choice, nor is the invention limited to the number of poles nor to the special form of armature shown. For example, I may employ such an armature as that shown in Fig. 2, which is a cylinder or disk C wound with coils G closed upon themselves. This adds materially to the efficiency of the motor for the reason that currents are induced in the closed coils and magnetize the iron cylinder in a manner similar to that described in my Patent No. 383,279 of May 1, 1888.

Without limiting myself, therefore, in the particulars hereinbefore specified, what I claim as my invention is—

1. In an alternating current motor the combination with energizing coils adapted to be connected with an external circuit of cores of different magnetic susceptibility so as to exhibit differences of magnetic phase under the

influence of an energizing current, as herein set forth.

2. The combination in an alternating current motor with a rotary armature of magnetic poles, and coils adapted to be connected with the external circuit surrounding the same, the said cores being constructed of different size or material whereby their magnetic phase will differ in time as set forth.

3. The combination in an electro magnetic motor with a rotary armature of magnetic cores of different length or mass and energizing coils surrounding the same and adapted to be connected with a single source of alternating currents, as set forth.

4. The combination in an electro magnetic motor with a rotary armature of short magnetic cores as D D and long magnetic cores as E E, and energizing coils surrounding the same, those on the cores E E being placed at a distance from the inner ends of the said cores, as herein set forth.

5. The combination in an electro-magnetic motor with energizing coils adapted to be connected with a source of alternating currents, and cores of different magnetic susceptibility, of an armature wound with coils closed upon themselves, as herein set forth.

6. The combination in an electro magnetic motor with a rotary armature of field cores of different magnetic susceptibility and energizing coils thereon connected in series and adapted to be connected with a source of alternating currents, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

GEO. N. MONRO,
A. PATTERSON.

(No Model.)

N. TESLA.
ELECTROMAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 524,426.

Patented Aug. 14, 1894.

Fig. 1

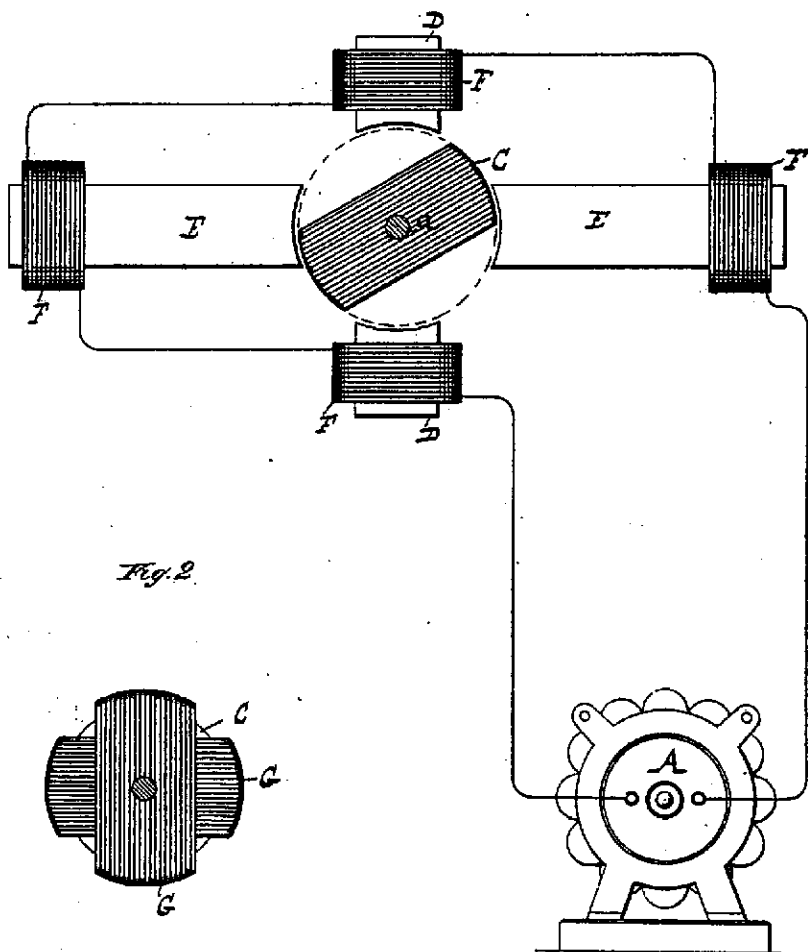
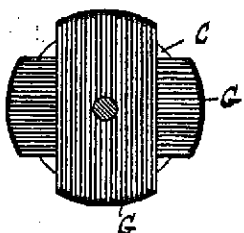


Fig. 2



WITNESSES:

Frank C. Hartley
Frank B. Mumfory.

Nikola Tesla INVENTOR
BY
Duncan, Curtis & Page
ATTORNEYS.

(No Model.)

N. TESLA.
ALTERNATING MOTOR.

No. 555,190.

Patented Feb. 25, 1896.

Fig. 1

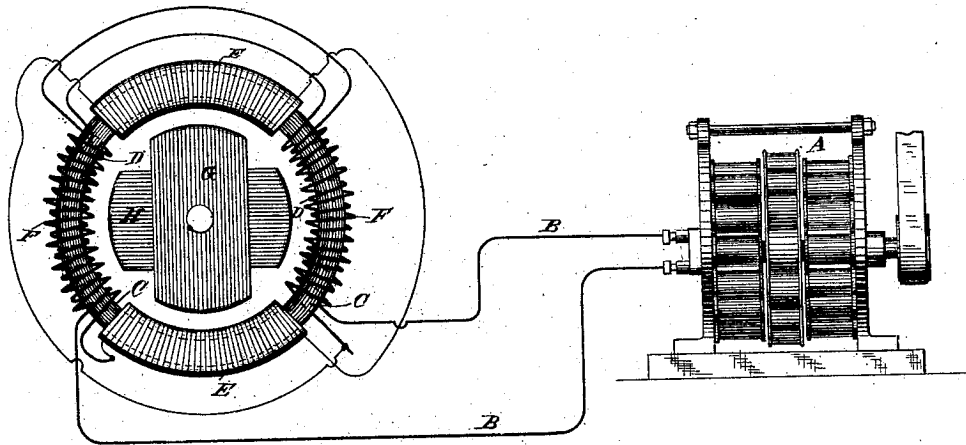
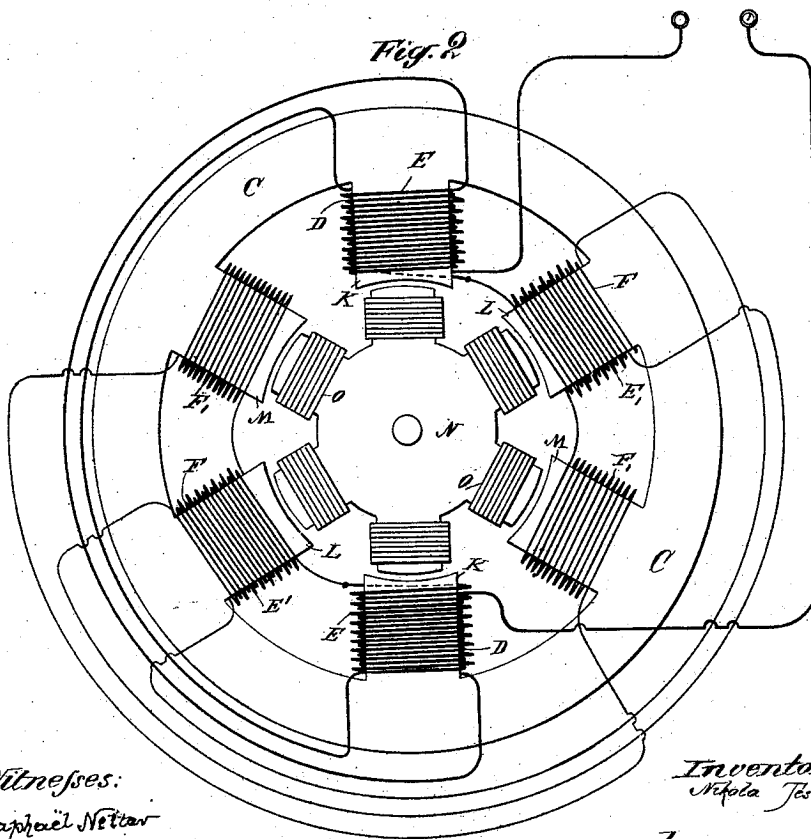


Fig. 2



Witnesses:
Raphael Netter
Robert F. Gaylord

Inventor
Nikola Tesla
by
Duncan, Curtis & Page
Attorneys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

ALTERNATING MOTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 555,190, dated February 25, 1896.

Application filed May 15, 1888. Serial No. 273,993. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a citizen of the United States, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Electromagnetic Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

10 In former patents granted to me—notably, Patents Nos. 381,968 and 382,280, of May 1, 1888—I have shown and described a system for the electrical transmission of power characterized by the following particulars: The
15 motor contains independent energizing-circuits and the generator has corresponding induced or current-generating circuits which are connected by independent line-circuits with those of the motor, the said circuits being
20 independent in the sense only that the distinctive relations of the currents produced, transmitted and utilized in each are preserved to produce their proper conjoint effect. The disposition of the generator coils or circuits
25 is such that the currents developed therein and transmitted therefrom to the motor will have a certain difference of phase—for example, so that the maximum periods of the currents generated in one of such circuits coincide with the minimum periods of the currents produced in the other circuit, and the corresponding energizing-circuits of the motor are so arranged that the two currents co-
30 operate to effect a progressive shifting of the magnetic poles or the points of maximum magnetic effect in the motor, in consequence of which a rotation of its movable element is maintained.

My present invention pertains to this system of electrical transmission of power, its novel and distinguishing feature, however, being a special means for generating or producing in the two motor-circuits the alternating current necessary for the operation of
45 the motor, for while in the instances referred to I produce both currents directly by a magneto-electric machine in the present instance I generate or produce in but one of the circuits of the motor directly an alternating current, and by means of such current induce
50 in the other energizing-motor circuit the other

alternating current necessary for its operation.

When the two currents are both produced in the magneto-electric machine, it will be observed that the two line or transmitting circuits will of necessity extend the entire distance from the generator to the motor; but by the plan herein provided one line-circuit only is required, as the circuit from the generator and the other are brought into inductive relation to each other in the motor itself.

The following is illustrative of a means by which I secure this result in accordance with my present invention: I employ as a motor,
65 for example, a subdivided annular field-magnet within which is mounted a suitable armature, as a cylinder or disk, wound with two coils at right angles, each of which forms a closed circuit. On opposite sides of the annular field-magnet I wind two coils of insulated wire of a size adapted to carry the current from the generator. Over these coils, or close to them, in any of the well-understood ways, I wind secondary coils. I also wind on
70 the annular field-magnet midway between the first-mentioned coils a pair of coils which I connect up in circuit with the secondary coils.

The last pair of coils I make of finer wire than the main or line and secondary coils, and with a greater number of convolutions, that they may have a greater relative magnetizing effect than either of the others.

By connecting up the main coils in circuit
85 with a generator of alternating currents, the armature of the motor will be rotated. I have assumed that this action is explained by the following theory: A current-impulse on the line passing through the main coils establishes
90 the magnetic poles of the annular field-magnet at points midway between said coils; but this impulse produces in the secondary coils a current differing in phase from the first, which, circulating through the second pair of energizing-coils, tends to establish the pole at
95 points ninety degrees removed from their first position, with the result of producing a movement or shifting of the poles in obedience to the combined magnetizing effect of the two
100 sets of coils. This shifting, continued by each successive current-impulse, establishes what

may be termed a "rotary effort," and operates to maintain the armature in rotation.

In the drawings annexed I have shown, in Figure 1, an alternating-current generator 5 connected with a motor shown diagrammatically and constructed in accordance with my invention, and in Fig. 2 a diagram of a modified form of motor.

A designates any ordinary form of alternating-current generator, and B B the line-wires for connecting the same with the motor.

C is the annular field-magnet of the motor.

D D are two main coils wound on opposite sides of the ring or annular field and connected up with the line and having a tendency to magnify the ring C with opposite poles midway between the two coils.

E E are two other magnetizing-coils wound midway between the coils D D, but having a stronger magnetizing influence for a current of given strength than coils D D.

F F are the secondary coils, which are associated with the main coils D D. They are in circuits which include the coils E E, respectively, the connections being made in such order that currents induced in coils F and circulating in coils E will act in opposition to those in coils E in so far only as the location of the magnetic poles in the ring C is concerned.

The armature may be of any of the forms used by me in my alternating-current system, and is shown as wound with two closed coils G H at right angles to each other.

In order to prolong the magnetizing effect of the induced currents in producing a shifting of the poles, I have carried the principle of the construction exhibited in Fig. 1 further, thereby obtaining a stronger and better rotary effect.

Referring to Fig. 2, C is an annular field-magnet having three pairs or oppositely-located sets of polar projections K L M. Upon one pair of these projections, as K, the main energizing-coils D are wound. Over these are wound the secondary coils E. On the next polar projections L L are wound the second energizing-coils F, which are in circuit with coils E. Tertiary-induced coils E' are then wound over the coils F, and on the remaining polar projections M the third energizing-coils F' are wound and connected up in the circuit of the tertiary coils E'.

The cylindrical or disk armature core N in this motor has polar projections wound with coils O, forming closed circuits. My object in constructing the motor in this way is to effect more perfectly the shifting of the points of maximum magnetic effect. For, assuming the operation of the motor to be due to the action above set forth, the first effect of a current-impulse in this motor will be to magnetize the pole-pieces K K; but the current thereby induced in coils E magnetizes the pole-pieces L, and the current induced in turn in coils E' magnetizes the pole-pieces M. The pole-pieces are not magnetized, at least to

their full extent, simultaneously by this means; but there is enough of a retardation or delay to produce a rotary effect or influence upon the armature. The application of this principle is not limited to the special forms of motor herein shown, as any of the double-circuit alternating-current motors invented by me and described in former Letters Patent to me may be adapted to the same purpose.

This invention, moreover, is not limited to the specific means herein shown for inducing in one energizing-circuit of the motor the currents necessary for co-operating with the primary current of the generator for producing the progressive shifting of the poles or points of maximum magnetic effect.

I believe that I am the first to produce any kind of a motor adapted to be operated by alternating currents and characterized by any arrangement of independent circuits brought into inductive relation so as to produce a rotary effort or effect due to the conjoint action of alternating currents from a source of supply in one of the motor-circuits and alternating currents induced by the first-named currents in the other circuit, and this without reference to the specific character or arrangement of the said two circuits in the motor.

What I therefore claim as my invention is—

1. In an electromagnetic motor, the combination of independent energizing-circuits, one adapted to be connected with a source of alternating current, the other arranged in inductive relation to the said first circuit whereby the motor will be operated by the resultant action of the two circuits, as set forth.

2. The combination in an electromagnetic motor, with an alternating coil or conductor and a closed-circuit conductor in inductive relation thereto, of an armature mounted so as to be within the field produced by the coil and closed conductor, as set forth.

3. The combination in an electromagnetic motor, with energizing-coils adapted to be connected with the generator of induced coils and independent energizing-coils in circuit therewith and arranged to produce a shifting movement of the points of maximum magnetic effect of the motor, as set forth.

4. The combination in an electromagnetic motor of a series of independent energizing-coils or sets of coils and induced coils wound on all the energizing-coils or sets of coils but the last of the series, the first energizing-coil or set of coils being included in circuit with a generator and each succeeding energizing-coil or set of coils being in circuit with the induced coils of the next preceding energizing-coils of the series.

5. In a system for the electrical transmission of power the combination of an alternating-current generator, a motor with an energizing coil or coils connected with the generator, secondary coils in inductive relation to said energizing-coils, and energizing-coils in circuit therewith arranged in substantially

the manner set forth to produce a movement or rotation of the points of maximum magnetic effect of the motor, as set forth.

5 6. In an electromagnetic motor the combination of independent energizing-circuits, one for connection with a source of alternating currents, the other in inductive relation to the first, whereby a rotary movement or projection of the field-poles will be produced by the

conjoint action of the two and an armature 10 mounted within the influence of the field produced by the energizing-circuits and containing closed coils or circuits, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

ROBT. F. GAYLORD,
FRANK E. HARTLEY.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING ELECTRIC CURRENTS OF HIGH FREQUENCY AND POTENTIAL.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 568,176, dated September 22, 1896.

Application filed April 22, 1896. Serial No. 588,534. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a citizen of the United States, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Apparatus for the Production of Electric Currents of High Frequency and Potential, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

The invention which forms the subject of my present application is embodied in an improvement on an electrical apparatus invented by me and described in prior Letters Patent, notably in United States Patents No. 462,418, dated November 3, 1891, and No. 454,622, dated June 23, 1891. This apparatus was devised for the purpose of converting and supplying electrical energy in a form suited for the production of certain novel electrical phenomena which require currents of higher frequency and potential than can readily or even possibly be developed by generators of the ordinary types or by such mechanical appliances as were theretofore known. The apparatus, as a whole, involves means for utilizing the intermittent or oscillating discharge of the accumulated electrical energy of a condenser or a circuit possessing capacity in what may be designated the "working" circuit, or that which contains the translating devices or those which are operated by such currents.

The object of my present improvements is to provide a simple, compact, and effective apparatus for producing these effects, but adapted more particularly for direct application to and use with existing circuits carrying direct currents, such as the ordinary municipal incandescent-lighting circuits. The way in which I accomplish this, so as to meet the requirements of practical and economical operation under the conditions present, will be understood from a general description of the apparatus which I have devised. In any given circuit, which for present purposes may be considered as conveying direct currents or those of substantially the character of direct or continuous currents and which for general purposes of illustration may be assumed to be a branch or derived circuit across the mains from any ordinary source, I inter-

pose a device or devices in the nature of a choking-coil in order to give to the circuit a high self-induction. I also provide a circuit-controller of any proper character that may be operated to make and break said circuit. Around the break or point of interruption I place a condenser or condensers to store the energy of the discharge-current, and in a local circuit and in series with such condenser I place the primary of a transformer, the secondary of which then becomes the source of the currents of high frequency. It will be apparent from a consideration of the conditions involved that were the condenser to be directly charged by the current from the source and then discharged into the working circuit a very large capacity would ordinarily be required, but by the above arrangement the current of high electromotive force which is induced at each break of the main circuit furnishes the proper current for charging the condenser, which may therefore be small and inexpensive. Moreover, it will be observed that since the self-induction of the circuit through which the condenser discharges, as well as the capacity of the condenser itself, may be given practically any desired value, the frequency of the discharge-current may be adjusted at will.

The object sought in this invention may be realized by specifically different arrangements of apparatus, but in the drawings hereto annexed I have illustrated forms which are typical of the best and most practicable means for carrying out the invention of which I am at present aware.

Figure 1 is a diagrammatic illustration of the apparatus, and Fig. 2 a modification of the same.

Referring to Fig. 1, A designates any source of direct current. In any branch of the circuit from said source, such, for example, as would be formed by the conductors A' A" from the mains A' and the conductors K K, are placed self-induction or choking coils B B and a circuit-controller C. This latter may be an ordinary metallic disk or cylinder with teeth or separated segments D D E E, of which one or more pairs, as E E, diametrically opposite, are integral or in electrical contact with the body of the cylinder, so that when the controller is in the position in which the

two brushes F F bear upon two of said segments E E the circuit through the choking-coils B will be closed. The segments D D are insulated, and while shown in the drawings as of substantially the same length of arc as the segments E E this latter relation may be varied at will to regulate the periods of charging and discharging.

The controller C is designed to be rotated by any proper device, such, for example, as an electromagnetic motor, as shown in Fig. 2, receiving current either from the main source or elsewhere. Around the controller C, or in general in parallel therewith, is a condenser H, and in series with the latter the primary K of a transformer, the secondary L of which constitutes the source of the currents of high frequency which may be applied to many useful purposes, as for electric illumination, the operation of Crooke's tubes, or the production of high vacua.

I' indicates the circuit from the secondary, which may be regarded as the working circuit.

A more convenient and simplified arrangement of the apparatus is shown in Fig. 2. In this case the small motor G, which drives the controller, has its field-coils in derivation to the main circuit, and the controller C and condenser H are in parallel in the field-circuit between the two coils. In such case the field-coils M take the place of the choking-coils B. In this arrangement, and in fact generally, it is preferable to use two condensers or a condenser in two parts and to arrange the primary coil of the transformer between them. The interruptions of the field-circuit of the motor should be so rapid as to permit only a partial demagnetization of the cores. These latter, however, should in this specific arrangement be laminated.

The apparatus, as will now be seen, comprises, as essential elements, choking-coils, a circuit-controller, means for rotating the same, a condenser, and a transformer. These elements may be mechanically associated in any convenient and compact form, but so far as their general arrangement and relations are concerned I prefer the relative disposition illustrated, mainly because, by reason of their symmetrical arrangement in the circuit, the liability of injury to the insulation of any of the devices is reduced to a minimum.

I do not mean to imply by the terms employed in describing my improvements that I limit myself to the use of the precise devices commonly designated by such terms.

For instance, the choking-coil as a distinctive device may be wholly dispensed with, provided the circuit in which it must otherwise be placed have a sufficiently high self-induction produced in other ways. So, too, the necessity of a condenser, strictly speaking, is avoided when the circuit itself possesses sufficient capacity to accomplish the desired result.

Having now described my invention and the manner in which the same is or may be carried into practical effect, what I claim is—

1. The apparatus herein described for converting direct currents into currents of high frequency, comprising in combination a circuit of high self-induction, a circuit-controller adapted to make and break such circuit, a condenser into which the said circuit discharges when interrupted, and a transformer through the primary of which the condenser discharges as set forth.

2. The combination of a source of direct current and a circuit therefrom, choking-coils in said circuit, means for making and breaking the circuit through said coils, a condenser around the point of interruption in the said circuit and a transformer having its primary in circuit with the condenser as set forth.

3. The combination with a circuit of high self-induction and means for making and breaking the same, of a condenser around the point of interruption in the said circuit, and a transformer the primary of which is in the condenser-circuit as described.

4. The combination with a circuit of direct current and having a high self-induction, of a circuit-controller for making and breaking said circuit, a motor for driving the controller, a condenser in a circuit connected with the first around the point of interruption therein, and a transformer the primary of which is in circuit with the condenser as set forth.

5. The combination with a circuit of direct current, a controller for making and breaking the same, a motor having its field-magnets in said circuit and driving the said controller, a condenser connected with the circuit around the point of interruption therein and a transformer the primary of which is in circuit with the condenser as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

EDWIN B. HOPKINSON,
M. LAWSON DYER.

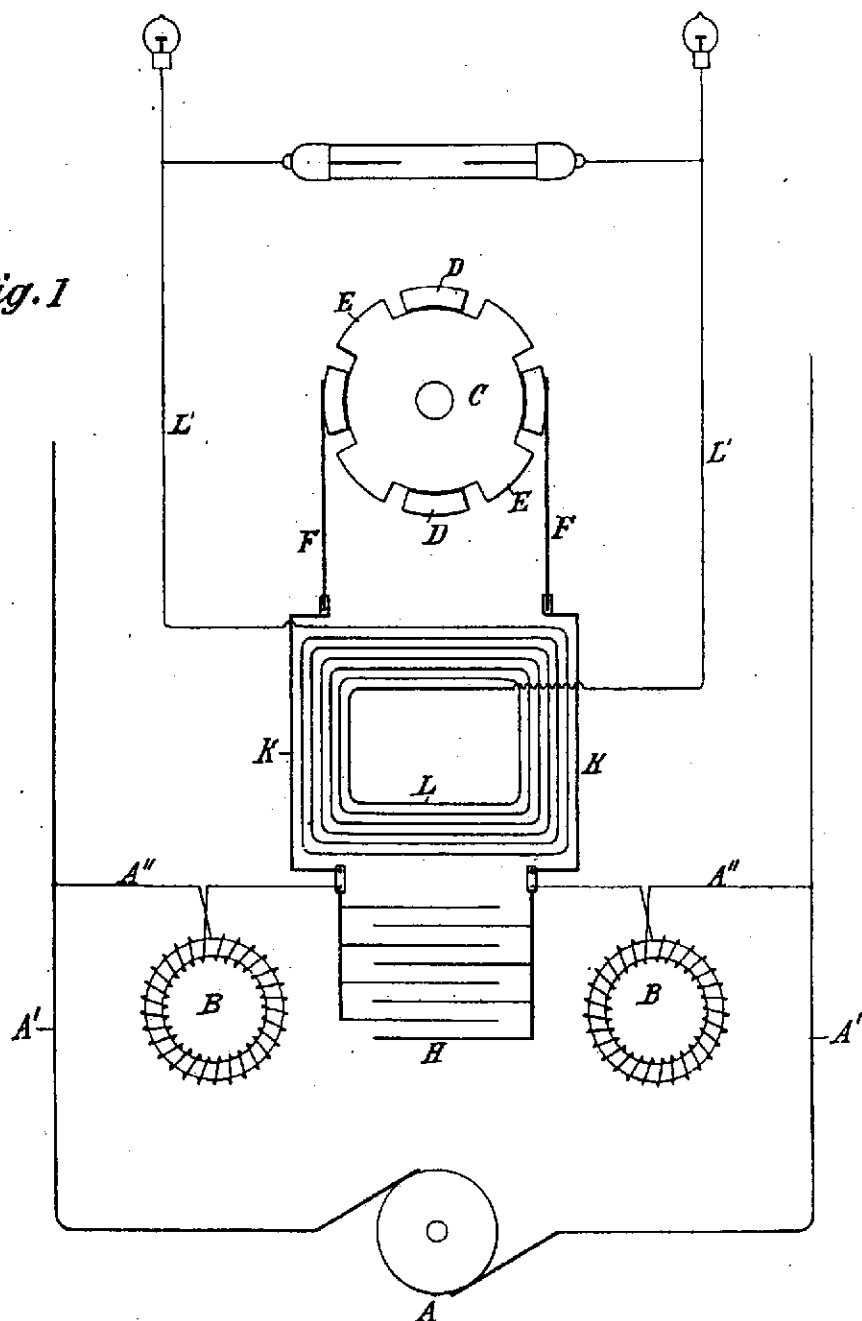
N. TESLA.

APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING ELECTRIC CURRENTS OF HIGH
FREQUENCY AND POTENTIAL.

No. 568,176

Patented Sept. 22, 1896.

Fig. 1



Witnesses:

Raphael Ketter
 Drury W. Cropper

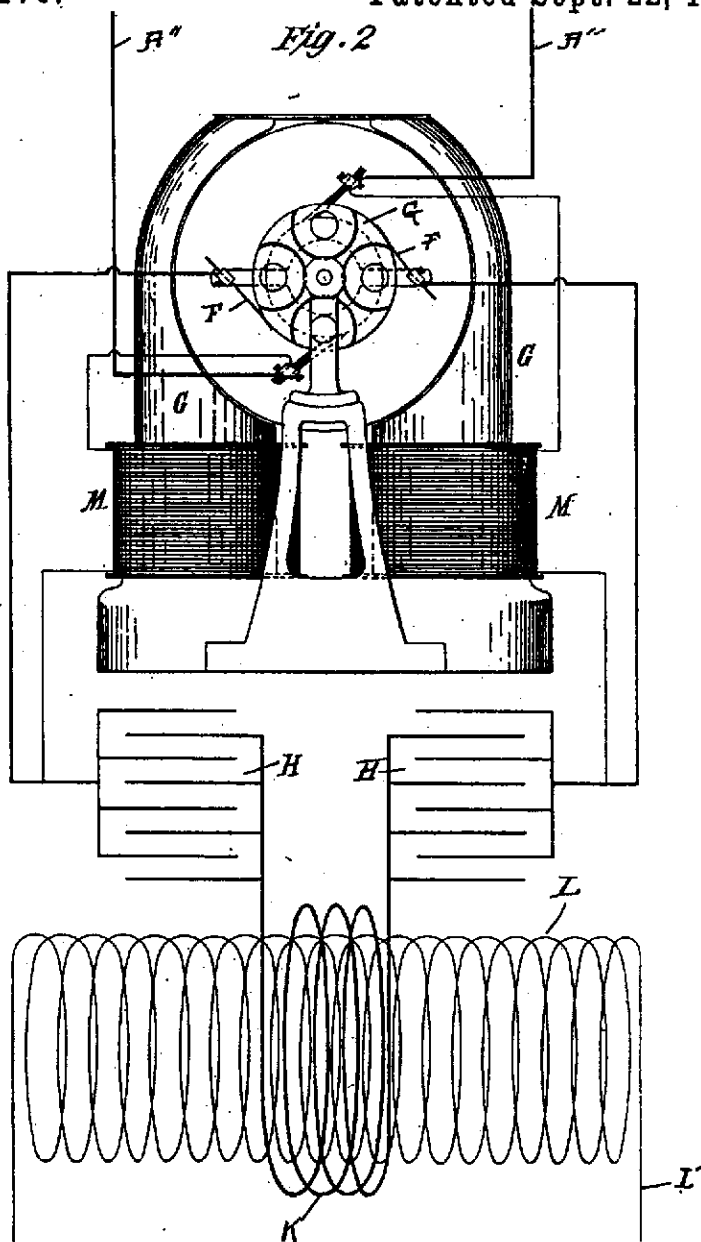
Nikola Tesla, Inventor
 by Kerr, Curtis & Page.
 Attys

N. TESLA.

APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING ELECTRIC CURRENTS OF HIGH
FREQUENCY AND POTENTIAL.

No. 568,176.

Patented Sept. 22, 1896.



WITNESSES:

M. Lumsden Dyer.

Edwin B. Hopkinson.

Nikola Tesla INVENTOR

BY

Kerr, Curtis & Page

ATTORNEYS

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING OZONE.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 568,177, dated September 22, 1896.

Application filed June 17, 1896. Serial No. 695,927. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a citizen of the United States, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Apparatus for Producing Ozone, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

The invention subject of my present application has primarily as its object to provide a simple, cheap, and effective apparatus for the production of ozone or such gases as are obtained by the action of high-tension electrical discharges, although in the application to such purposes of the apparatus heretofore invented by me and designed for the production of electric currents of high frequency and potential I have made certain improvements in such apparatus itself which are novel and useful in other and more general applications of the same. I have heretofore shown and described, notably in Patents No. 463,418, dated November 3, 1891, and No. 454,622, dated June 23, 1891, an apparatus devised for the purpose of converting and supplying electrical energy in a form suited for the production of certain novel electrical phenomena which require currents of higher frequency and potential than can readily or even possibly be developed by generators of the ordinary types or by such mechanical appliances as were theretofore known. This apparatus involved means for utilizing the intermittent or oscillating discharge of the accumulated electrical energy of a condenser or a circuit possessing capacity in what may be designated the "working" circuit or that which contains the translating devices or means for utilizing such currents. In my present improvement I have utilized appliances of this general character under conditions and in combination with certain instrumentalities, hereinafter described, which enable me to produce, without difficulty and at very slight expense, ozone in any desired quantities. I would state the apparatus which I have devised for this purpose is capable of other and highly important uses of a similar nature, but for purposes of the present case I deem it sufficient to describe its operation and ef-

facts when used for the purpose of generating ozone.

In the accompanying drawings, illustrative of the principle of construction and mode of operation of my improvement, Figure 1 is a diagrammatic illustration of the invention; and Fig. 2, a view, partly in side elevation and partly in section, of the apparatus as I construct it for practical use.

The device hereinafter described is especially designed for direct application to and use with existing circuits carrying direct currents, such as the ordinary municipal incandescent-lighting circuits.

Let A B designate the terminals from any given circuit of this character. In such circuit I connect up an electromagnetic motor C in any of the usual ways. That is to say, the coils of the field and armature may be in series or derivation or wholly independent, and either or both are connected up in the circuit. In the present instance one terminal, as B, is connected to one of the binding-posts, from which the circuit is led through one field-coil, D, the brushes and commutator E, the other field-coil, F, and thence to a brush G, which rests upon a circuit-controller H, consisting in general of a conducting disk or cylinder with insulating-sections in its periphery. The other terminal, as A, connects with a second brush K, bearing on the controller, so that the current which passes through and operates the motor is periodically interrupted. For this reason the iron cores of the motor should be laminated. Around the controller is formed a circuit of low self-induction, which includes a condenser L and the primary M of a transformer. The circuit, including the motor is of relatively high self-induction, and this property is imparted to it by the coils of the motor, or, when these are not sufficient, by the addition of suitable choking-coils, so that at each break of the motor-circuit a current of high electromotive force will be developed for charging the condenser, which may therefore be small and inexpensive. The condenser discharges through the circuit which is completed through the brushes G K and the controller H, and since the self-induction of this circuit, as well as the capacity of the con-

denser itself, may be given practically any desired value the frequency of the discharge-current may be adjusted at will. The potential of the high-frequency discharge-current is raised by a secondary coil N in inductive relation to the primary M. The conductors of such secondary circuit are connected to two insulated conducting-plates P P, and when the apparatus is in operation a discharge in the form of streams will be maintained between such plates, as indicated by the wavy lines in the figures. If air be forced between the plates P during this discharge, the effectiveness of the apparatus is increased and ozone is generated in large quantities. In order to secure this result, I inclose the said plates P P in a casing R of any proper description, through which a current of air is maintained by a fan S, mounted on the shaft of the motor.

This apparatus may be constructed and combined in very compact form and small compass. Its operation involves but a small expenditure of energy, while it requires practically no care or attention for the continued production of ozone in unlimited amount.

What I claim as my invention is—

1. The combination with a circuit of direct currents, of a controller for making and breaking the same, a motor included in or connected with said circuit so as to increase its self-induction, and driving the said controller, a condenser in a circuit around the controller, and a transformer through the primary of which the condenser discharges, as set forth.

2. The combination with a circuit of direct currents, of a controller for making and breaking the same, a series-wound motor having its coils included in said circuit and driving the said controller, a condenser connected with the circuit around the point of interruption therein, and a transformer, the primary of which is in the discharge-circuit of the condenser, as set forth.

3. A device for producing ozone comprising in combination, surfaces between which an

electrical discharge takes place, a transformer for producing the potential necessary for such discharge, a condenser in the primary circuit of the transformer, a charging-circuit, means for charging the condenser by such circuit and discharging it through the primary of the transformer, and a device for maintaining a current of air between the discharge-surfaces, as set forth.

4. A device for producing ozone comprising in combination, surfaces between which an electrical discharge takes place, a transformer for producing the potential necessary for such discharge, a condenser in the primary circuit of the transformer, a charging-circuit, means for charging the condenser by such circuit and discharging it through the primary of the transformer, a motor operated by the charging-circuit, and a device operated thereby for maintaining a current of air between the discharge-surfaces, as set forth.

5. A device for producing ozone comprising in combination, surfaces between which an electrical discharge takes place, a transformer for producing the potential necessary for such discharge, a condenser in the primary circuit of the transformer, a charging-circuit, a circuit-controller effecting the charging and discharging of the condenser, and a fan-motor connected with the charging-circuit and operating the circuit-controller and adapted to maintain a current of air between the discharge-surfaces, as set forth.

6. A device for producing ozone comprising in combination, means for charging a condenser, a circuit of low self-induction and resistance into which the condenser discharges, a coil for raising the potential of such discharge, and means for passing a current of air through the high-potential discharge, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

DRURY W. COOPER,
M. LAWSON DYER.

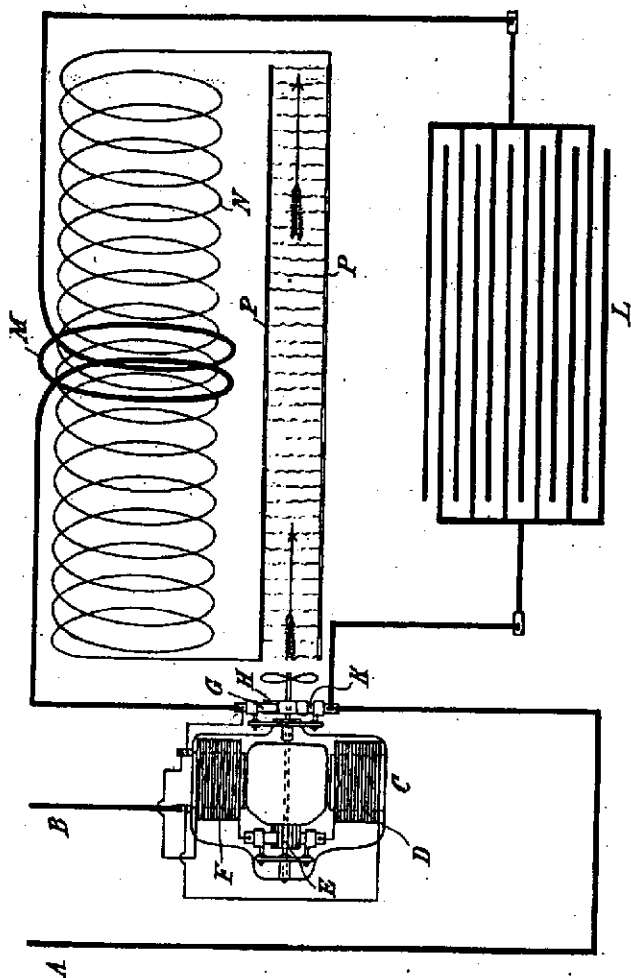
N. TESLA.

APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING OZONE.

No. 568,177.

Patented Sept. 22, 1896.

Fig. 1



Witnesses:

Raphael Netter
Dwight W. Carter

Nikola Tesla, Inventor

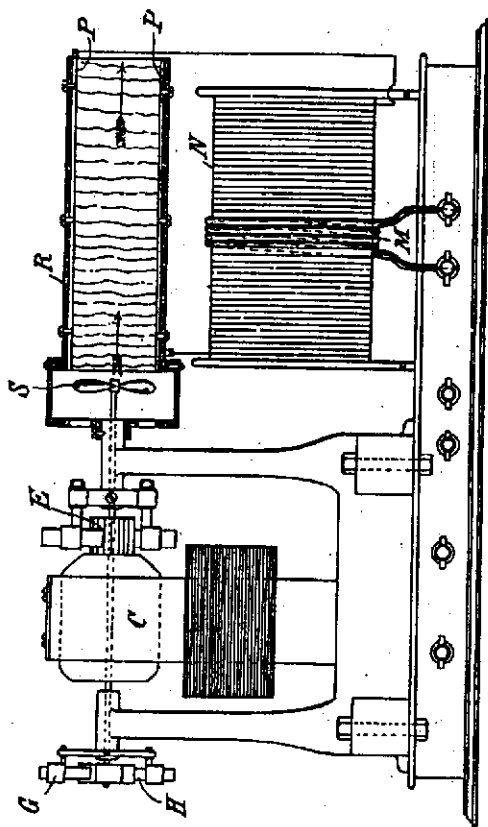
by Kerr, Curtis & Page. Att'ys.

N. TESLA.
APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING OZONE.

No. 568,177.

Patented Sept. 22, 1896.

Fig. 2



Witnesses:

Raphael Petley
Henry W. Cooper

Nikola Tesla, Inventor

Henry Curtis & Page

by

Att'ys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

METHOD OF REGULATING APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING CURRENTS OF HIGH FREQUENCY.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 568,178, dated September 22, 1896.

Application filed June 20, 1896. Serial No. 596,262. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a citizen of the United States, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Methods of Regulating Apparatus for Producing Currents of High Frequency, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

In previous patents and applications I have shown and described a method of and apparatus for generating electric currents of high frequency suitable for the production of various novel phenomena, such as illumination by means of vacuum-tubes, the production of ozone, Roentgen shadows, and other purposes. The special apparatus of this character which I have devised for use with circuits carrying currents in the nature of those classed as direct, or such as are generally obtainable from the ordinary circuits used in municipal systems of incandescent lighting, is based upon the following principles:

The energy of the direct-current supply is periodically directed into and stored in a circuit of relatively high self-induction, and in such form is employed to charge a condenser or circuit of capacity, which, in turn, is caused to discharge through a circuit of low self-induction containing means whereby the intermittent current of discharge is raised to the potential necessary for producing any desired effect.

Considering the conditions necessary for the attainment of these results, there will be found, as the essential elements of the system, the supply-circuit, from which the periodic impulses are obtained, and what may be regarded as the local circuits, comprising the circuit of high self-induction for charging the condenser and the circuit of low self-induction into which the condenser discharges and which itself may constitute the working circuit, or that containing the devices for utilizing the current, or may be inductively related to a secondary circuit which constitutes the working circuit proper. These several circuits, it will be understood, may be more or less interconnected; but for purposes of illustration they may be regarded as practically distinct, with a circuit-con-

troller for alternately connecting the condenser with the circuit by which it is charged and with that into which it discharges, and with a primary of a transformer in the latter circuit having its secondary in that which contains the devices operated by the current.

To this system or combination the invention, subject of my present application, pertains, and has for its object to provide a proper and economical means of regulation therefor.

It is well known that every electric circuit, provided its ohmic resistance does not exceed certain definite limits, has a period of vibration of its own analogous to the period of vibration of a weighted spring. In order to alternately charge a given circuit of this character by periodic impulses impressed upon it and to discharge it most effectively, the frequency of the impressed impulses should bear a definite relation to the frequency of vibration possessed by the circuit itself. Moreover, for like reasons the period or vibration of the discharge-circuit should bear a similar relation to the impressed impulses or the period of the charging-circuit. When the conditions are such that the general law of harmonic vibrations is followed, the circuits are said to be in resonance or in electromagnetic synchronism, and this condition I have found in my system to be highly advantageous. Hence in practice I adjust the electrical constants of the circuits so that in normal operation this condition of resonance is approximately attained. To accomplish this, the number of impulses of current directed into the charging-circuit per unit time is made equal to the period of the charging-circuit itself, or, generally, to a harmonic thereof, and the same relations are maintained between the charging and discharge circuit. Any departure from this condition will result in a decreased output, and this fact I take advantage of in regulating such output by varying the frequencies of the impulses or vibrations in the several circuits.

Inasmuch as the period of any given circuit depends upon the relations of its resistance, self-induction, and capacity, a variation of any one or more of these may result in a variation in its period. There are therefore various ways in which the frequencies of

vibration of the several circuits in the system referred to may be varied, but the most practicable and efficient ways of accomplishing the desired result are the following: (a) varying the rate of the impressed impulses of current, or those which are directed from the source of supply into the charging-circuit, as by varying the speed of the commutator or other circuit-controller; (b) varying the self-induction of the charging-circuit; (c) varying the self-induction or capacity of the discharge-circuit.

To regulate the output of a single circuit which has no vibration of its own by merely varying its period would evidently require, for any extended range of regulation, a very wide range of variation of period; but in the system described a very wide range of regulation of the output may be obtained by a very slight change of the frequency of one of the circuits when the above-mentioned rules are observed.

In illustration of my invention I have shown by diagrams in the accompanying drawings some of the more practicable means for carrying out the same. The figures, as stated, are diagrammatic illustrations of the system in its typical form provided with regulating devices of different specific character. These diagrams will be described in detail in their order.

In each of the figures, A B designate the conductors of a supply-circuit of continuous current; C, a motor connected therewith in any of the usual ways and driving a current-controller D, which serves to alternately close the supply-circuit through the motor or through a self-induction coil E and to connect such motor-circuit with a condenser F, the circuit of which contains a primary coil G, in proximity to which is a secondary coil H, serving as the source of supply to the working circuit, or that in which are connected up the devices K K for utilizing the current.

The circuit-controller, it may be stated, is any device which will permit of a periodic charging of the condenser F by the energy of the supply-circuit and its discharging into a circuit of low self-induction supplying directly or indirectly the translating devices. Inasmuch as the source of supply is generally of low potential, it is undesirable to charge the condenser directly therefrom, as a condenser of large capacity will in such cases be required. I therefore employ a motor of high self-induction, or in place of or in addition to such motor a choking or self-induction coil E, to store up the energy of the supply-current directed into it and to deliver it in the form of a high-potential discharge when its circuit is interrupted and connected to the terminals of the condenser.

In order to secure the greatest efficiency in a system of this kind, it is essential, as I have before stated, that the circuits, which, mainly as a matter of convenience, I have designated as the "charging" and the "discharge" cir-

cuits, should be approximately in resonance or electromagnetic synchronism. Moreover, in order to obtain the greatest output from a given apparatus of this kind, it is desirable to maintain as high a frequency as possible.

The electrical conditions, which are now well understood, having been adjusted to secure, as far as practical considerations will permit, these results, I effect the regulation of the system by adjusting its elements so as to depart in a greater or less degree from the above conditions with a corresponding variation of output. For example, as in Figure 1, I may vary the speed of the motor, and consequently of the controller, in any suitable manner, as by means of a rheostat L in a shunt to such motor or by shifting the position of the brushes on the main commutator M of the motor or otherwise. A very slight variation in this respect, by disturbing the relations between the rate of impressed impulses and the vibration of the circuit of high self-induction into which they are directed, causes a marked departure from the condition of resonance and a corresponding reduction in the amount of energy delivered by the impressed impulses to the apparatus.

A similar result may be secured by modifying any of the constants of the local circuits, as above indicated. For example, in Fig. 2 the choking-coil E is shown as provided with an adjustable core N, by the movement of which into and out of the coil the self-induction, and consequently the period of the circuit containing such coil, may be varied.

As an example of the way in which the discharge-circuit, or that into which the condenser discharges, may be modified to produce the same result I have shown in Fig. 3 an adjustable self-induction coil R in the circuit with the condenser, by the adjustment of which the period of vibration of such circuit may be changed.

The same result would be secured by varying the capacity of the condenser; but if the condenser were of relatively large capacity this might be an objectionable plan, and a more practicable method is to employ a variable condenser in the secondary or working circuit, as shown in Fig. 4. As the potential in this circuit is raised to a high degree, a condenser of very small capacity may be employed, and if the two circuits, primary and secondary, are very intimately and closely connected the variation of capacity in the secondary is similar in its effects to the variation of the capacity of the condenser in the primary. I have illustrated as a means well adapted for this purpose two metallic plates S S, adjustable to and from each other and constituting the two armatures of the condenser.

I have confined the description herein to a source of supply of direct current, as to such the invention more particularly applies, but it will be understood that if the system be supplied by periodic impulses from any

source which will effect the same results the regulation of the system may be effected by the method herein described, and this my claims are intended to include.

5 What I claim is—

1. The method of regulating the energy delivered by a system for the production of high-frequency currents and comprising a supply-circuit, a condenser, a circuit through which
10 the same discharges and means for controlling the charging of the condenser by the supply-circuit and the discharging of the same, the said method consisting in varying the relations of the frequencies of the impulses in
15 the circuits comprising the system, as set forth.

2. The method of regulating the energy delivered by a system for the production of high-frequency currents comprising a supply-circuit of direct currents, a condenser adapted
20 to be charged by the supply-circuit and to

discharge through another circuit, the said method consisting in varying the frequency of the impulses of current from the supply-circuit, as set forth.

3. The method of producing and regulating electric currents of high frequency which consists in directing impulses from a supply-circuit into a charging-circuit of high self-induction, charging a condenser by the accumulated energy of such charging-circuit, discharging the condenser through a circuit of
30 low self-induction, raising the potential of the condenser discharge and varying the relations of the frequencies of the electrical
35 impulses in the said circuits, as herein set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

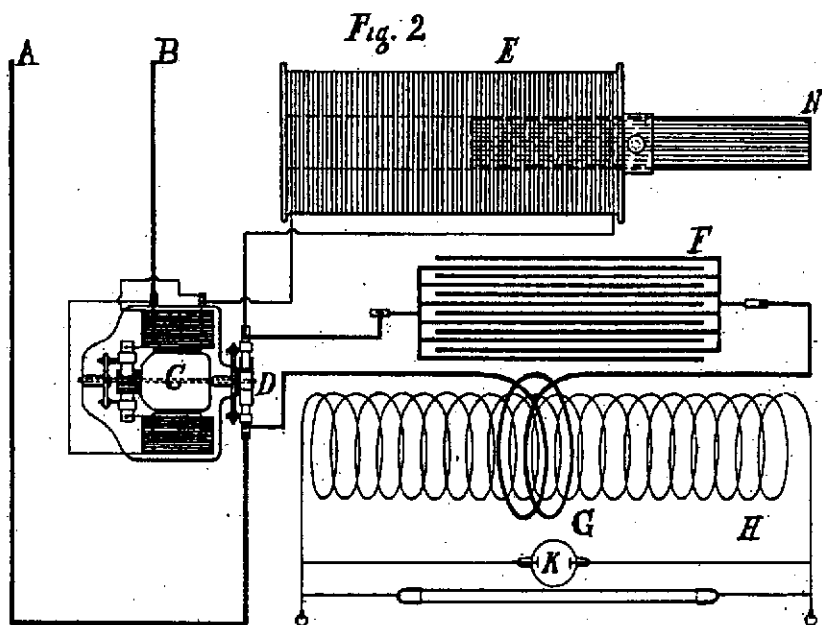
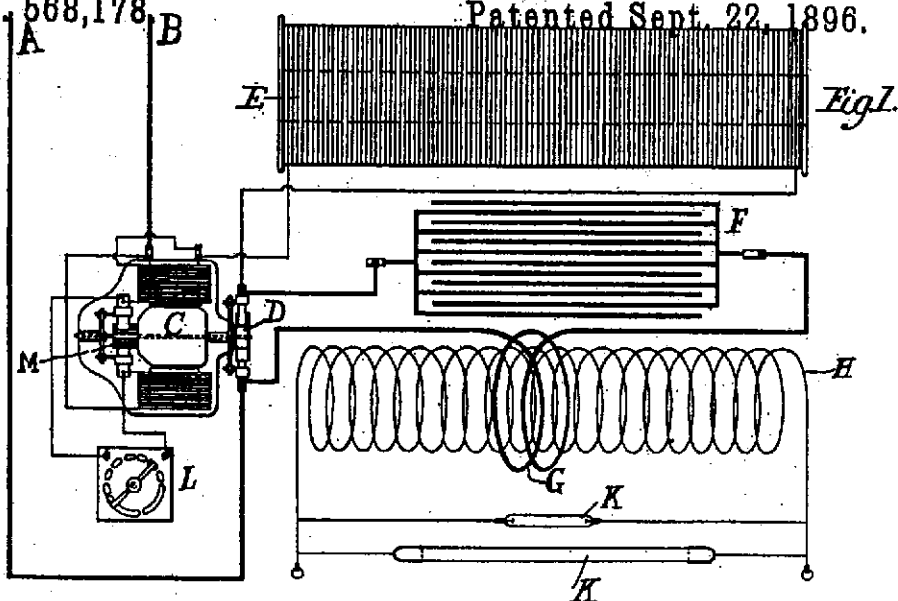
M. LAWSON DYER,
DRURY W. COOPER.

N. TESLA.

METHOD OF REGULATING APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING CURRENTS
OF HIGH FREQUENCY.

No. 568,178.

Patented Sept. 22, 1896.



WITNESSES

Edwin B. Hopkinson
M. Lamson Dyer.

INVENTOR

Nikola Tesla

BY

Kerr, Curtis & Page
ATTORNEYS

N. TESLA.

METHOD OF REGULATING APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING CURRENTS
OF HIGH FREQUENCY.

No. 568,178.

Patented Sept. 22, 1896.

Fig. 3.

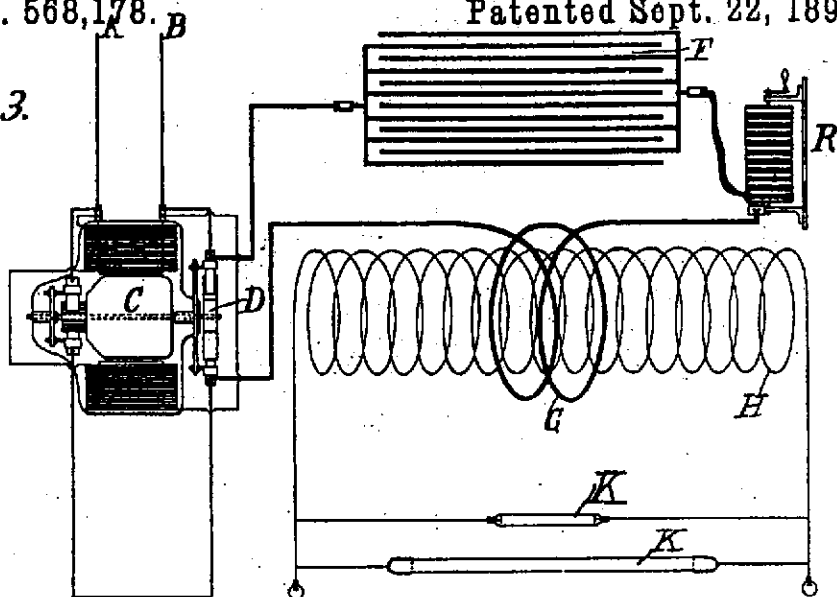
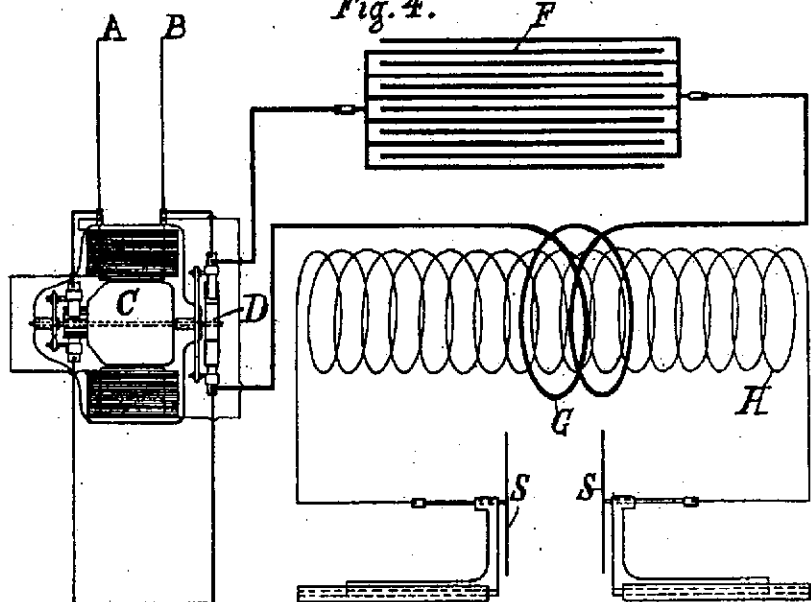


Fig. 4.



WITNESSES

Edwin B. Hopkinson,
W. Lamson Gyer.

INVENTOR

Nikola Tesla

BY

Kerr, Curtis & Page
ATTORNEYS

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

METHOD OF AND APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING CURRENTS OF HIGH FREQUENCY.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 568,179, dated September 22, 1896.

Application filed July 6, 1896. Serial No. 598,130. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a citizen of the United States, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Methods of and Apparatus for Producing Currents of High Frequency, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

The apparatus for producing electrical currents of very high frequency in which is embodied the invention of my present application involves as its chief element means for the periodic charging of a condenser or circuit possessing capacity by the energy of a given source and the discharge of the same through a circuit of low self-induction, whereby the rapid succession of impulses characteristic of a condenser discharge under such circumstances is made available for many practical and useful purposes.

The general arrangement of circuits and apparatus which I prefer for ordinary applications of this invention I have shown and described in an application filed by me April 22, 1896, Serial No. 588,534, as comprising a local circuit of high self-induction connected with a source of supply, a condenser, a discharge-circuit of low self-induction, and a circuit-controller operating to alternately effect the charging of the condenser by the energy stored in the circuit of high self-induction and its discharge through that of low self-induction. I have shown, however, in the application referred to as the source of supply a continuous-current generator, or in general a source of direct currents, and while the principle of operation and the general character of the apparatus remain the same whether the current of the source be direct or alternating, yet the economical utilization of the latter involves certain special principles and appliances which it is my present object to illustrate as the basis for the claims of invention made herein.

When the potential of the source periodically rises and falls, whether with reversals or not is immaterial, it is essential to economical operation that the intervals of interruption of the charging-current should bear a definite time relation to the period of the

current, in order that the effective potential of the impulses charging the condenser may be as high as possible. I therefore provide, in case an alternating or equivalent electromotive force be employed as the source of supply, a circuit-controller which will interrupt the charging-circuit at instants predetermined with reference to the variations of potential therein. The most practicable means for accomplishing this of which I am aware is to employ a synchronous motor connected with the source of supply and operating a circuit-controller which interrupts the charging-current at or about the instant of highest potential of each wave and permits the condenser to discharge the energy stored in it through its appropriate circuit. This apparatus, which may be considered as typical of the means employed for carrying out the invention, I have illustrated in the accompanying drawings.

The figures are diagrammatic illustrations of the system in slightly-modified forms, and will be described in detail in their order.

Referring to Figure 1, A designates any source of alternating or equivalent current, from which lead off mains A' A'. At any point where it is desired to produce the high-frequency currents a branch circuit B is taken off from the mains, and in order to raise the potential of the current a transformer is employed, represented by the primary C and secondary D. The circuit of the secondary includes the energizing-coils of a synchronous motor E and a circuit-controller, which, in the present instance, in Fig. 1 is shown as composed of a metal disk F with insulated segments F' in its periphery and fixed to the shaft of the motor. An insulating-arm G, stationary with respect to the motor-shaft and adjustable with reference to the poles of the fixed magnets, carries two brushes H H, which bear upon the periphery of the disk. With the parts thus arranged the secondary circuit is completed through the coils of the motor whenever the two brushes rest upon the uninsulated segments of the disk and interrupted through the motor at other times. Such a motor, if properly constructed, in well-understood ways, maintains very exact synchronism with the alterations of the source, and the arm G may therefore be adjusted to

interrupt the current at any determined point in its waves. It will be understood that by the proper relations of insulated and conducting segments and the motor-poles the current may be interrupted twice in each complete wave at or about the points of highest potential. The self-induction of the circuit containing the motor and controller should be high, and the motor itself will usually be constructed in such manner that no other self-induction device will be needed. The energy stored in this circuit is utilized at each break therein to charge a condenser K. With this object the terminals of the condenser are connected to the two brushes II II or to points of the circuit adjacent thereto, so that when the circuit through the motor is interrupted the terminals of the motor-circuit will be connected with the condenser, whereby the latter will receive the high-potential inductive discharge from the motor or secondary circuit.

The condenser discharges into a circuit of low self-induction, one terminal of which is connected directly to a condenser-terminal and the other to the brush II opposite to that connected with the other condenser-terminal, so that the discharge-circuit of the condenser will be completed simultaneously with the motor-circuit and interrupted while the motor-circuit is broken and the condenser being charged.

The discharge-circuit contains a primary M of a few turns, and this induces in a secondary N impulses of high potential, which by reason of their great frequency are available for the operation of vacuum-tubes P, single terminal-lamps R, and other novel and useful purposes.

It is obvious that the supply-current need not be alternating, provided it be converted or transformed into an alternating current before reaching the controller. For example, the present improvements are applicable to various forms of rotary transformers, as is illustrated in Figs. 2 and 3.

E' designates a continuous-current motor, here represented as having four field-poles wound with coils E'' in shunt to the armature. The line-wires B B connect with the brushes b b, bearing on the usual commutator.

On an extension of the motor-shaft is a circuit-controller composed of a cylinder the surface of which is divided into four conducting-segments c and four insulating-segments d, the former being diametrically connected in pairs, as shown in Fig. 3.

Through the shaft run two insulated conductors e e from any two commutator-segments ninety degrees apart, and these connect with the two pairs of segments c, respectively. With such arrangement it is evident that any two adjacent segments c c become the terminals of an alternating-current source, so that if two brushes II II be applied to the periphery of the cylinder they will take off current dur-

ing such portion of the wave as the width of segment and position of the brushes may determine. By adjusting the position of the brushes relatively to the cylinder, therefore, the alternating current delivered to the segments c c may be interrupted at any point in its waves.

While the brushes II II are on the conducting-segments the current which they collect stores energy in a circuit of high self-induction formed by the wires f f, self-induction coils S S, the conductors B B, the brushes, and commutator. When this circuit is interrupted by the brushes II II passing onto the insulating-segments of the controller, the high-potential discharge of this circuit charges the condensers K K, which then discharge through the circuit of low self-induction containing the primary M. The secondary circuit N contains any devices, as P R, for utilizing the current.

The mechanical construction of the circuit-controller may be greatly varied, and in other respects the details shown and described are merely given as typical illustrations of the nature and purpose of the invention.

What I claim is—

1. The method herein described of producing electric currents of high frequency, which consists in generating an alternating current, charging a condenser thereby during determinate intervals of each wave of said current, and discharging the condenser through a circuit of low self-induction, as herein set forth.

2. The combination with a source of alternating current, a condenser, a circuit-controller adapted to direct the current during determinate intervals of each wave into the condenser for charging the same, and a circuit of low self-induction into which the condenser discharges, as set forth.

3. The combination with a source of alternating current, a synchronous motor operated thereby, a circuit-controller operated by the motor and adapted to interrupt the circuit through the motor at determinate points in each wave, a condenser connected with the motor-circuit and adapted on the interruption of the same to receive the energy stored therein, and a circuit into which the condenser discharges, as set forth.

4. The combination with a source of alternating current, a charging-circuit in which the energy of said current is stored, a circuit-controller adapted to interrupt the charging-circuit at determinate points in each wave, a condenser for receiving, on the interruption of the charging-circuit, the energy accumulated therein, and a circuit into which the condenser discharges when connected therewith by the circuit-controller, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

M. LAWSON DYER,
DRURY W. COOPER.

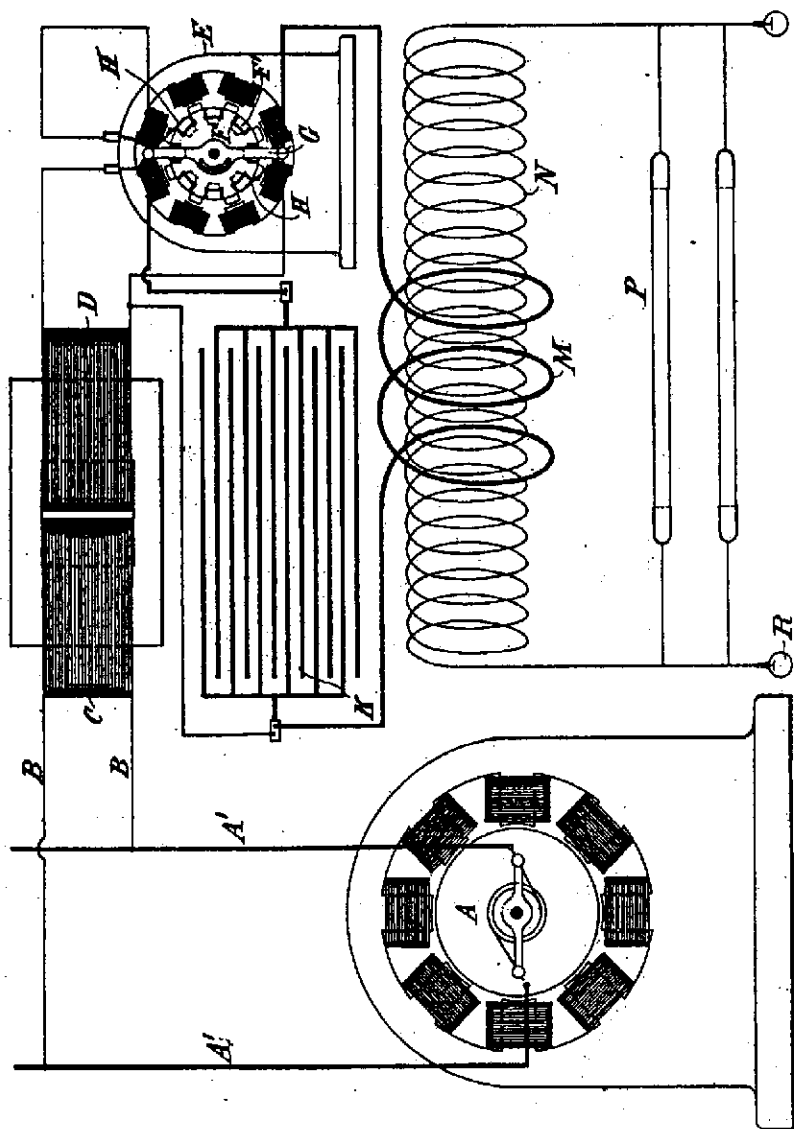
N. TESLA.

METHOD OF AND APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING CURRENTS OF
HIGH FREQUENCY.

No. 568,179.

Patented Sept. 22, 1896.

Fig. 1



WITNESSES

Oscar N. Cooper

Edwin B. Hopkinson.

INVENTOR

Nikola Tesla

BY

Ken. Curtis & Page.

ATTORNEYS

(No Model.)

2 Sheets—Sheet 2.

N. TESLA.

METHOD OF AND APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING CURRENTS OF
HIGH FREQUENCY.

No. 568,179.

Patented Sept. 22, 1896.

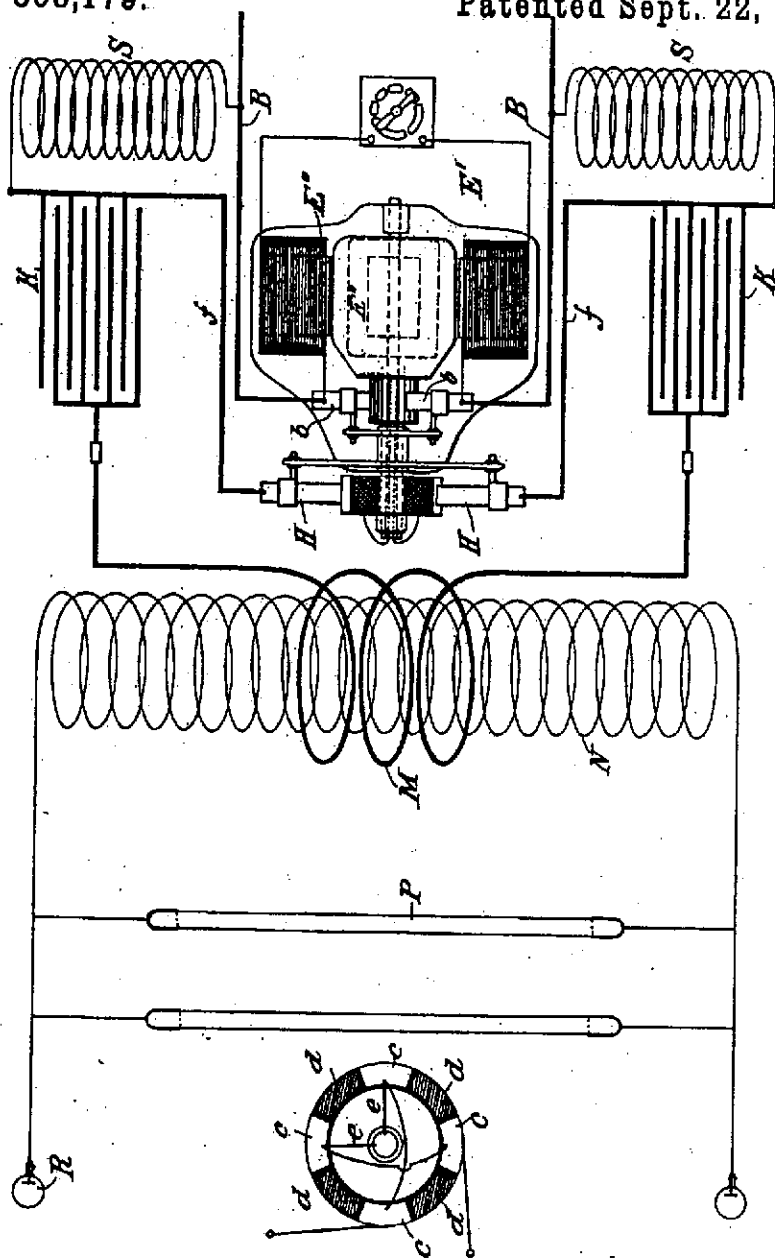


Fig. 2

WITNESSES

WITNESSES
Orry H. Cooper
Edward B. Hopkinson.

INVENTOR

INVENTOR
Nikola Tesla
BY
Kerr, Curtis & Page
ATTORNEYS

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING ELECTRICAL CURRENTS OF HIGH FREQUENCY.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 568,180, dated September 22, 1896.

Application filed July 9, 1896. Serial No. 598,552. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a citizen of the United States, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Apparatus for Producing Electrical Currents of High Frequency, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

This invention is an improvement in apparatus for producing electrical currents of high frequency in accordance with the general plan heretofore invented and practiced by me and based upon the principle of charging a condenser or circuit possessing capacity and discharging the same through a circuit of low self-induction, so that rapid electrical oscillations are obtained. To secure this result, I employ some means for intermittently charging the condenser and for discharging it through the circuit of low self-induction; and among the means which I have heretofore employed for this purpose was a mechanical contact device which controlled both the charging and the discharge circuit in such manner that the condenser was alternately charged by the former and discharged into the latter.

My present improvement consists in an apparatus for effecting the same result by the use of a circuit-controller of special character in which the continuity of the paths for the current is established at intervals by the passage of sparks across a dielectric.

In carrying out my present improvement I employ a circuit-controller containing two terminals or sets of terminals movable with respect to each other into and out of proximity, and I provide means whereby the intervals between the periods of close approximation, during which the spark passes, may be adjusted so that when used in a system supplied by a source of alternating current the periods of make and break may be timed with reference to a phase of the current wave or impulse.

Referring to the drawings, which illustrate in its preferred form the improvement above referred to, Figure 1 is a view, partly in elevation and partly in section, of a generator arranged to give an alternating current with

the circuit-controller mounted on its shaft. Fig. 2 is a section of the controller of Fig. 1 on line $x x$ of said figure. Fig. 3 is a diagram illustrating the system or apparatus as a whole. Figs. 4 and 5 are sectional views of a modified form of circuit-controller.

A designates in Fig. 1 a generator having a commutator A' and brushes A'' bearing thereon, and also collecting-rings B B, from which an alternating current is taken by brushes B' in the well-understood manner.

The circuit-controller is mounted in part on an extension of the shaft C of the generator, and in part on the frame of the same, or on a stationary sleeve surrounding the shaft. Its construction in detail is as follows: D is a metal plate with a central hub D', which is keyed or clamped to the shaft C. The plate is formed with segmental extensions corresponding in number to the waves of current which the generator delivers. These segments are preferably cut away, leaving only rims or frames, to one of the radial sides of which are secured bent metal plates E, which serve as vanes to maintain a circulation of air when the device is in operation. The segmental disk and vanes are contained within a close insulated box or case F, mounted on the bearing of the generator, or in any other proper way, but so as to be capable of angular adjustment around the shaft. To facilitate such adjustment, a screw-rod F', provided with a knob or handle, is shown as passing through the wall of the box. The latter may be adjusted by this rod, and when in proper position may be held therein by screwing the rod down into a depression in the sleeve or bearing, as shown in Fig. 1. Air-passages G G are provided at opposite ends of the box, through which air is maintained in circulation by the action of the vanes. Through the sides of the box F and through insulating gaskets H, when the material of the box is not a sufficiently good insulator, extend metallic terminal plugs K K, with their ends in the plane of the conducting segmental disk D and adjustable radially toward and from the edges of the segments. This or similar devices are employed to carry out the invention above referred to in the manner illustrated in Fig. 3. A in this figure represents any source of alternating current

the potential of which is raised by a transformer, of which a is the primary and b the secondary. The ends of the secondary circuit S are connected to the terminal plugs K of an apparatus similar to that of Figs. 1 and 2 and having segments rotating in synchronism with the alternations of the current source, preferably, as above described, by being mounted on the shaft of the generator when the conditions so permit. The plugs K are then adjusted radially, so as to approach more or less the path of the outer edges of the segmental disk, and so that during the passage of each segment in front of a plug a spark will pass between them, which completes the secondary circuit S . The box or the support for the plugs K is adjusted angularly, so as to bring the plugs and segments into proximity at the desired instants with reference to any phase of the current-wave in the secondary circuit and fixed in position in any proper manner. To the plugs K are also connected the terminals of a condenser or condensers L , so that at the instant of the rupture of the secondary circuit S by the cessation of the sparks the energy accumulated in such circuit will rush into and charge the condenser. A path of low self-induction and resistance, including a primary M of a few turns, is provided to receive the discharge of the condenser, when the circuit S is again completed by the passage of sparks, the discharge being manifested as a succession of extremely rapid impulses. The potential of these impulses may be raised by a secondary T , which constitutes the source of current for the working circuit or that containing the devices R for utilizing the current.

By means of this apparatus effects of a novel and useful character are obtainable, but to still further increase the efficiency of the discharge or working current I have in some instances provided a means for further breaking up the individual sparks themselves. A device for this purpose is shown in Figs. 4 and 5. The box or case F in these figures is fixedly secured to the frame or bearing of the generator or motor which rotates the circuit-controller in synchronism with the alternating source. Within said box is a disk D , fixed to the shaft C , with projections d' extending

from its edge parallel with the axis of the shaft. A similar disk D'' on a spindle d , in face of the first, is mounted in a bearing in the end of the box F with a capability of rotary adjustment. The ends of the projections d' are deeply serrated or several pins or narrow projections placed side by side, as shown in Fig. 4, so that as those of the opposite disks pass each other a rapid succession of sparks will pass from the projections of one disk to those of the other.

What I claim as my invention is—

1. The combination with a source of current, of a condenser adapted to be charged thereby, a circuit into which the condenser discharges in a series of rapid impulses, and a circuit-controller for effecting the charging and discharge of said condenser, composed of conductors movable into and out of proximity with each other, whereby a spark may be maintained between them and the circuit closed thereby during determined intervals, as set forth.

2. The combination with a source of alternating current, of a condenser adapted to be charged thereby, a circuit into which the condenser discharges in a series of rapid impulses, and a circuit-controller for effecting the charging and discharge of said condenser, composed of conductors movable into and out of proximity with each other in synchronism with the alternations of the source, as set forth.

3. A circuit-controller for systems of the kind described, comprising in combination a pair of angularly-adjustable terminals and two or more rotating conductors mounted to pass in proximity to the said terminals, as set forth.

4. A circuit-controller for systems of the kind described, comprising in combination two sets of conductors, one capable of rotation and the other of angular adjustment whereby they may be brought into and out of proximity to each other, at determinate points, and one or both being subdivided so as to present a group of conducting points, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

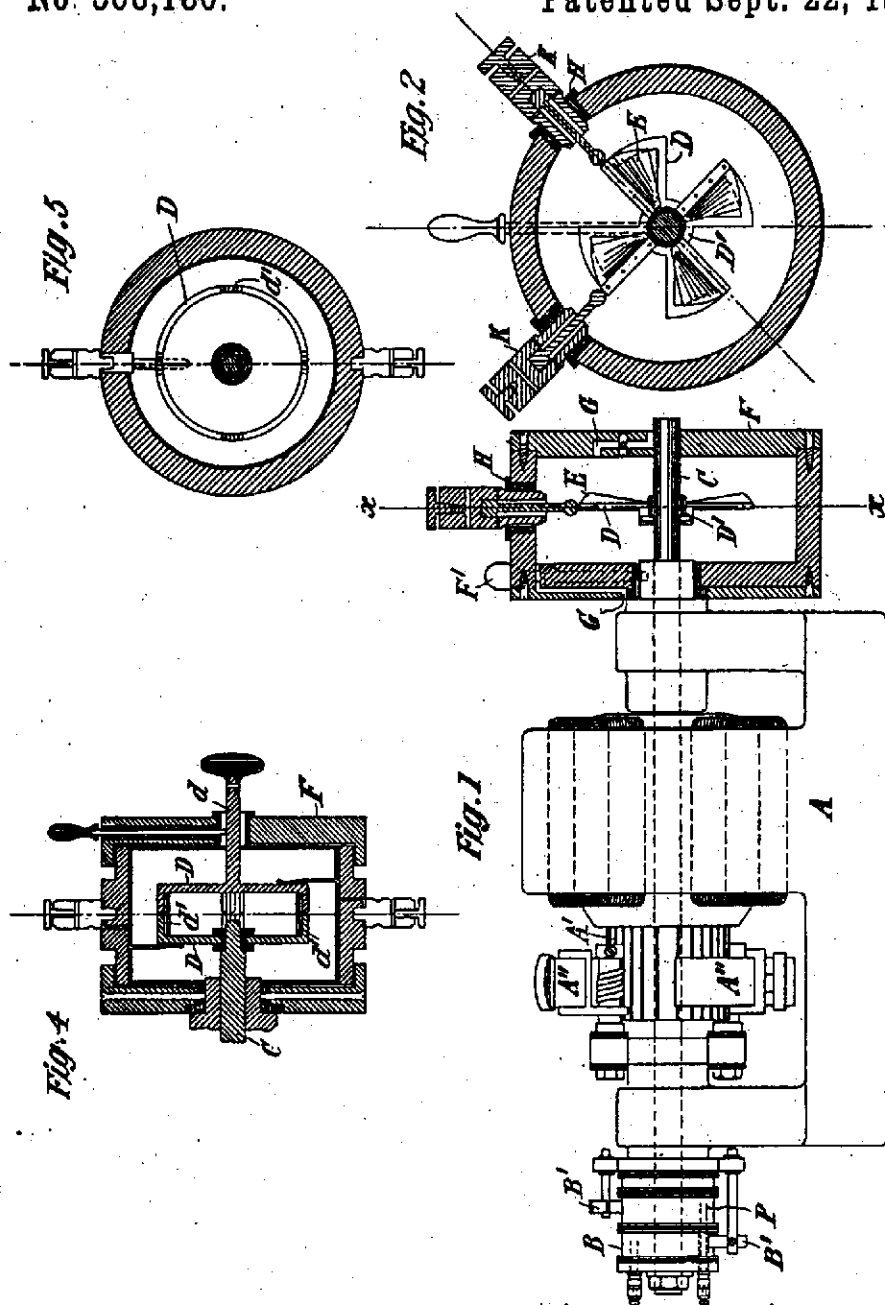
M. LAWSON DYER,
DRURY W. COOPER.

N. TESLA.

APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING ELECTRICAL CURRENTS OF HIGH FREQUENCY.

No. 568,180.

Patented Sept. 22, 1896.



WITNESSES:

Edwin B. Hopkins,

Benjamin B. ...

Nikola Tesla, INVENTOR

BY

Herr, Curtis & Page, ATTORNEYS

N. TESLA.

APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING ELECTRICAL CURRENTS OF
HIGH FREQUENCY.

No. 568,180.

Patented Sept. 22, 1896.

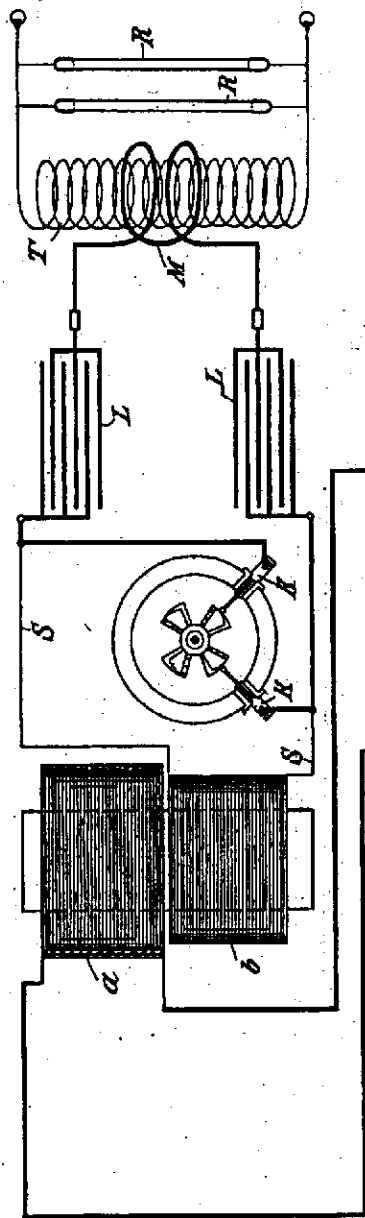


Fig. 3

WITNESSES:

Edwin B. Hopkinson.

Benjamin Franklin

Nikola Tesla

INVENTOR

BY

Herr, Curtis Page, ATTORNEYS

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING ELECTRIC CURRENTS OF HIGH FREQUENCY.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 577,670, dated February 23, 1897.

Application filed September 3, 1896. Serial No. 604,723. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a citizen of the United States, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Apparatus for Producing Electric Currents of High Frequency, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

The apparatus for converting electric currents of ordinary character into those of high frequency, which I have heretofore shown and described in applications for Letters Patent, has usually comprised a condenser and a circuit-controller operated by a suitable motive device and acting to alternately charge the condenser from a suitable source of supply and discharge it through a circuit of such character as to render the discharge one of very high frequency. For many purposes it has been found advantageous to construct the circuit-controller with insulating and conducting segments of equal length, so that the condenser is connected with its discharge-circuit during one-half of the time only. It follows from this that the working circuit, or that in which the high-frequency currents are developed in form for practical application, receives such currents during only one-half the time.

For certain purposes it is desirable for economical operation that there should be no cessation of the flow of such currents, and my present improvements have been devised with the object of increasing the output of a given apparatus by providing means by which, without material additions to or complication of such apparatus, high-frequency currents may be produced thereby continuously or without periods of rest.

Broadly stated, the improvement consists in the combination of two condensers with a circuit-controller of such character and so operated by a single motive device as to charge and discharge said condensers alternately, whereby one will be discharging while the other is being charged, and conversely.

In the drawings hereto annexed, Figure 1 is a diagrammatic illustration of the arrangement and circuit connections of the invention. Fig. 2 is a sectional view of a part of

the commutator employed; and Fig. 3 is a diagram similar to that of Fig. 1, illustrative of a modified embodiment of the invention.

Let A B designate the two conductors of any circuit from which the energy is derived that is to be converted into a current of high frequency.

C is a circuit controller or commutator, a portion only for convenience being shown in the figures. It is designed to be rotated by any suitable motive device, of which, however, the shaft D only is shown, and its plan of construction is as follows:

The letters *c c'* designate two metal heads or castings with projecting portions *d d'*, which, when the two heads are brought together and secured to a hub or shaft, intermesh, as shown in the drawings.

The spaces between two adjacent projections or bars *d d'* are equal in arc to the width of one of said bars and are filled in with blocks *e*, preferably of metal, insulated from the other conducting portions of the device. By the interposition of mica or other suitable insulating material the two heads or castings *c c'* are insulated from each other. Upon the periphery of this commutator bear three brushes G G' H, the two former resting upon the continuous metallic portions of the two heads, respectively, the latter being in position to bear upon the projections *d d'* and blocks *e* alternately.

In order that the brushes may be capable of carrying any current which the operation of the apparatus may demand, they are made of large cross-section, the brush H being approximately equal in width to one of the projections or segments *d d'*, or to the space between adjacent segments, so that in passing from one it comes into contact with the next.

The brush H is connected to the main B through a primary coil K of low self-induction in inductive relation to a secondary L, which constitutes the ultimate source of the current of high frequency which the apparatus is designed to develop and which feeds a circuit containing vacuum-tubes M, single terminal lamps M', or other suitable devices. The brushes G G' are connected with the main B through condensers N N', respectively, and to the main A through self-induction or choking coils O O', these latter being used in order

that the inductive discharge of the accumulated energy therein may be taken advantage of in charging the condensers.

The operation of the apparatus thus described is as follows: By the rotation of the commutator C the brush H is caused to pass over the projections d , closing the circuits through the primary K and the two condensers alternately. These two circuits are so adjusted as to have the same capacity, self-induction, and resistance. When said brush is in electrical connection with any projection d' from the part c' , the circuit is closed between mains A and B through coil O', brush G', brush H, and coil K. Energy is therefore accumulated in the coil O'. At the same time the condenser N' is short-circuited through the brush G', brush H, and coil K, and discharges through this circuit the energy stored in it, the discharge being in the form of a series of impulses which induce in the secondary L corresponding impulses of high potential. When brush H breaks the circuit through coil O', the high-potential discharge or "kick" from the latter rushes into and recharges the condenser N', but as soon as the brush H has passed over the intervening block e and reached the next segment d it closes the circuit through coil O and short-circuits the condenser N, so that high-frequency currents from either one or the other of the two condensers are flowing through the primary K practically without interruption. Thus without increasing the size or power of the motive device or complicating in any material degree the commutator these devices are made to perform double duty and the output of the apparatus as a whole greatly increased. In Fig. 8 I have illustrated a modified form of commutator for this apparatus, which comprises a disk E, of metal, but insulated from its shaft. The periphery of this disk is divided into conducting and insulated segments by the insertion therein of insulated metal blocks f . The circumferential width of these blocks is three times that of the conducting-segments f' . A brush F bears upon a continuous metallic portion of the disk or upon a continuous ring in electrical connection with the segments f' and is connected with one ter-

minial of the primary K. Brushes F' F'' bear upon the periphery of the disk E and are connected to the main B through the two condensers, respectively. These brushes are capable of angular adjustment, so that they may be set to bear upon the disk at any two desired points.

From the explanation of the operation already given it is evident that when the two brushes F' F'' are set so that one leaves a segment f' at the instant that the other comes in contact with a segment f'' the effect in charging and discharging the condensers is the same as in the previous instance. The capability of varying the relations of the brushes, however, which this form possesses has the advantage of permitting not only an alternate charging and discharge of the condensers, but their simultaneous charging and discharge in multiple arc, whereby the frequency of the current of discharge is reduced.

It is also evident that all phase differences in the charging and discharging of the condensers may in like manner be secured and the frequency varied within wide limits. Of course the same motor and circuit-controller might be made to charge more than two condensers in succession and to discharge them in the same order.

What I claim is—

1. The combination with a source of electric energy, of a plurality of condensers and a discharge-circuit therefor, a motive device and a circuit-controller operated thereby and adapted to direct the energy of the source into the condensers and connect them with the discharge-circuit successively and in alternation, as set forth.

2. The combination with a source of electric energy, of a motive device, two condensers, a circuit-controller adapted to direct the energy of the source alternately into the said condensers, and a discharge-circuit through which, by the operation of said circuit-controller one condenser discharges while the other is being charged, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

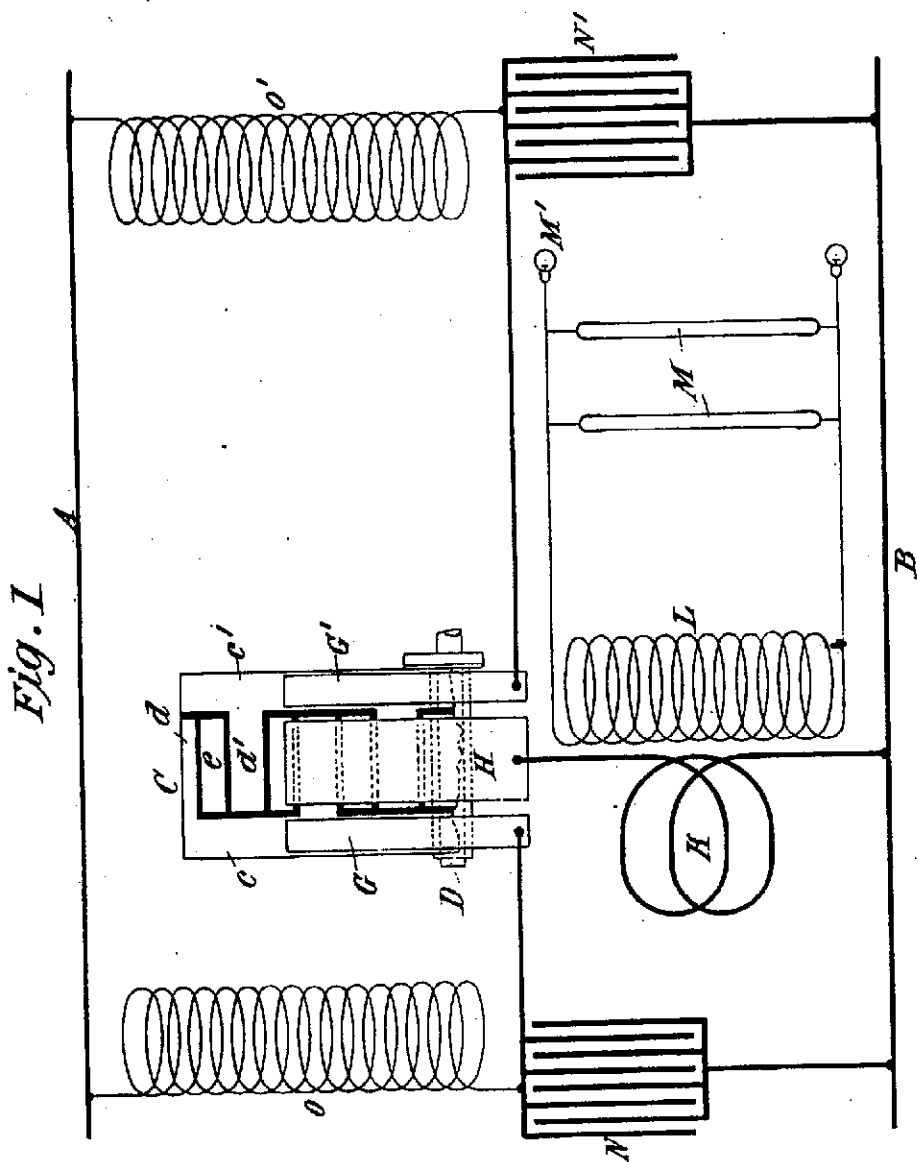
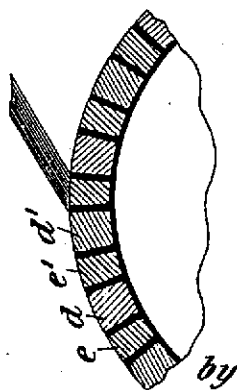
M. LAWSON DYER,
DRURY W. COOPER.

N. TESLA.

APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING ELECTRIC CURRENTS OF HIGH FREQUENCY.

No. 577,670.

Patented Feb. 23, 1897.

*Fig. 2*

Witnesses:
 Edwin B. Hopkinson,
 M. Lamson & Co.

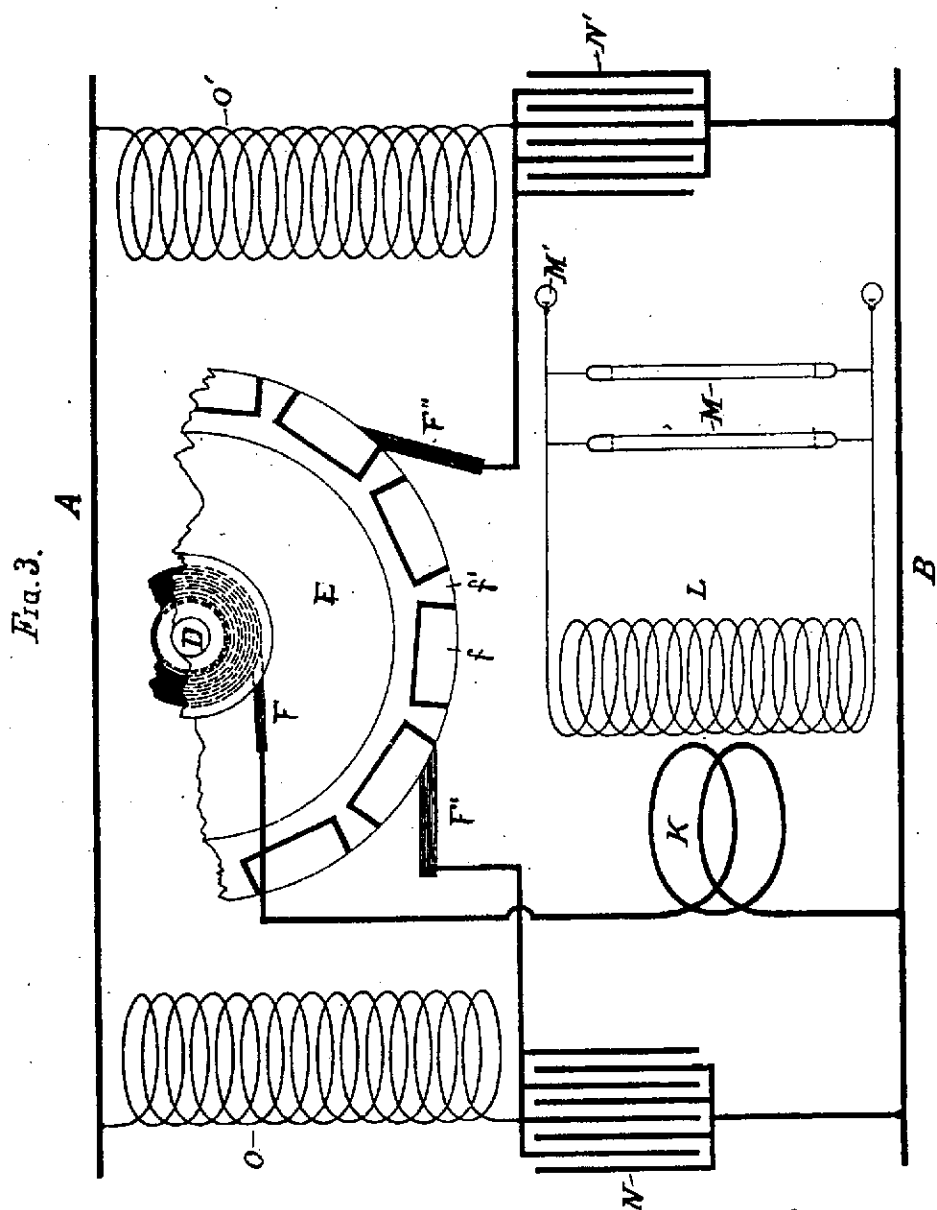
Nikola Tesla
 Inventor
 Ken. Curtis & Page,
 Attys

N. TESLA.

APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING ELECTRIC CURRENTS OF HIGH FREQUENCY.

No. 577,670.

Patented Feb. 23, 1897.



WITNESSES

M. Lawson Syn.

Edwin B. Hopkinson.

Nikola Tesla INVENTOR

BY

Kerr, Curtis & Page ATTORNEYS

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING CURRENTS OF HIGH FREQUENCY.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 583,953, dated June 8, 1897.

Application filed October 19, 1896. Serial No. 609,292. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a citizen of the United States, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful improvements in Apparatus for Producing Currents of High Frequency, of which the following is specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

The invention upon which my present application is based is an improvement in apparatus for the conversion of electrical currents of ordinary character—such, for instance, as are obtainable from the mains of municipal electric light and power systems and either continuous or alternating—into currents of very high frequency and potential.

The improvement is applicable generally to apparatus of the kind heretofore invented by me and more particularly described in United States Letters Patent granted to me on September 22, 1896, No. 568,176; but in the description of the invention which follows the illustration is confined to a form of apparatus designed for converting a continuous or direct current into one of high frequency. In the several forms of apparatus for this purpose which I have devised and heretofore described I have employed a circuit of high self-induction connected with the mains from a suitable source of current and containing some form of circuit-controller for periodically interrupting it. Around the break or point of interruption I have arranged a condenser, into which the circuit discharges when interrupted, and this condenser is in turn made to discharge through a circuit containing the primary of a transformer, and of such character that the condenser-discharge will be in the form of an extremely rapid succession of impulses.

Now in order to secure in an apparatus of this kind as high frequency as possible and the advantages resulting therefrom I subdivide the condenser necessary for storing the energy required into integral parts or provide independent condensers, and employ means for charging said condensers in multiple and discharging them in series through the primary of the transformer. To secure this result without unduly complicating the appa-

ratus is a matter of very considerable difficulty, but I have accomplished it by means of the apparatus which I shall now proceed to describe by reference to the drawings.

Figure 1 is a side elevation of the apparatus which I employ, and Fig. 2 is a diagram of the circuit connections.

Referring to Fig. 1, A is a box or case containing the condensers, of which the terminals are *a b b'*, respectively. On this case is mounted a small electromagnetic motor B, by the shaft of which is operated the circuit-controller C. Upon the said controller bear brushes, as shown at D D' D''.

F F are self-induction coils placed beside the motor. Above these is the transformer, composed, essentially, of a primary G and a secondary H. These devices are intended to be inclosed in a suitable box or case, and may be very greatly modified in construction and relative arrangement. The circuit-controller, however, should conform in general principle of construction to that hereinafter described in so far as may be necessary to secure the operation pointed out.

Referring now to Fig. 2, I, I, designate the mains from a suitable source of supply, between which a circuit is formed, including the self-induction coils F F and the circuit-controller C. A switch *d* may be employed to bring either or both of the coils F F into this circuit, as may be desired.

The circuit-controller is built up of insulated plates or segments, upon which the positive and negative brushes bear, and these plates may be considered as belonging to three sets or classes, first, the plates *m* for what may be considered as the positive brushes D D' in one row, electrically connected together, and the corresponding plates *n* for what may similarly be considered as the negative brushes E E' in the other row; second, the plates *o*, which lie in both rows, and hence are conveniently made in single pieces extending across the controller, and, third, the idle or spacing plates *p*, which are interposed in each row between the other two sets. The angle between adjacent plates of the same set is equal to the angle of displacement between adjacent brushes of the same sign, and obviously there may be two or more of each. The brush D of one set is connected with one

main through the coils F, and each one of the brushes of the same set is connected to one of the terminals of the condensers M N, respectively. Similarly the brush E of the other set of brushes is connected to the opposite main and each of the brushes of said set to the opposite condenser terminals through the primary or strands of a primary G. In the diagram, Fig. 2, I have shown but two brushes in each set and two condensers, but more than this number may be used, the same plan of connections shown and described being followed out.

In the position of the parts shown in Fig. 2, in which two positive and two negative brushes are shown, the brushes are bearing on plates *m m* and *n n*. Consequently the circuit through the coils F F is through the condensers in multiple, and, assuming that energy has been stored in said coils, the condensers will thus be charged. If now by the movement of the controller plates or brushes the latter are shifted across the idle or spacing plates *p* onto the long or cross-connected plates *o* two results follow: The mains are short-circuited through the coils F F, which therefore store energy, while the condensers are connected in series through the primary coil or coils G. These actions are repeated by the further movement of the controller, the condensers being charged in parallel when the brushes are on plates *m n* and discharged in series when the brushes pass onto plates *o*. The motor may be run by an independent source or by current derived from the mains, and the apparatus may be employed to supply current for any suitable devices S T, connected with the secondary coil H.

As stated above, the specific construction of the circuit-controller may be very greatly varied without departure from the invention. In the drawings the plates are assumed to be associated in the form of a cylinder which revolves with respect to brushes bearing on its periphery; but it will be understood that this is merely a typical illustration of any form of terminals or contacts and conductors, whether rotary or reciprocating, which constitute a circuit-controller capable of effecting the same result.

The advantages resulting from the subdivision of the condenser or the employment of a plurality of condensers are mainly that a high frequency is obtainable in apparatus of any size; that the current of discharge through the sliding contacts is greatly reduced and injury to such contacts thereby avoided and a great saving in wire in the secondary effected.

What I claim is—

1. In an apparatus of the kind described, the combination with a set of contacts, one of which is adapted for connection with one of the mains from a source of current, and each of which is connected to one of the terminals of a series of condensers, and a second set of contacts similarly connected to the opposite main and condenser terminals, respectively, of electrically-connected plates or segments upon which the contacts of the first set bear, similarly-connected plates upon which the contacts of the second set bear, and isolated plates common to the two sets of contacts, the said plates being arranged in the manner described, whereby the condensers will be alternately charged in multiple and discharged in series, as set forth.

2. In an apparatus of the kind described, the combination with a set of positive brushes, one of which is adapted for connection with one of the mains from a source of current, and each of which is connected to one of the terminals of a series of condensers, and negative brushes similarly connected to the opposite main and condenser terminals, respectively, of a cylinder composed of electrically-connected segments upon which the positive brushes only bear, similarly-connected segments upon which the negative brushes only bear, and isolated plates upon which both sets of brushes simultaneously bear, the said plates being arranged in the manner described, whereby the condensers will be alternately charged in multiple and discharged in series, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

M. LAWSON DYER,
DRURY W. COOPER.

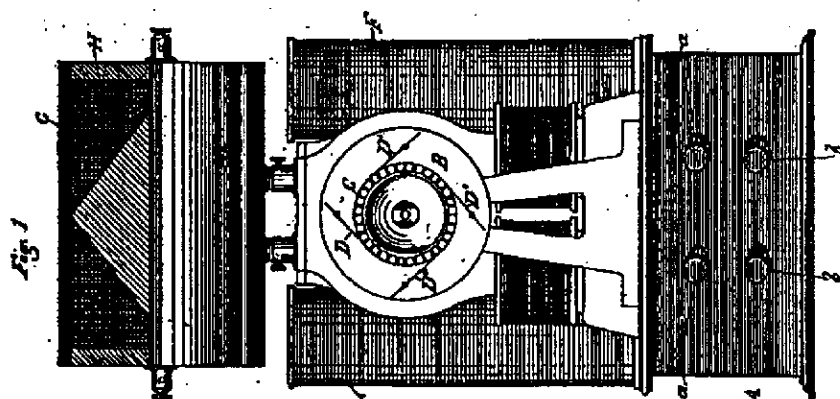
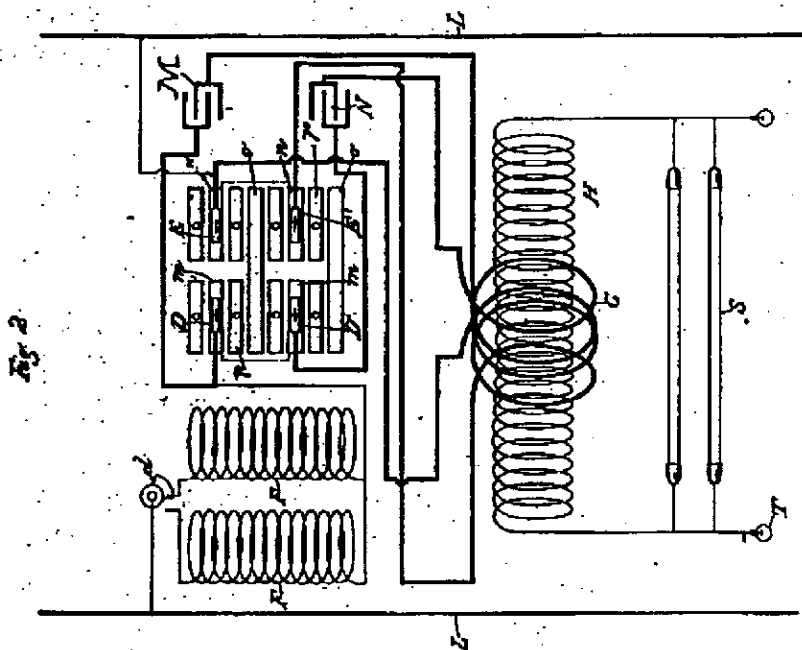
(No Model.)

N. TESLA.

APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING CURRENTS OF HIGH FREQUENCY.

No. 583,953.

Patented June 8, 1897.



WITNESSES

G. B. Linn.

Edwin B. Hopkinson.

INVENTOR

Nikola Tesla

BY

Kerr, Curtis & Page

ATTORNEYS.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

ELECTRICAL TRANSFORMER.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 593,138, dated November 2, 1897.

Application filed March 20, 1897. Serial No. 628,453. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a citizen of the United States, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Electrical Transformers, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

The present application is based upon an apparatus which I have devised and employed for the purpose of developing electrical currents of high potential, which transformers or induction-coils constructed on the principles heretofore followed in the manufacture of such instruments are wholly incapable of producing or practically utilizing, at least without serious liability of the destruction of the apparatus itself and danger to persons approaching or handling it.

The improvement involves a novel form of transformer or induction-coil and a system for the transmission of electrical energy by means of the same in which the energy of the source is raised to a much higher potential for transmission over the line than has ever been practically employed heretofore, and the apparatus is constructed with reference to the production of such a potential and so as to be not only free from the danger of injury from the destruction of insulation, but safe to handle. To this end I construct an induction-coil or transformer in which the primary and secondary coils are wound or arranged in such manner that the convolutions of the conductor of the latter will be farther removed from the primary as the liability of injury from the effects of potential increases, the terminal or point of highest potential being the most remote, and so that between adjacent convolutions there shall be the least possible difference of potential.

The type of coil in which the last-named features are present is the flat spiral, and this form I generally employ, winding the primary on the outside of the secondary and taking off the current from the latter at the center or inner end of the spiral. I may depart from or vary this form, however, in the particulars hereinafter specified.

In constructing my improved transformers I employ a length of secondary which is ap-

proximately one-quarter of the wave length of the electrical disturbance in the circuit including the secondary coil, based on the velocity of propagation of electrical disturbances through such circuit, or, in general, of such length that the potential at the terminal of the secondary which is the more remote from the primary shall be at its maximum. In using these coils I connect one end of the secondary, or that in proximity to the primary, to earth, and in order to more effectually provide against injury to persons or to the apparatus I also connect it with the primary.

In the accompanying drawings, Figure 1 is a diagram illustrating the plan of winding and connection which I employ in constructing my improved coils and the manner of using them for the transmission of energy over long distances. Fig. 2 is a side elevation, and Fig. 3 a side elevation and part section, of modified forms of induction-coil made in accordance with my invention.

A designates a core, which may be magnetic when so desired.

B is the secondary coil, wound upon said core in generally spiral form.

C is the primary, which is wound around in proximity to the secondary. One terminal of the latter will be at the center of the spiral coil, and from this the current is taken to line or for other purposes. The other terminal of the secondary is connected to earth and preferably also to the primary.

When two coils are used in a transmission system in which the currents are raised to a high potential and then reconverted to a lower potential, the receiving-transformer will be constructed and connected in the same manner as the first—that is to say, the inner or center end of what corresponds to the secondary of the first will be connected to line and the other end to earth and to the local circuit or that which corresponds to the primary of the first. In such case also the line-wire should be supported in such manner as to avoid loss by the current jumping from line to objects in its vicinity and in contact with earth—as, for example, by means of long insulators, mounted, preferably, on metal poles, so that in case of leakage from the line it will pass harmlessly to earth. In Fig. 1, where such a system is illustrated, a dynamo G is con-

veniently represented as supplying the primary of the sending or "step-up" transformer, and lamps H and motors K are shown as connected with the corresponding circuit of the receiving or "step-down" transformer.

5 Instead of winding the coils in the form of a flat spiral the secondary may be wound on a support in the shape of a frustum of a cone and the primary wound around its base, as shown in Fig. 2.

10 In practice for apparatus designed for ordinary usage the coil is preferably constructed on the plan illustrated in Fig. 3. In this figure L L are spools of insulating material upon which the secondary is wound—in the present case, however, in two sections, so as to constitute really two secondaries. The primary C is a spirally-wound flat strip surrounding both secondaries B.

20 The inner terminals of the secondaries are led out through tubes of insulating material M, while the other or outside terminals are connected with the primary.

The length of the secondary coil B or of each secondary coil when two are used, as in Fig. 3, is, as before stated, approximately one-quarter of the wave length of the electrical disturbance in the secondary circuit, based on the velocity of propagation of the electrical disturbance through the coil itself and the circuit with which it is designed to be used—that is to say, if the rate at which a current traverses the circuit, including the coil, be one hundred and eighty-five thousand miles per second, then a frequency of nine hundred and twenty-five per second would maintain nine hundred and twenty-five stationary waves in a circuit one hundred and eighty-five thousand miles long, and each wave length would be two hundred miles in length. For such a frequency I should use a secondary fifty miles in length, so that at one terminal the potential would be zero and at the other maximum.

45 Coils of the character herein described have several important advantages. As the potential increases with the number of turns the difference of potential between adjacent turns is comparatively small, and hence a very high potential, impracticable with ordinary coils, may be successfully maintained.

As the secondary is electrically connected with the primary the latter will be at substantially the same potential as the adjacent portions of the secondary, so that there will be no tendency for sparks to jump from one to the other and destroy the insulation. Moreover, as both primary and secondary are grounded and the line-terminal of the coil carried and protected to a point remote from the apparatus the danger of a discharge through the body of a person handling or approaching the apparatus is reduced to a minimum.

I am aware that an induction-coil in the form of a flat spiral is not in itself new, and this I do not claim; but

What I claim as my invention is—

1. A transformer for developing or converting currents of high potential, comprising a primary and secondary coil, one terminal of the secondary being electrically connected with the primary, and with earth when the transformer is in use, as set forth.

2. A transformer for developing or converting currents of high potential, comprising a primary and secondary wound in the form of a flat spiral, the end of the secondary adjacent to the primary being electrically connected therewith and with earth when the transformer is in use, as set forth.

3. A transformer for developing or converting currents of high potential comprising a primary and secondary wound in the form of a spiral, the secondary being inside of, and surrounded by, the convolutions of the primary and having its adjacent terminal electrically connected therewith and with earth when the transformer is in use, as set forth.

4. In a system for the conversion and transmission of electrical energy, the combination of two transformers, one for raising, the other for lowering, the potential of the currents, the said transformers having one terminal of the longer or fine-wire coils connected to line, and the other terminals adjacent to the shorter coils electrically connected therewith and to the earth, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

M. LAWSON DYER,
G. W. MARTLING.

N. TESLA. ELECTRICAL TRANSFORMER.

No. 593,138.

Patented Nov. 2, 1897.

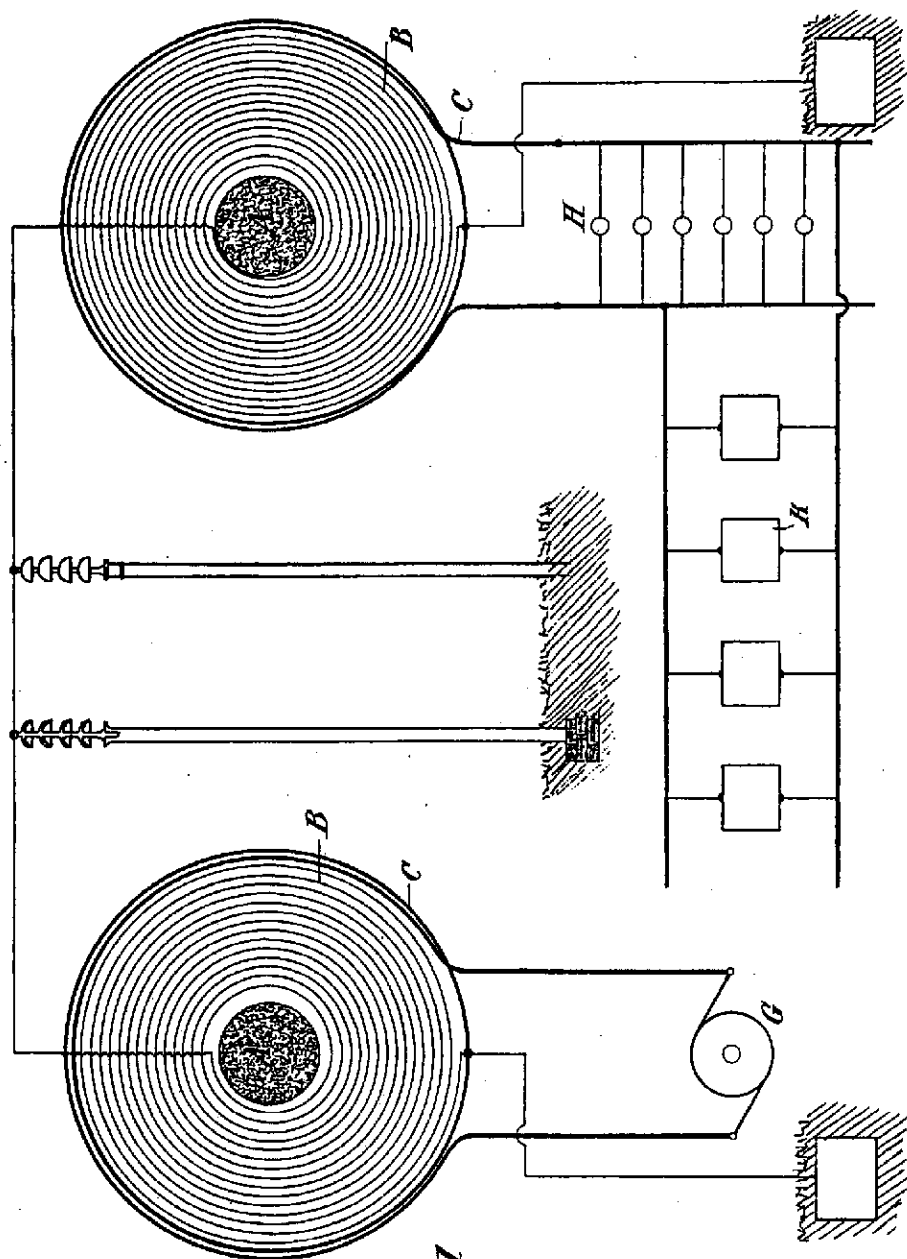


Fig. 1

WITNESSES

G. B. Linn.

Edwin B. Hopkinson.

INVENTOR

Nikola Tesla

BY

Ken. Curtis Age.

ATTORNEY

N. TESLA.
ELECTRICAL TRANSFORMER.

No. 593,138.

Patented Nov. 2, 1897.

Fig. 3

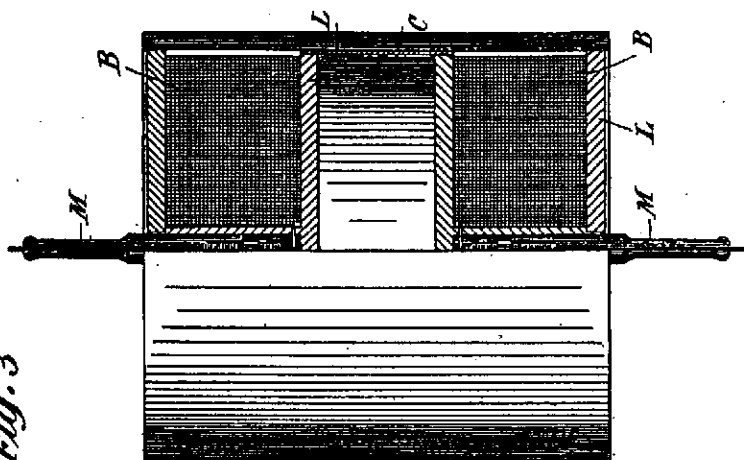
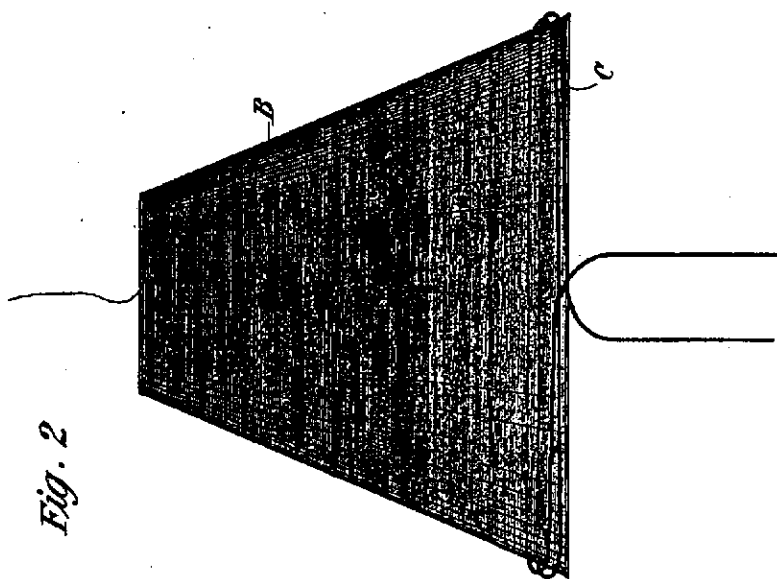


Fig. 2



WITNESSES

G. B. Loria.

Edwin B. Hopkinson.

INVENTOR

Nikola Tesla

BY

Kerr, Curtis & Age

ATTORNEYS.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

ELECTRICAL IGNITER FOR GAS-ENGINES.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 609,250, dated August 16, 1898.

Application filed February 17, 1897. Renewed June 15, 1898. Serial No. 683,524. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a citizen of the United States, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Electrical Igniters for Gas-Engines and Analogous Purposes, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawing accompanying and forming a part of the same.

In certain kinds of apparatus it is necessary for the operation of the machine itself or for effecting the object for which it is used to produce an electric spark or any other similar local effect at a given instant of time or at predetermined intervals. For example, in certain gas or explosive engines a flame or spark is necessary for the ignition of an explosive mixture of air and gas under the piston, and the most effective way of igniting the gaseous mixture has been found to be the production in the cylinder at the proper moments of an electric spark. The only practicable device by which this has been accomplished heretofore is an induction-coil comprising a primary and secondary circuit with a buzzer or rapidly-acting automatic circuit-breaker in the primary and a circuit-controller, such as a switch or commutator, located also in the primary or battery circuit and operated by some moving portion of the apparatus to temporarily close such circuit at the proper time, and thereby set in operation the automatic circuit-breaker, which causes between secondary terminals in the cylinder the discharge which is necessary for the proper ignition of the explosive mixture. Instead of thus temporarily closing the primary circuit the automatic circuit-breaker might be permitted to operate continuously, and the secondary, circuit normally broken, might be closed at the proper time to cause the spark to pass at any point. In either case the employment of a quick-acting circuit-breaker is necessary, for unless the induction-coil be of large size and the source of current of considerable power a slow or gradual make and break of the primary of a simple transformer, such as would ordinarily be effected by a switch or commutator, would not effect a discharge of the character necessary for the proper ignition of the gas.

There is, however, no form of vibrating or

quick-acting circuit-breaker of which I am aware that can be depended upon to operate with certainty to produce such a spark or which will continue to operate for any length of time without deterioration, and hence not only in the case of engines of the kind described, but in other forms of apparatus which involve the use of a high-tension induction-coil with a quick-acting circuit-breaker, the operation of the machine is contingent upon the proper operation of a comparatively insignificant but essential part.

The object of my invention is to provide a more certain and satisfactory means for use with and control by such machines or apparatus as I have mentioned for producing sparks or discharges of the desired character, and to this end I employ the following arrangement: Any suitable moving portion of the apparatus is caused to mechanically control the charging of a condenser and its discharge through a circuit in inductive relation to a secondary circuit leading to the terminals between which the discharge is to occur, so that at the desired intervals the condenser may be discharged through its circuit and induce in the other circuit a current of high potential which produces the desired spark or discharge.

One practical means of accomplishing this is to employ any proper form of switch or commutator operated directly or through suitable intermediate devices by a moving part of the apparatus and which is caused to complete an electric circuit which has been previously broken or interrupted for an appreciable time when the occurrence of the spark or discharge is necessary. The circuit thus closed includes a condenser, which by this operation of the switch is permitted to discharge, through the primary of a transformer, energy which it had previously received during the interruption of said circuit from a battery or discharge of a self-induction coil in series with the battery in the charging-circuit.

The ends of the secondary circuit of the transformer above mentioned are connected with the points or terminals in the machine between which the spark is to pass, and following the short-circuiting of the condenser by the closing of the switch a strong secondary discharge induced by the discharge of the

condenser through the primary will occur. It is possible by this means not only to produce a strong discharge of high tension, as in the form of a spark well adapted for the ignition of gas or other purposes for which sparks are employed, but to secure such result by apparatus very much less complicated and expensive than that heretofore employed for the purpose and which will be capable of certain and effective operation for an indefinite period of time.

I have illustrated the principle of my improvement and the manner in which the same is or may be carried out in the drawing hereto annexed. The invention is shown as used for effecting the operation of the piston of a gas-engine, the figure being a diagram.

A designates the cylinder of a gas-engine, B the piston, and C the piston-rod. Other parts of the engine are omitted from the illustration as unnecessary to an understanding of the invention.

On the piston-rod C is a commutator or circuit-controller upon which bear the terminals *a b* of an electric circuit D. This commutator comprises a continuous ring *c* and a split ring *d* side by side, so that when the terminals are on the latter the circuit is interrupted, but when on the former it is closed. The to-and-fro movement of the piston, therefore, operates to alternately make and break the circuit, the position of the commutator being such that the make occurs at the moment desired for the ignition of the explosive charge under the piston.

In the circuit D is a battery or other source of current E and the primary F of a transformer. Across the two conductors of the circuit, between the battery and the primary F, is a condenser G, which is charged by the battery when circuit D is interrupted at the commutator and which discharges through the primary when such circuit is closed.

In order that the condenser may receive a charge of high tension, a self-induction coil H is introduced in the circuit between itself and the battery, which coil stores up the energy of the battery when the circuit D is closed at the commutator and discharges it into the condenser when the circuit is broken.

The primary F is combined with a secondary K, the conductors from which lead, respectively, to an insulated terminal L within the cylinder A and to any other conducting-body in the vicinity of such point as to the cylinder itself. In consequence of this arrangement, when the piston reaches the proper point the circuit D is closed, the energy of the condenser is discharged through the primary with a sudden rush, and a strong and effective spark or flash is produced between the point L and the cylinder or piston which ignites the charge of explosive gas.

It will be understood from the preceding description that I do not limit myself to the specific construction or arrangement of the devices employed in carrying out my im-

provement and that these may be varied within wide limits.

What I claim is—

1. In an apparatus which depends for its operation or effect upon the production of a sudden electric discharge at a given instant, or at predetermined intervals of time, the combination with a moving part of said apparatus of a switch or commutator, a condenser, a charging-circuit for the same, a primary circuit through which the condenser discharges, and a secondary circuit in inductive relation to the said primary circuit and connected with the terminals at the point in the apparatus where the discharge is required, the switch or commutator being operated by the said moving part to effect the discharge of the condenser at the proper intervals, as set forth.

2. In an apparatus which depends for its operation or effect upon the production of a sudden electric discharge at a given instant, or at predetermined intervals of time, the combination with a moving part of said apparatus of a circuit and a circuit-controller adapted to close said circuit at the time when the occurrence of said discharge is desired, a source of current in said circuit, a condenser adapted to be charged by said source while the circuit is interrupted, and a transformer through the primary of which the condenser discharges when the circuit is closed, the secondary of the transformer being connected with the terminals at the point in the apparatus where the discharge is required, as set forth.

3. In an apparatus which depends for its operation or effect upon the production of an electric discharge, at a given instant, or at predetermined intervals of time, the combination with a moving part of said apparatus of a circuit and a circuit-controller adapted to close said circuit at the time when the occurrence of the spark is desired, a source of current in said circuit, a self-induction coil which stores the energy of the source while the circuit is closed, a condenser into which said coil discharges when the circuit is broken, and a transformer through the primary of which the condenser discharges, the secondary of said transformer being connected with separated terminals at the point where the discharge is required.

4. In a gas or explosive engine of the kind described, the combination with a moving part of said engine of a circuit-closer or switch controlling the charging and discharging of a condenser, separated terminals in the cylinder or explosive-chamber, and a transformer through the primary of which the condenser discharges, the secondary being connected with the terminals in the cylinder, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

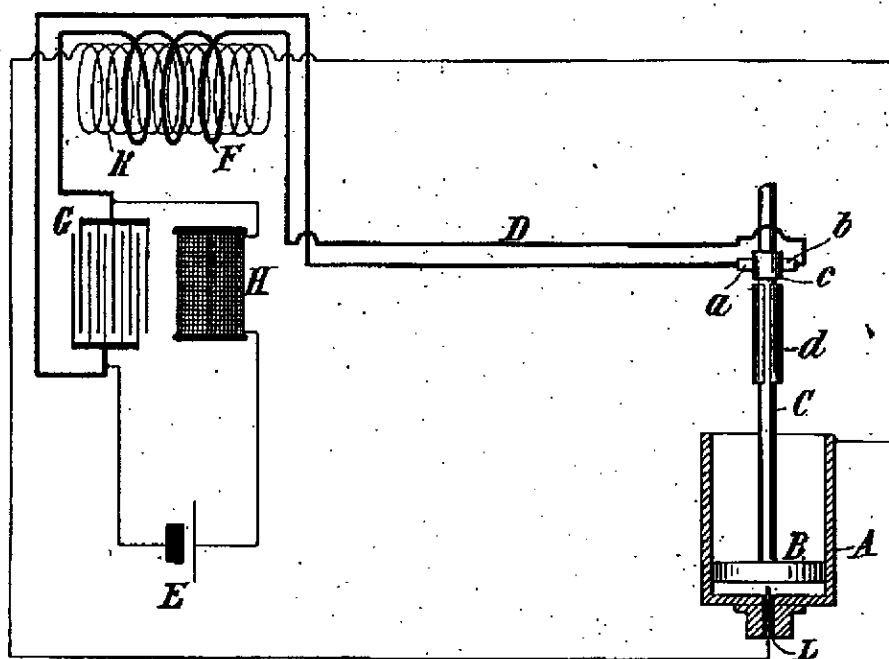
M. LAWSON DYER,
EDWIN B. HOPKINSON.

N. TESLA.

ELECTRICAL IGNITER FOR GAS ENGINES.

(Application filed Feb. 17, 1907. Renewed June 18, 1908.)

(No Model.)



Witnesses:

W. Lammie Tyrr.
Edwin B. Hopkinson.

Nikola Tesla, Inventor
by Kerr. Curtis Rogers

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

APPARATUS FOR THE UTILIZATION OF RADIANT ENERGY.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 685,957, dated November 5, 1901.

Application filed March 21, 1901. Serial No. 52,153. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a citizen of the United States, residing at the borough of Manhattan, in the city, county, and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Apparatus for the Utilization of Radiant Energy, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

It is well known that certain radiations—such as those of ultra-violet light, cathodic, Roentgen rays, or the like—possess the property of charging and discharging conductors of electricity, the discharge being particularly noticeable when the conductor upon which the rays impinge is negatively electrified. These radiations are generally considered to be ether vibrations of extremely small wave lengths, and in explanation of the phenomena noted it has been assumed by some authorities that they ionize or render conducting the atmosphere through which they are propagated. My own experiments and observations, however, lead me to conclusions more in accord with the theory heretofore advanced by me that sources of such radiant energy throw off with great velocity minute particles of matter which are strongly electrified, and therefore capable of charging an electrical conductor, or, even if not so, may at any rate discharge an electrified conductor either by carrying off bodily its charge or otherwise.

My present application is based upon a discovery which I have made that when rays or radiations of the above kind are permitted to fall upon an insulated conducting-body connected to one of the terminals of a condenser while the other terminal of the same is made by independent means to receive or to carry away electricity a current flows into the condenser so long as the insulated body is exposed to the rays, and under the conditions hereinafter specified an indefinite accumulation of electrical energy in the condenser takes place. This energy after a suitable time interval, during which the rays are allowed to act, may manifest itself in a powerful discharge, which may be utilized for the

operation or control of mechanical or electrical devices or rendered useful in many other ways.

In applying my discovery I provide a condenser, preferably of considerable electrostatic capacity, and connect one of its terminals to an insulated metal plate or other conducting-body exposed to the rays or streams of radiant matter. It is very important, particularly in view of the fact that electrical energy is generally supplied at a very slow rate to the condenser, to construct the same with the greatest care. I use, by preference, the best quality of mica as dielectric, taking every possible precaution in insulating the armatures, so that the instrument may withstand great electrical pressures without leaking and may leave no perceptible electrification when discharging instantaneously. In practice I have found that the best results are obtained with condensers treated in the manner described in a patent granted to me February 23, 1897, No. 577,671. Obviously the above precautions should be the more rigorously observed the slower the rate of charging and the smaller the time interval during which the energy is allowed to accumulate in the condenser. The insulated plate or conducting-body should present as large a surface as practicable to the rays or streams of matter, I having ascertained that the amount of energy conveyed to it per unit of time is under otherwise identical conditions proportionate to the area exposed, or nearly so. Furthermore, the surface should be clean and preferably highly polished or amalgamated. The second terminal or armature of the condenser may be connected to one of the poles of a battery or other source of electricity or to any conducting body or object whatever of such properties or so conditioned that by its means electricity of the required sign will be supplied to the terminal. A simple way of supplying positive or negative electricity to the terminal is to connect the same either to an insulated conductor supported at some height in the atmosphere or to a grounded conductor, the former, as is well known, furnishing positive and the latter negative electricity. As the rays or supposed streams of mat-

ter generally convey a positive charge to the first condenser-terminal, which is connected to the plate or conductor above mentioned, I usually connect the second terminal of the condenser to the ground, this being the most convenient way of obtaining negative electricity, dispensing with the necessity of providing an artificial source. In order to utilize for any useful purpose the energy accumulated in the condenser, I furthermore connect to the terminals of the same a circuit including an instrument or apparatus which it is desired to operate and another instrument or device for alternately closing and opening the circuit. This latter may be any form of circuit-controller, with fixed or movable parts or electrodes, which may be actuated either by the stored energy or by independent means.

My discovery will be more fully understood from the following description and annexed drawings, to which reference is now made, and in which—

Figure 1 is a diagram showing the general arrangement of apparatus as usually employed. Fig. 2 is a similar diagram illustrating more in detail typical forms of the devices or elements used in practice, and Figs. 3 and 4 are diagrammatical representations of modified arrangements suitable for special purposes.

As illustrative of the manner in which the several parts or elements of the apparatus in one of its simplest forms are to be arranged and connected for useful operation, reference is made to Fig. 1, in which C is the condenser, P the insulated plate or conducting-body which is exposed to the rays, and P' another plate or conductor which is grounded, all being joined in series, as shown. The terminals TT' of the condenser are also connected to a circuit which includes a device R to be operated and a circuit-controlling device *d* of the character above referred to.

The apparatus being arranged as shown, it will be found that when the radiations of the sun or of any other source capable of producing the effects before described fall upon the plate P an accumulation of electrical energy in the condenser C will result. This phenomenon, I believe, is best explained as follows: The sun, as well as other sources of radiant energy, throws off minute particles of matter positively electrified, which, impinging upon the plate P, communicate continuously an electrical charge to the same. The opposite terminal of the condenser being connected to the ground, which may be considered as a vast reservoir of negative electricity, a feeble current flows continuously into the condenser, and inasmuch as these supposed particles are of an inconceivably small radius or curvature, and consequently charged to a relatively very high potential, this charging of the condenser may continue, as I have actually observed, almost indefinitely, even to the point of rupturing the dielectric. If the

device *d* be of such character that it will operate to close the circuit in which it is included when the potential in the condenser has reached a certain magnitude, the accumulated charge will pass through the circuit, which also includes the receiver R, and operate the latter.

In illustration of a particular form of apparatus which may be used in carrying out my discovery I now refer to Fig. 2. In this figure, which in the general arrangement of the elements is identical to Fig. 1, the device *d* is shown as composed of two very thin conducting-plates *t t'*, placed in close proximity and very mobile, either by reason of extreme flexibility or owing to the character of their support. To improve their action, they should be inclosed in a receptacle, from which the air may be exhausted. The plates *t t'* are connected in series with a working circuit, including a suitable receiver, which in this case is shown as consisting of an electromagnet M, a movable armature *a*, a retractile spring *b*, and a ratchet-wheel *w*, provided with a spring-pawl *r*, which is pivoted to armature *a*, as illustrated. When the radiations of the sun or other radiant source fall upon plate P, a current flows into the condenser, as above explained, until the potential therein rises sufficiently to attract and bring into contact the two plates *t t'*, and thereby close the circuit connected to the two condenser-terminals. This permits a flow of current which energizes the magnet M, causing it to draw down the armature *a* and impart a partial rotation to the ratchet-wheel *w*. As the current ceases the armature is retracted by the spring *b*, without, however, moving the wheel *w*. With the stoppage of the current the plates *t t'* cease to be attracted and separate, thus restoring the circuit to its original condition.

Fig. 3 shows a modified form of apparatus used in connection with an artificial source of radiant energy, which in this instance may be an arc emitting copiously ultra-violet rays. A suitable reflector may be provided for concentrating and directing the radiations. A magnet R and circuit-controller *d* are arranged as in the previous figures; but in the present case the former instead of performing itself the whole work only serves the purpose of alternately opening and closing a local circuit, containing a source of current B and a receiving or translating device D. The controller *d*, if desired, may consist of two fixed electrodes separated by a minute air-gap or weak dielectric film, which breaks down more or less suddenly when a definite difference of potential is reached at the terminals of the condenser and returns to its original state upon the passage of the discharge.

Still another modification is shown in Fig. 4, in which the source S of radiant energy is a special form of Roentgen tube devised by

me, having but one terminal *k*, generally of aluminium, in the form of half a sphere, with a plain polished surface on the front side, from which the streams are thrown off. It may be excited by attaching it to one of the terminals of any generator of sufficiently high electromotive force; but whatever apparatus be used it is important that the tube be exhausted to a high degree, as otherwise it might prove entirely ineffective. The working or discharge circuit connected to the terminals *T T'* of the condenser includes in this case the primary *p* of a transformer and a circuit-controller comprising a fixed terminal or brush *t* and a movable terminal *t'* in the shape of a wheel, with conducting and insulating segments, which may be rotated at an arbitrary speed by any suitable means. In inductive relation to the primary wire or coil *p* is a secondary *s*, usually of a much greater number of turns, to the ends of which is connected a receiver *R*. The terminals of the condenser being connected, as indicated, one to an insulated plate *P* and the other to a grounded plate *P'*, when the tube *S* is excited rays or streams of matter are emitted from the same, which convey a positive charge to the plate *P* and condenser-terminal *T*, while terminal *T'* is continuously receiving negative electricity from the plate *P'*. This, as before explained, results in an accumulation of electrical energy in the condenser, which goes on as long as the circuit including the primary *p* is interrupted. Whenever the circuit is closed owing to the rotation of the terminal *t'*, the stored energy is discharged through the primary *p*, this giving rise in the secondary *s* to induced currents, which operate the receiver *R*.

It is clear from what has been stated above that if the terminal *T* is connected to a plate supplying positive instead of negative electricity the rays should convey negative electricity to plate *P*. The source *S* may be any form of Roentgen or Lenard tube; but it is obvious from the theory of action that in order to be very effective the electrical impulses exciting it should be wholly or at least preponderatingly of one sign. If ordinary symmetrical alternating currents are employed, provision should be made for allowing the rays to fall upon the plate *P* only during those periods when they are productive of the desired result. Evidently if the radiations of the source be stopped or intercepted or their intensity varied in any manner, as by periodically interrupting or rhythmically varying the current exciting the source, there will be corresponding changes in the action upon the receiver *R*, and thus signals may be transmitted and many other useful effects produced. Furthermore, it will be understood that any form of circuit-closer which will respond to or be set in operation when a predetermined amount of energy is stored in the condenser may be used in lieu of the device

specifically described with reference to Fig. 2 and also that the special details of construction and arrangement of the several parts of the apparatus may be very greatly varied without departure from the invention.

Having described my invention, what I claim is—

1. An apparatus for utilizing radiant energy, comprising in combination a condenser, one armature of which is subjected to the action of rays or radiations, independent means for charging the other armature, a circuit and apparatus therein adapted to be operated or controlled by the discharge of the condenser, as set forth.
2. An apparatus for utilizing radiant energy, comprising in combination, a condenser, one armature of which is subjected to the action of rays or radiations, independent means for charging the other armature, a local circuit connected with the condenser-terminals, a circuit-controller therein and means adapted to be operated or controlled by the discharge of the condenser when the local circuit is closed, as set forth.
3. An apparatus for utilizing radiant energy, comprising in combination, a condenser, one terminal of which is subjected to the action of rays or radiations, independent means for charging the other armature, a local circuit connected with the condenser-terminals, a circuit-controller therein dependent for operation on a given rise of potential in the condenser, and devices operated by the discharge of the condenser when the local circuit is closed, as set forth.
4. An apparatus for utilizing radiant energy, comprising in combination, a condenser, one terminal of which is subjected to the action of rays or radiations, and the other of which is connected with the ground, a circuit and apparatus therein adapted to be operated by the discharge of the accumulated energy in the condenser, as set forth.
5. An apparatus for utilizing radiant energy, comprising in combination, a condenser, one terminal of which is subjected to the action of rays or radiations and the other of which is connected with the ground, a local circuit connected with the condenser-terminals, a circuit-controller therein and means adapted to be operated by the discharge of the condenser when the local circuit is closed, as set forth.
6. An apparatus for utilizing radiant energy, comprising in combination, a condenser, one terminal of which is subjected to the action of rays or radiations and the other of which is connected with the ground, a local circuit connected with the condenser-terminals, a circuit-controller therein adapted to be operated by a given rise of potential in the condenser, and devices operated by the discharge of the condenser when the local circuit is closed, as set forth.
7. An apparatus for utilizing radiant en-

ergy, comprising a condenser, having one terminal connected to earth and the other to an elevated conducting-plate, which is adapted to receive the rays from a distant source of
5 radiant energy, a local circuit connected with the condenser-terminals, a receiver therein, and a circuit-controller therefor which is

adapted to be operated by a given rise of potential in the condenser, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

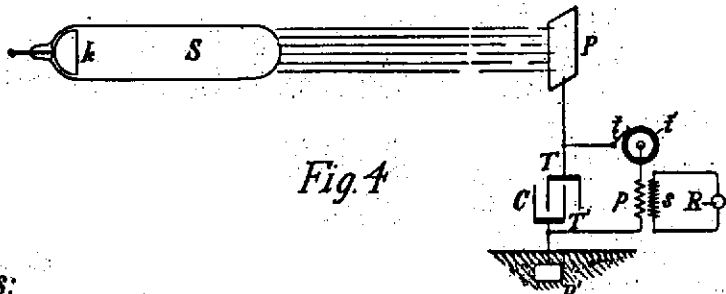
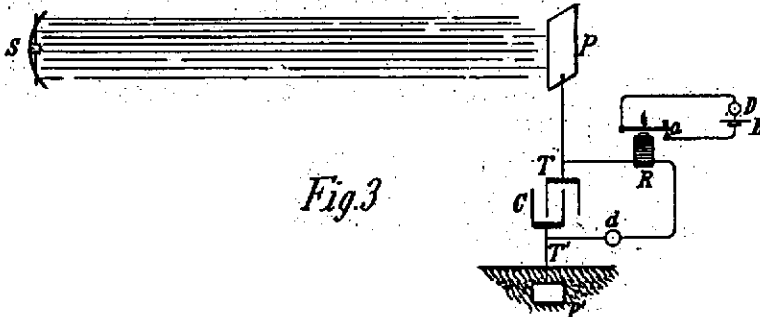
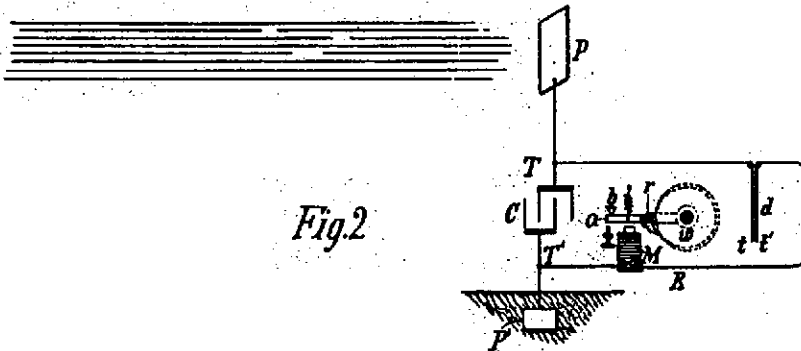
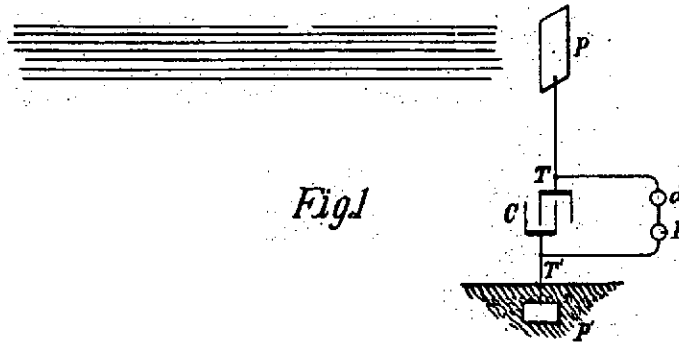
M. LAWSON DYER,
RICHARD DONOVAN.

N. TESLA.

APPARATUS FOR THE UTILIZATION OF RADIANT ENERGY.

(Application filed Mar. 21, 1901.)

(No Model.)



Witnesses:

Ralph J. Ketter
Wm. L. Loomis Esq.

Inventor

Nikola Tesla

by *Ken. Page & Cooper* Attys

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

METHOD OF UTILIZING RADIANT ENERGY.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 685,958, dated November 5, 1901.

Application filed March 21, 1901. Serial No. 52,154. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a citizen of the United States, residing at the borough of Manhattan, in the city, county, and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Methods of Utilizing Radiant Energy, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

It is well known that certain radiations—such as those of ultra-violet light, cathodic, Roentgen rays, or the like—possess the property of charging and discharging conductors of electricity, the discharge being particularly noticeable when the conductor upon which the rays impinge is negatively electrified. These radiations are generally considered to be ether vibrations of extremely small wave lengths, and in explanation of the phenomena noted it has been assumed by some authorities that they ionize or render conducting the atmosphere through which they are propagated. My own experiments and observations, however, lead me to conclusions more in accord with the theory heretofore advanced by me that sources of such radiant energy throw off with great velocity minute particles of matter which are strongly electrified, and therefore capable of charging an electrical conductor, or even if not so may at any rate discharge an electrified conductor either by carrying off bodily its charge or otherwise.

My present application is based upon a discovery which I have made that when rays or radiations of the above kind are permitted to fall upon an insulated conducting body connected to one of the terminals of a condenser, while the other terminal of the same is made by independent means to receive or to carry away electricity, a current flows into the condenser so long as the insulated body is exposed to the rays, and under the conditions hereinafter specified an indefinite accumulation of electrical energy in the condenser takes place. This energy after a suitable time interval, during which the rays are allowed to act, may manifest itself in a powerful discharge, which may be utilized for the operation or control of mechanical or elec-

trical devices or rendered useful in many other ways.

In applying my discovery I provide a condenser, preferably of considerable electrostatic capacity, and connect one of its terminals to an insulated metal plate or other conducting body exposed to the rays or streams of radiant matter. It is very important, particularly in view of the fact that electrical energy is generally supplied at a very slow rate to the condenser, to construct the same with the greatest care. I use by preference the best quality of mica as dielectric, taking every possible precaution in insulating the armatures, so that the instrument may withstand great electrical pressures without leaking and may leave no perceptible electrification when discharging instantaneously. In practice I have found that the best results are obtained with condensers treated in the manner described in a patent granted to me February 23, 1897, No. 577,671. Obviously the above precautions should be the more rigorously observed the slower the rate of charging and the smaller the time interval during which the energy is allowed to accumulate in the condenser. The insulated plate or conducting body should present as large a surface as practicable to the rays or streams of matter, I having ascertained that the amount of energy conveyed to it per unit of time is under otherwise identical conditions proportionate to the area exposed, or nearly so. Furthermore, the surface should be clean and preferably highly polished or amalgamated. The second terminal or armature of the condenser may be connected to one of the poles of a battery or other source of electricity or to any conducting body or object whatever of such properties or so conditioned that by its means electricity of the required sign will be supplied to the terminal. A simple way of supplying positive or negative electricity to the terminal is to connect the same either to an insulated conductor, supported at some height in the atmosphere, or to a grounded conductor, the former, as is well known, furnishing positive and the latter negative electricity. As the rays or supposed streams of matter generally convey a positive charge to the first condenser-terminal, which is connect-

ed to the plate or conductor above mentioned, I usually connect the second terminal of the condenser to the ground, this being the most convenient way of obtaining negative electricity, dispensing with the necessity of providing an artificial source. In order to utilize for any useful purpose the energy accumulated in the condenser, I furthermore connect to the terminals of the same a circuit including an instrument or apparatus which it is desired to operate and another instrument or device for alternately closing and opening the circuit. This latter may be any form of circuit-controller, with fixed or movable parts or electrodes, which may be actuated either by the stored energy or by independent means.

The rays or radiations which are to be utilized for the operation of the apparatus above described in general terms may be derived from a natural source, as the sun, or may be artificially produced by such means, for example, as an arc-lamp, a Roentgen tube, and the like, and they may be employed for a great variety of useful purposes.

My discovery will be more fully understood from the following detailed description and annexed drawings, to which reference is now made, and in which—

Figure 1 is a diagram showing typical forms of the devices or elements as arranged and connected in applying the method for the operation of a mechanical contrivance or instrument solely by the energy stored; and Fig. 2 is a diagrammatical representation of a modified arrangement suitable for special purposes, with a circuit-controller actuated by independent means.

Referring to Fig. 1, C is the condenser, P the insulated plate or conducting body, which is exposed to the rays, and P' another plate or conductor, all being joined in series, as shown. The terminals T T' of the condenser are also connected to a circuit including a receiver R, which is to be operated, and a circuit-controlling device d, which in this case is composed of two very thin conducting-plates t t', placed in close proximity and very mobile, either by reason of extreme flexibility or owing to the character of their support. To improve their action, they should be inclosed in a receptacle from which the air may be exhausted. The receiver R is shown as consisting of an electromagnet M, a movable armature a, a retractile spring b, and a ratchet-wheel w, provided with a spring-pawl r, which is pivoted to armature a, as illustrated. The apparatus being arranged as shown, it will be found that when the radiations of the sun or of any other source capable of producing the effects before described fall upon the plate P an accumulation of electrical energy in the condenser C will result. This phenomenon, I believe, is best explained as follows: The sun as well as other sources of radiant energy throw off minute particles of matter positively electrified, which, impinging upon the plate P, communicate an electrical charge to the same. The

opposite terminal of the condenser being connected to the ground, which may be considered as a vast reservoir of negative electricity, a feeble current flows continuously into the condenser, and inasmuch as these supposed particles are of an inconceivably small radius or curvature, and consequently charged to a relatively very high potential, this charging of the condenser may continue, as I have found in practice, almost indefinitely, even to the point of rupturing the dielectric. Obviously whatever circuit-controller be employed it should operate to close the circuit in which it is included when the potential in the condenser has reached the desired magnitude. Thus in Fig. 2 when the electrical pressure at the terminals T T' rises to a certain predetermined value the plates t t', attracting each other, close the circuit connected to the terminals. This permits a flow of current which energizes the magnet M, causing it to draw down the armature a and impart a partial rotation to the ratchet-wheel w. As the current ceases the armature is retracted by the spring b without, however, moving the wheel w. With the stoppage of the current the plates t t' cease to be attracted and separate, thus restoring the circuit to its original condition.

Many useful applications of this method of utilizing the radiations emanating from the sun or other source and many ways of carrying out the same will at once suggest themselves from the above description. By way of illustration a modified arrangement is shown in Fig. 2, in which the source S of radiant energy is a special form of Roentgen tube devised by me having but one terminal k, generally of aluminium, in the form of half a sphere with a plain polished surface on the front side, from which the streams are thrown off. It may be excited by attaching it to one of the terminals of any generator of sufficiently-high electromotive force; but whatever apparatus be used it is important that the tube be exhausted to a high degree, as otherwise it might prove entirely ineffective. The working or discharge circuit connected to the terminals T T' of the condenser includes in this case the primary p of a transformer and a circuit-controller comprising a fixed terminal or brush t and a movable terminal t' in the shape of a wheel with conducting and insulating segments which may be rotated at an arbitrary speed by any suitable means. In inductive relation to the primary wire or coil p is a secondary s, usually of a much greater number of turns, to the ends of which is connected a receiver R. The terminals of the condenser being connected as indicated, one to an insulated plate P and the other to a grounded plate P', when the tube S is excited rays or streams of matter are emitted from the same, which convey a positive charge to the plate P and condenser-terminal T, while terminal T' is continuously receiving negative electricity from the plate

P'. This, as before explained, results in an accumulation of electrical energy in the condenser, which goes on as long as the circuit including the primary *p* is interrupted.

5 Whenever the circuit is closed, owing to the rotation of the terminal *t'*, the stored energy is discharged through the primary *p*, this giving rise in the secondary *s* to induced currents which operate the receiver R.

10 It is clear from what has been stated above that if the terminal T' is connected to a plate supplying positive instead of negative electricity the rays should convey negative electricity to plate P. The source S may be any

15 form of Roentgen or Lenard tube; but it is obvious from the theory of action that in order to be very effective the electrical impulses exciting it should be wholly or at least preponderatingly of one sign. If ordinary

20 symmetrical alternating currents are employed, provision should be made for allowing the rays to fall upon the plate P only during those periods when they are productive of the desired result. Evidently if the

25 radiations of the source be stopped or intercepted or their intensity varied in any manner, as by periodically interrupting or rhythmically varying the current exciting the source, there will be corresponding changes

30 in the action upon the receiver R, and thus signals may be transmitted and many other useful effects produced. Furthermore, it will be understood that any form of circuit-closer which will respond to or be set in operation

35 when a predetermined amount of energy is stored in the condenser may be used in lieu of the device specifically described with reference to Fig. 1, and also that the special details of construction and arrangement of

40 the several parts of the apparatus may be very greatly varied without departure from the invention.

Having described my invention, what I claim is—

45 1. The method of utilizing radiant energy,

which consists in charging one of the armatures of a condenser by rays or radiations, and the other armature by independent means, and discharging the condenser through a suitable receiver, as set forth.

2. The method of utilizing radiant energy, which consists in simultaneously charging a condenser by means of rays or radiations and an independent source of electrical energy, and discharging the condenser through a suitable receiver, as set forth.

3. The method of utilizing radiant energy, which consists in charging one of the armatures of a condenser by rays or radiations, and the other by independent means, controlling the action or effect of said rays or radiations and discharging the condenser through a suitable receiver, as set forth.

4. The method of utilizing radiant energy, which consists in charging one of the armatures of a condenser by rays or radiations and the other by independent means, varying the intensity of the said rays or radiations and periodically discharging the condenser through a suitable receiver, as set forth.

5. The method of utilizing radiant energy, which consists in directing upon an elevated conductor, connected to one of the armatures of a condenser, rays or radiations capable of positively electrifying the same, carrying off electricity from the other armature by connecting the same with the ground, and discharging the accumulated energy through a suitable receiver, as set forth.

6. The method of utilizing radiant energy, which consists in charging one of the armatures of a condenser by rays or radiations, and the other by independent means, and effecting by the automatic discharge of the accumulated energy the operation or control of a suitable receiver, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

M. LAWSON DYER,
RICHARD DONOVAN.

N. TESLA.
METHOD OF UTILIZING RADIANT ENERGY.

(Application filed Mar. 21, 1901.)

(No Model.)

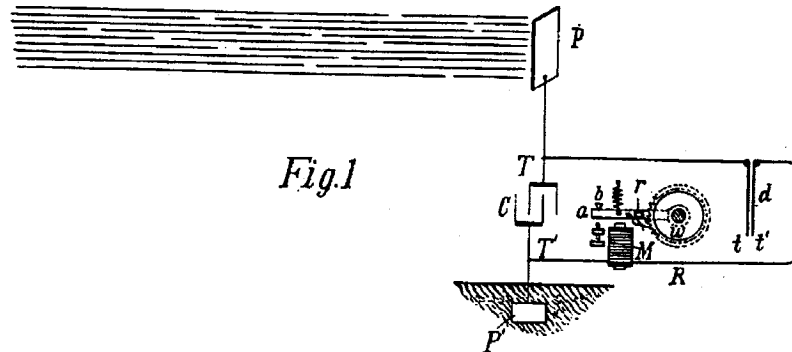


Fig. 1

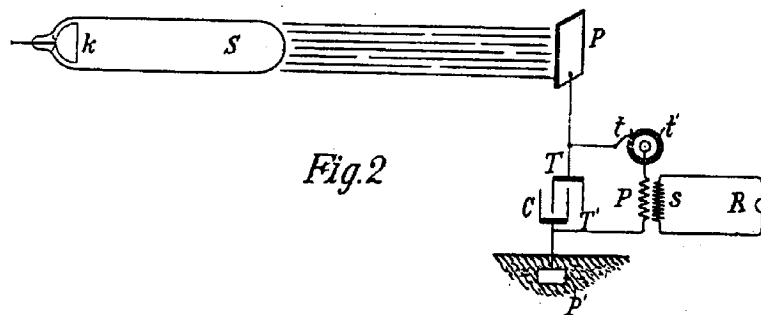


Fig. 2

Witnesses:

Raphael Ritter
M. Lammou Syer

Nikola Tesla, Inventor

by New. Page & Cooper
Attys

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF SMILJAN LIKA, AUSTRIA-HUNGARY, ASSIGNOR TO THE
TESLA ELECTRIC LIGHT AND MANUFACTURING COMPANY, OF RAHWAY,
NEW JERSEY.

COMMUTATOR FOR DYNAMO-ELECTRIC MACHINES.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 334,823, dated January 26, 1886.

Application filed May 6, 1885. Serial No. 164,534. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, of Smiljan Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, have invented an Improvement in Dynamo-Electric Machines, of which the following is a specification.

My invention relates to the commutators on dynamo-electric machines, especially in machines of great electromotive force, adapted to arc lights; and it consists in a device by means of which the sparking on the commutator is prevented.

It is known that in machines of great electromotive force—such, for instance, as those used for arc lights—whenever one commutator bar or plate comes out of contact with the collecting-brush a spark appears on the commutator. This spark may be due to the break of the complete circuit, or of a shunt of low resistance formed by the brush between two or more commutator-bars. In the first case the spark is more apparent, as there is at the moment when the circuit is broken a discharge of the magnets through the field-helices, producing a great spark or flash which causes an unsteady current, rapid wear of the commutator bars and brushes, and waste of power. The sparking may be reduced by various devices, such as providing a path for the current at the moment when the commutator segment or bar leaves the brush, by short-circuiting the field-helices, by increasing the number of the commutator-bars, or by other similar means; but all these devices are expensive or not fully available, and seldom attain the object desired.

My invention enables me to prevent the sparking in a simple manner. For this purpose I employ with the commutator-bars and intervening insulating material mica, asbestos paper or other insulating and preferably incombustible material, which I arrange to bear on the surface of the commutator, near to and behind the brush.

My invention will be easily understood by reference to the accompanying drawings.

In the drawings, Figure 1 is a section of a commutator with an asbestos insulating device; and Fig. 2 is a similar view, representing two plates of mica upon the back of the brush.

In Fig. 1, C represents the commutator and

intervening insulating material; B B, the brushes. *dd* are sheets of asbestos paper or other suitable non-conducting material. *ff* are springs, the pressure of which may be adjusted by means of the screws *g g*.

In Fig. 2 a simple arrangement is shown with two plates of mica or other material. It will be seen that whenever one commutator-segment passes out of contact with the brush the formation of the arc will be prevented by the intervening insulating material coming in contact with the insulating material on the brush.

My invention may be carried out in many ways; and I do not limit myself to any particular device, as my invention consists, broadly, in providing a solid non-conducting body to bear upon the surface of the commutator, by the intervention of which body the sparking is partly or completely prevented.

I prefer to use asbestos paper or cloth impregnated with zinc-oxide, magnesia, zirconia, or other suitable material, as the paper and cloth are soft, and serve at the same time to wipe and polish the commutator; but mica or any other suitable material may be employed, said material being an insulator or a bad conductor of electricity.

My invention may be applied to any electric apparatus in which sliding contacts are employed.

I claim as my invention—

1. The combination, with the commutator-bars and intervening insulating material and brushes in a dynamo electric machine, of a solid insulator or bad conductor of electricity arranged to bear upon the surface of the commutator adjacent to the end of the brush, for the purpose set forth.

2. In an electric apparatus in which sliding contacts with intervening insulating material are employed, the combination, with the contact springs or brushes, of a solid insulator or bad conductor of electricity, as and for the purposes set forth.

Signed by me this 2d day of May, A. D. 1885.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

GEO. T. PINCKNEY,

WILLIAM G. MOTT.

(No Model.)

N. TESLA.

COMMUTATOR FOR DYNAMO ELECTRIC MACHINES.

No. 334,823.

Patented Jan. 26, 1886.

Fig. 1.

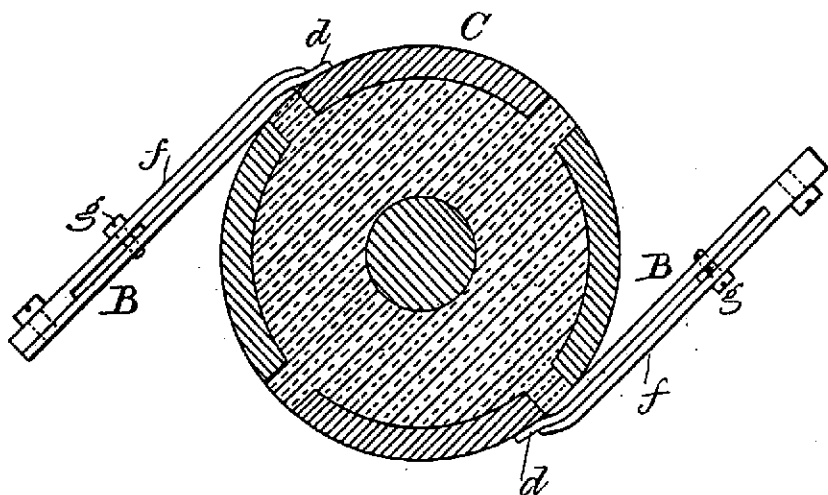
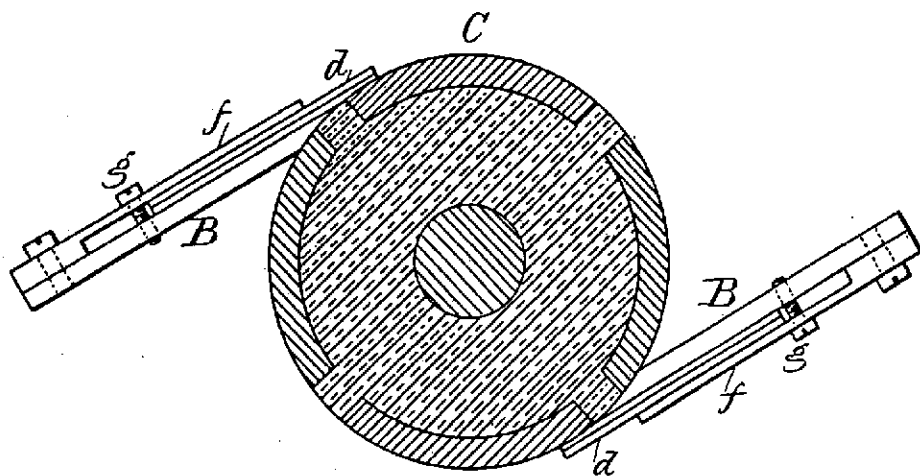


Fig. 2.



Witnesses

Chas. H. Smith.
J. Stahl

Inventor

Nikola Tesla.

For Lemuel W. Ferrell

att'y.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF SMILJAN LIKA, AUSTRIA-HUNGARY, ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC LIGHT AND MANUFACTURING COMPANY, OF RAHWAY, NEW JERSEY.

REGULATOR FOR DYNAMO-ELECTRIC MACHINES.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 336,961, dated March 2, 1886.

Application filed May 18, 1885. Serial No. 163,793. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, of Smiljan Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, have invented an Improvement in Dynamo-Electric Machines, of which the following is a specification.

The object of my invention is to provide an improved method for regulating the current on dynamo-electric machines.

In my improvement I make use of two main brushes, to which the ends of the helices of the field-magnets are connected, and an auxiliary brush and a branch or shunt connection from an intermediate point of the field-wire to the auxiliary brush.

The relative positions of the respective brushes are varied, either automatically or by hand, so that the shunt becomes inoperative when the auxiliary brush has a certain position upon the commutator; but when said auxiliary brush is moved in its relation to the main brushes, or the latter are moved in their relation to the auxiliary brush, the electric condition is disturbed and more or less of the current through the field-helices is diverted through the shunt or a current passed over said shunt to the field-helices.

By varying the relative position upon the commutator of the respective brushes automatically in proportion to the varying electrical conditions of the working-circuit the current developed can be regulated in proportion to the demands in the working-circuit.

Devices for automatically moving the brushes in dynamo-electric machines are well known, and those made use of in my machine may be of any desired or known character.

In the drawings, Figure 1 is a diagram illustrating my invention, showing one core of the field-magnets with one helix wound in the same direction throughout. Figs. 2 and 3 are diagrams showing one core of the field-magnets with a portion of the helices wound in opposite directions. Figs. 4 and 5 are diagrams illustrating the electric devices that may be employed for automatically adjusting the brushes, and Fig. 6 is a diagram illustrating the positions of the brushes when the machine is being energized on the start.

a and b are the positive and negative brushes

of the main or working circuit, and c the auxiliary brush. The working-circuit D extends from the brushes a and b , as usual, and contains electric lamps or other devices, D' , either in series or in multiple arc.

M M' represent the field-helices, the ends of which are connected to the main brushes a and b . The branch or shunt wire c' extends from the auxiliary brush c to the circuit of the field-helices, and is connected to the same at an intermediate point, X .

H represents the commutator, with the plates of ordinary construction. It is now to be understood that when the auxiliary brush c occupies such a position upon the commutator that the electro-motive force between the brushes a and c is to the electro-motive force between the brushes c and b as the resistance of the circuit a M c' c A to the resistance of the circuit b M' c' c B , the potentials of the points X and Y will be equal, and no current will flow over the auxiliary brush; but when the brush c occupies a different position the potentials of the points X and Y will be different, and a current will flow over the auxiliary brush to or from the commutator, according to the relative position of the brushes. If, for instance, the commutator-space between the brushes a and c , when the latter is at the neutral point, is diminished, a current will flow from the point Y over the shunt C to the brush b , thus strengthening the current in the part M' , and partly neutralizing the current in the part M ; but if the space between the brushes a and c is increased, the current will flow over the auxiliary brush in an opposite direction, and the current in M will be strengthened, and in M' partly neutralized.

By combining with the brushes a , b , and c any known automatic regulating mechanism the current developed can be regulated in proportion to the demands in the working-circuit. The parts M and M' of the field-wire may be wound in the same direction. (In this case they are arranged as shown in Fig. 1; or, the part M may be wound in the opposite direction, as shown in Figs. 2 and 3.)

It will be apparent that the respective cores of the field-magnets are subjected to the neutralizing or intensifying effects of the current

in the shunt through δ , and the magnetism of the cores will be partially neutralized or the point of greatest magnetism shifted, so that it will be more or less remote from or approaching to the armature, and hence the aggregate energizing actions of the field magnets on the armature will be correspondingly varied.

In the form indicated in Fig. 1 the regulation is effected by shifting the point of greatest magnetism, and in Figs. 2 and 3 the same effect is produced by the action of the current in the shunt passing through the neutralizing-helix.

The relative positions of the respective brushes may be varied by moving the auxiliary brush or the brush c may remain quiescent and the core p be connected to the main-brush holder A' , so as to adjust the brushes a, b in their relation to the brush c . If, however, an adjustment is applied to all the brushes, as seen in Fig. 5, the solenoid should be connected to both A and C , so as to move them toward or away from each other.

There are several known devices for giving motion in proportion to an electric current. I have shown the moving cores in Figs. 4 and 5 as convenient devices for obtaining the required extent of motion with very slight changes in the current passing through the helices. It is understood that the adjustment of the main brushes causes variations in the strength of the current independently of the relative position of said brushes to the auxiliary brush. In all cases the adjustment may be such that no current flows over the auxiliary brush when the dynamo is running with its normal load.

In Figs. 4 and 5, A, A indicate the main-brush holder, carrying the main brushes, and C the auxiliary-brush holder, carrying the auxiliary brush. These brush-holders are movable in arcs concentric with the center of the commutator-shaft. An iron piston, P , of the solenoid S , Fig. 4, is attached to the auxiliary-brush holder C . The adjustment is effected by means of a spring and screw or tightener.

In Fig. 5, instead of a solenoid, an iron tube inclosing a coil is shown. The piston of the

coil is attached to both brush-holders A, A and C . When the brushes are moved directly by electrical devices, as shown in Figs. 4 and 5, these are so constructed that the force exerted for adjusting is practically uniform through the whole length of motion.

I am aware that auxiliary brushes have been used in connection with the helices of the field-wire; but in these instances the helices received the entire current through the auxiliary brush or brushes, and said brushes could not be taken off without breaking the circuit through the field. These brushes caused, however, a great sparking upon the commutator. In my improvement the auxiliary brush causes very little or no sparking, and can be taken off without breaking the circuit through the field-helices.

My improvement has, besides, the advantage to facilitate the self-exciting of the machine in all cases where the resistance of the field-wire is very great comparatively to the resistance of the main circuit at the start—for instance, on arc-light machines. In this case I place the auxiliary brush c near to or in preference in contact with the brush b , as shown in Fig. 6. In this manner the part M' is completely cut out, and as the part M has a considerably smaller resistance than the whole length of the field-wire the machine excites itself, whereupon the auxiliary brush is shifted automatically to its normal position.

I claim as my invention—

The combination, with the commutator having two or more main brushes and an auxiliary brush, of the field-helices having their ends connected to the main brushes, and a branch or shunt connection from an intermediate point of the field-helices to the auxiliary brush, and means for varying the relative position upon the commutator of the respective brushes, substantially as set forth.

Signed by me this 18th day of May, A. D. 1885.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

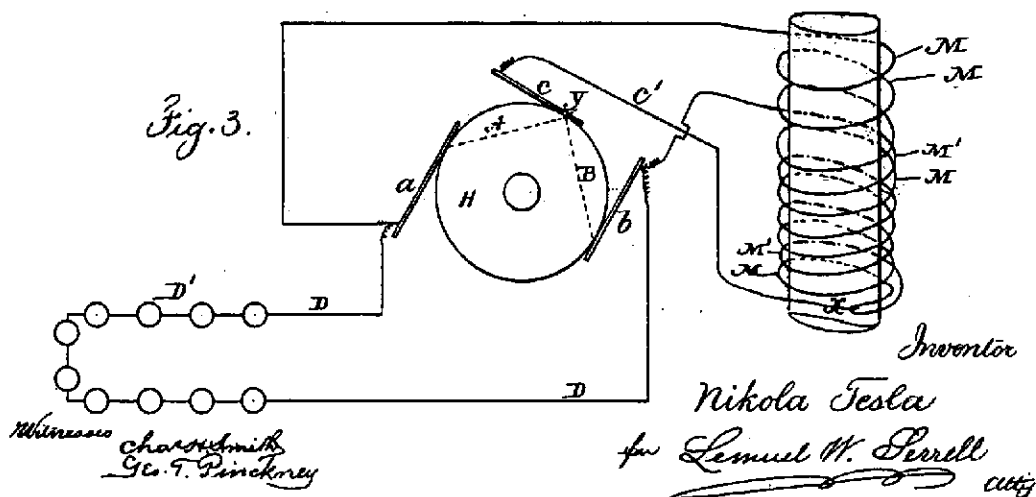
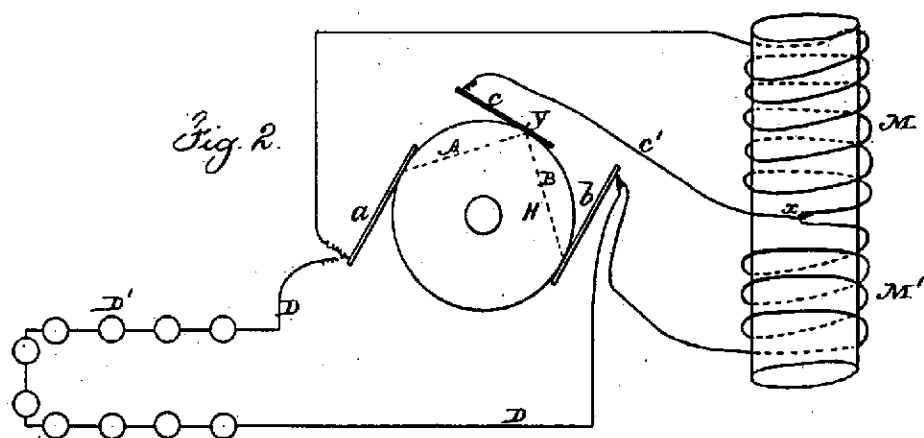
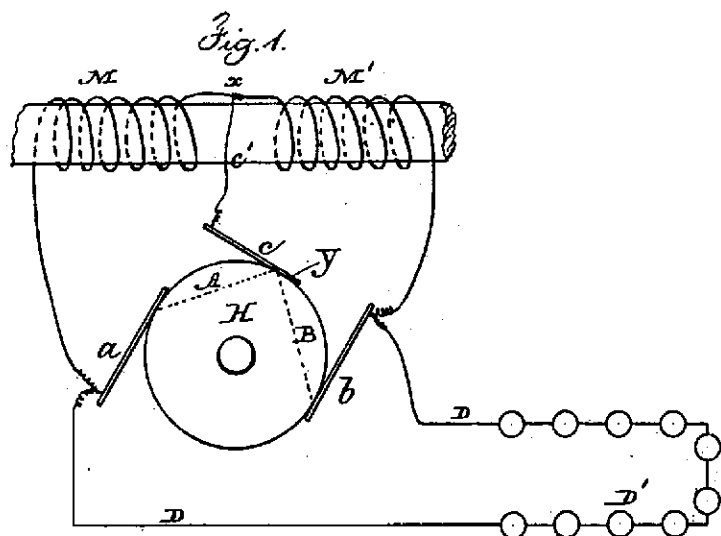
GEO. T. PINCKNEY,
WALLACE L. SERRELL.

N. TESLA.

REGULATOR FOR DYNAMO ELECTRIC MACHINES.

No. 336,961.

Patented Mar. 2, 1886.

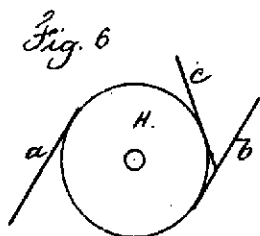
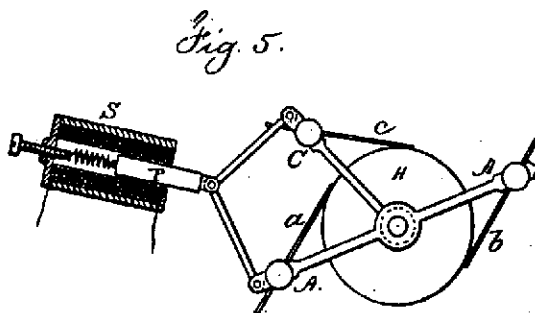
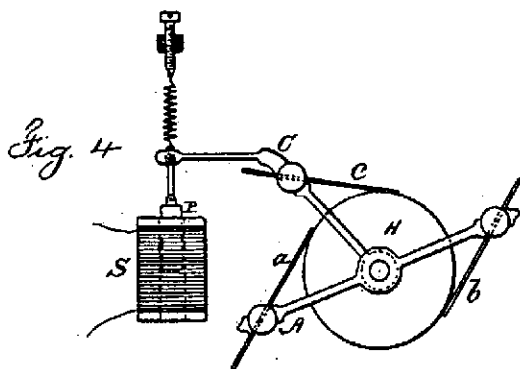


N. TESLA.

REGULATOR FOR DYNAMO ELECTRIC MACHINES.

No. 336,961.

Patented Mar. 2, 1886.



Witnesses

Charles Smith
J. Staub

Inventor

Nikola Tesla

per Lemuel W. Perrell

att.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF SMILJAN LIKA, AUSTRIA-HUNGARY, ASSIGNOR TO THE
TESLA ELECTRIC LIGHT AND MANUFACTURING COMPANY, OF RAHWAY,
NEW JERSEY.

REGULATOR FOR DYNAMO-ELECTRIC MACHINES.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 336,962, dated March 2, 1886.

Application filed June 1, 1885. Serial No. 167,136. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, of Smiljan Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, have invented an Improvement in Dynamo-Electric Machines, of which the following is a specification.

My invention is designed to provide an improved method for regulating the current in dynamo-electric machines.

In another application, No. 165,793, filed by me May 18, 1885, I have shown a method for regulating the current in a dynamo having the field-helices in a shunt. My present application relates to a dynamo having its field-helices connected in the main circuit.

In my improvement I employ one or more auxiliary brushes, by means of which I shunt a portion or the whole of the field-helices. According to the relative position upon the commutator of the respective brushes more or less current is caused to pass through the helices of the field, and the current developed by the machine can be varied at will by varying the relative positions of the brushes.

In the drawings the present invention is illustrated by diagrams, which are hereinafter separately referred to.

In Figure 1, *a* and *b* are the positive and negative brushes of the main circuit, and *c* an auxiliary brush. The main circuit *D* extends from the brushes *a* and *b*, as usual, and contains the helices *M* of the field-wire and the electric lamps or other working devices. The auxiliary brush *c* is connected to the point *x* of the main circuit by means of the wire *c'*.

H is a commutator of ordinary construction. From that which has been said in the application above referred to it will be seen that when the electro-motive force between the brushes *a* and *c* is to the electro-motive force between the brushes *c* and *b* as the resistance of the circuit *a M c' c A* to the resistance of the circuit *b C B c' D*, the potentials of the points *x* and *y* will be equal, and no current will pass over the auxiliary brush *c*; but if said brush occupies a different position relatively to the main brushes the electric condition is disturbed, and current will flow either from *y* to *x* or from *x* to *y*, according to the relative position of the brushes. In the first

case the current through the field-helices will be partly neutralized and the magnetism of the field-magnets diminished. In the second case the current will be increased and the magnets will gain strength. By combining with the brushes *a b c* any automatic regulating mechanism the current developed can be regulated automatically in proportion to the demands in the working-circuit.

In Figs. 6 and 7 I have represented some of the automatic means that may be used for moving the brushes. The core *P*, Fig. 6, of the solenoid-helix *S*, is connected with the brush *c* to move the same, and in Fig. 7 the core *P* is shown as within the helix *S*, and connected with both brushes *a* and *c*, so as to move the same toward or from each other, according to the strength of the current in the helix, the helix being within an iron tube, *S'*, that becomes magnetized and increases the action of the solenoid.

In practice it is sufficient to move only the auxiliary brush, as shown in Fig. 6, as the regulation is very sensitive to the slightest changes; but the relative position of the auxiliary brush to the main brushes may be varied by moving the main brushes, or both main and auxiliary brushes may be moved, as illustrated in Fig. 7. In the latter two cases, it will be understood, the motion of the main brushes relatively to the neutral line of the machine causes variations in the strength of the current independently of their relative position to the auxiliary brush. In all cases the adjustment may be such that when the machine is running with the ordinary load no current flows over the auxiliary brush.

The field-helices may be connected as shown in Fig. 1, or a part of the field-helices may be in the outgoing and the other part in the return circuit, and two auxiliary brushes may be employed as shown in Figs. 3 and 4. Instead of shunting the whole of the field-helices, a portion only of such helices may be shunted, as shown in Figs. 2 and 4.

The arrangement shown in Fig. 4 is advantageous, as it diminishes the sparking upon the commutator, the main circuit being closed through the auxiliary brushes at the moment of the break of the circuit at the main brushes.

The field-helices may be wound in the same direction, or a part may be wound in opposite directions.

The connection between the helices and the
5 auxiliary brush or brushes may be made by a wire of small resistance, or a resistance may be interposed (R, Fig. 5) between the point x and the auxiliary brush or brushes to divide the sensitiveness when the brushes are ad-
10 justed.

I am aware that it is not new to use auxiliary brushes on the commutator, and that auxiliary brushes have been connected to the field helices; but I am not aware that the helices of a
15 series dynamo have been shunted by means of auxiliary brushes, and that the relative position of the respective brushes has been varied for the purpose of regulating the current developed by the machine.

20 In instances where auxiliary brushes have been used in connection with the field-helices

said auxiliary brushes received the current continuously and caused great sparking, whereas in my invention the auxiliary brush receives current only when the normal elec- 25 trical conditions of the circuit are disturbed.

I claim as my invention—

The combination, with the commutator and main brushes and one or more auxiliary brushes, of the field-helices in the main cir- 30 cuits and one or more shunt-connections from the field-helices to the auxiliary brushes, the relative positions upon the commutator of the respective brushes being adjustable, for the purpose set forth.

Signed by me this 16th day of May, A. D. 35 1885.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

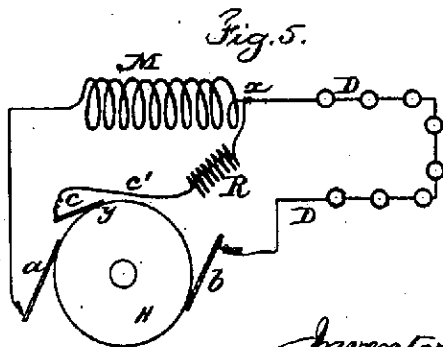
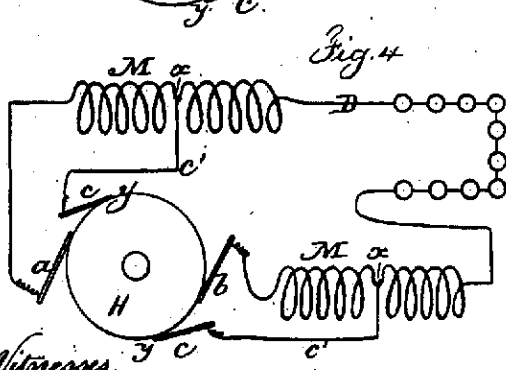
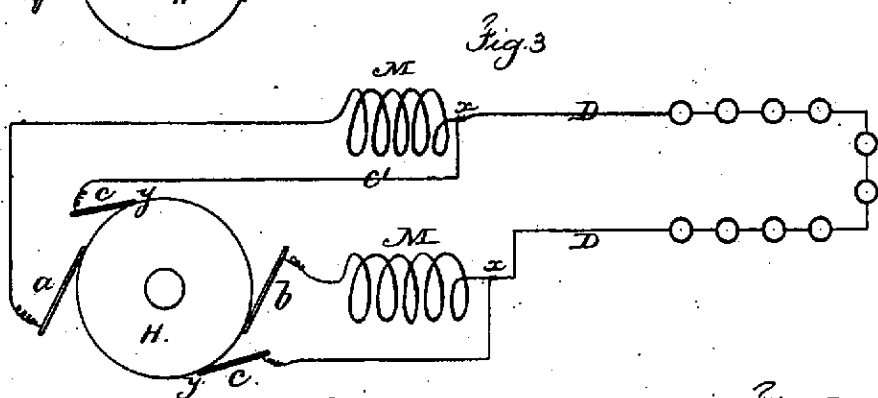
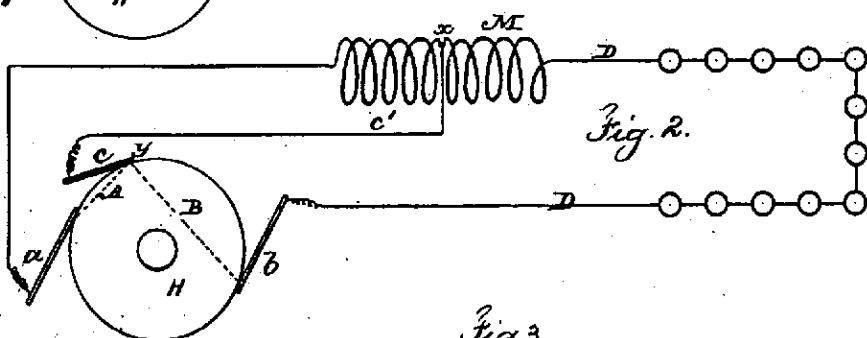
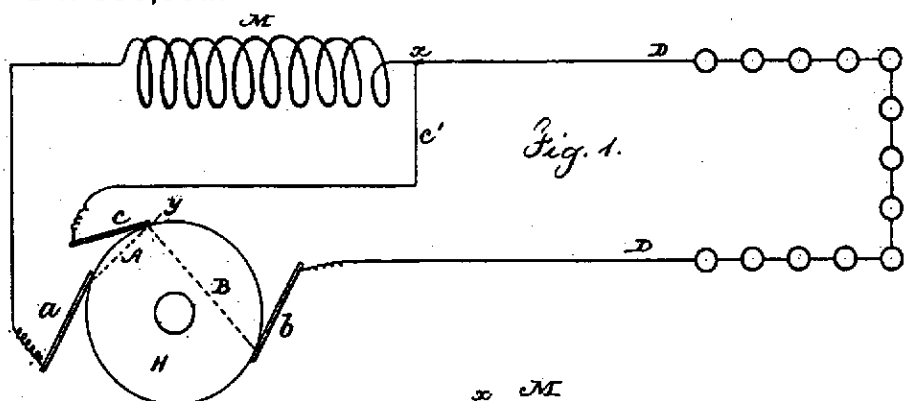
GEO. T. PINCKNEY,
WALLACE L. SERRELL.

N. TESLA.

REGULATOR FOR DYNAMO ELECTRIC MACHINES.

No. 336,962.

Patented Mar. 2, 1886.



Witnesses
 Chas. Schmidt
 J. Stahl

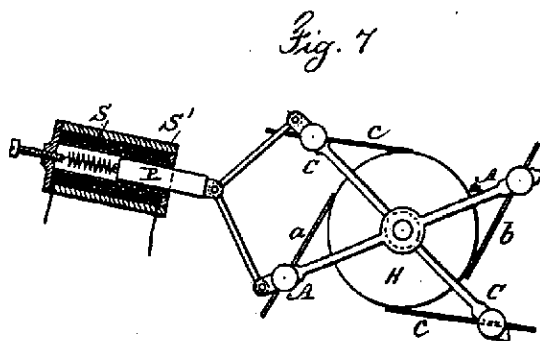
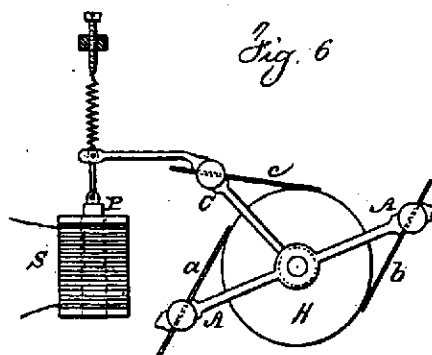
Inventor
 Nikola Tesla
 per Samuel W. Pirrell atty

N. TESLA.

REGULATOR FOR DYNAMO ELECTRIC MACHINES.

No. 336,962.

Patented Mar. 2, 1886.



Witnesses

Chas. H. Smith
J. Stacy

Inventor

Nikola Tesla
Lemuel W. Perrell

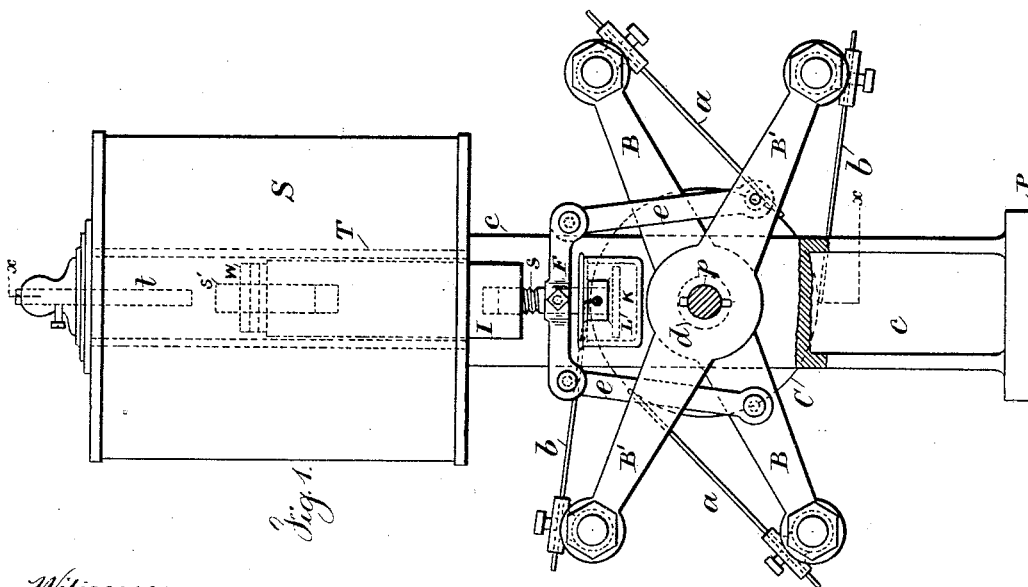
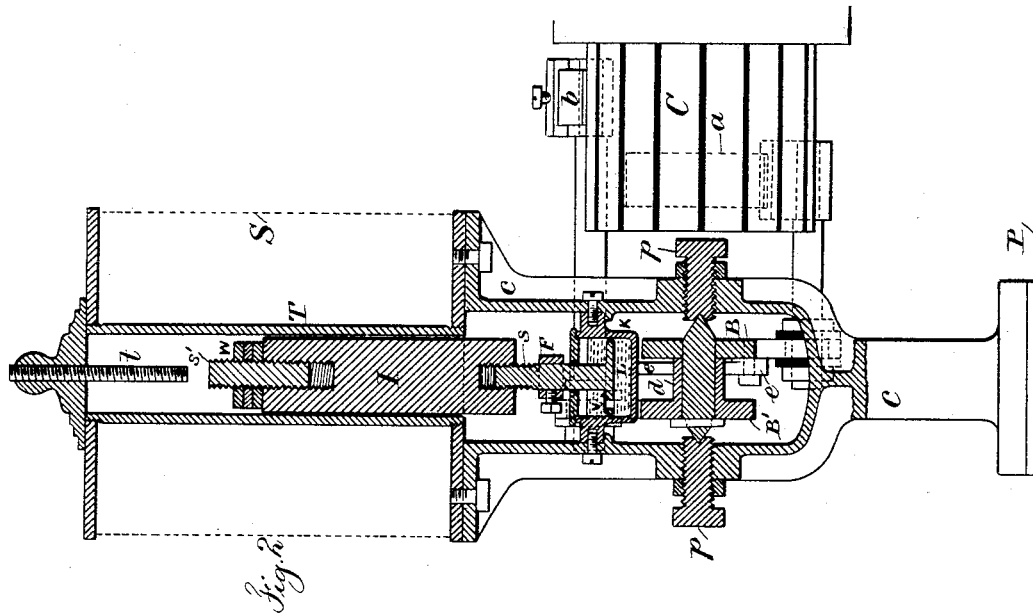
(No Model.)

N. TESLA.

REGULATOR FOR DYNAMO ELECTRIC MACHINES.

No. 350,954.

Patented Oct. 19, 1886.



Witnesses

Char. H. Smith
J. Stail

Inventor

Nikola Tesla.
per Lemuel M. Farrell atty

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF SMILJAN LIKA, AUSTRIA-HUNGARY, ASSIGNOR TO THE
TESLA ELECTRIC LIGHT AND MANUFACTURING COMPANY, OF RAH-
WAY, NEW JERSEY.

REGULATOR FOR DYNAMO-ELECTRIC MACHINES.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 350,954, dated October 19, 1886.

Application filed January 14, 1886. Serial No. 183,539. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, from Smiljan Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, have invented certain Improvements in Dynamo-Electric Machines, of which the following is a specification.

In other applications I have shown the commutator of a dynamo-machine with the main brushes connected in an electric circuit, and one or more auxiliary brushes serving to shunt a part or the whole of the field-coils, the regulation of the current being effected by shifting the respective brushes automatically upon the commutator in proportion to the varying resistances of the circuit.

My present invention relates to the mechanical devices which I employ to effect the shifting of the brushes.

My invention is clearly shown in the accompanying drawings, in which Figure 1 is an elevation of the regulator with the frame partly in section; and Fig. 2 is a section at the line *xx*, Fig. 1.

C is the commutator; B and B', the brush-holders, B carrying the main brushes *a a'* and B' the auxiliary or shunt brushes *b b'*. The axis of the brush-holder B is supported by two pivot-screws, *pp*. The other brush-holder, B', has a sleeve, *d*, and is movable around the axis of the brush-holder B. In this way both brush-holders can turn very freely, the friction of the parts being reduced to a minimum. Over the brush-holders is mounted the solenoid S, which rests upon a forked column, *c*. This column also affords a support for the pivots *pp*, and is fastened upon a solid bracket or projection, P, which extends from the base of the machine, and is preferably cast in one piece with the same. The brush-holders B B' are connected by means of the links *ee* and the cross-piece F to the iron core I, which slides freely in the tube T of the solenoid. The iron core I has a screw, *s*, by means of which it can be raised and adjusted in its position relatively to the solenoid, so that the pull exerted upon it by the solenoid is practically uniform through the whole length of motion which is required to effect the regulation. In order to effect the adjustment with a greater

precision the core I is provided with a small iron screw, *s'*. The core being first brought very nearly in the required position relatively to the solenoid by means of the screw *s*, the small screw *s'* is then adjusted until the magnetic attraction upon the core is the same when the core is in any position. A convenient stop, *t*, serves to limit the upward movement of the iron core.

To check somewhat the movement of the core I, a dash-pot, K, is used. The piston L of the dash-pot is provided with a valve, V, which opens by a downward pressure and allows an easy downward movement of the iron core I, but closes and checks the movement of the core when the same is pulled up under the action of the solenoid.

To balance the opposing forces, the weight of the moving parts, and the pull exerted by the solenoid upon the iron core, the weights W W may be used. The adjustment is such that when the solenoid is traversed by the normal current it is just strong enough to balance the downward pull of the parts.

The electrical circuit-connections are substantially the same, as indicated in my former applications, the solenoid being in series with the circuit when the translating devices are in series and in a shunt when the devices are in multiple arc.

The operation of the device is as follows: When upon a decrease of the resistance of the circuit or some other reason the current is increased, the solenoid S gains in strength and pulls up the iron core I, thus shifting the main brushes in the direction of rotation and the auxiliary brushes in the opposite way. This diminishes the strength of the current until the opposing forces are balanced and the solenoid is traversed by the normal current; but if from any cause the current in the circuit is diminished, then the weight of the moving parts overcomes the pull of the solenoid, the iron core I descends, thus shifting the brushes the opposite way and increasing the current to the normal strength. The dash-pot connected to the iron core I may be of ordinary construction; but I prefer, especially in machines for arc lights, to provide the piston of

the dash-pot with a valve, as indicated in the drawings. This valve permits a comparatively easy downward movement of the iron core, but checks its movement when it is drawn up by the solenoid. Such an arrangement has the advantage that a great number of lights may be put on without diminishing the light-power of the lamps in the circuit, as the brushes assume at once the proper position.

10 When lights are cut out, the dash-pot acts to retard the movement; but if the current is considerably increased the solenoid gets abnormally strong and the brushes are shifted instantly.

15 The regulator being properly adjusted, lights or other devices may be put on or out with scarcely any perceptible difference.

It is obvious that instead of the dash-pot any other retarding device may be used.

20 I claim as my invention—

1. The combination, with the main and auxiliary brushes, of two brush-holders, an axis fastened to one of the brush-holders, supporting screws for the same, a support for the other brush-holder surrounding the axis, a solenoid, a core for the same, and links connecting the core to the respective brush-holders, substantially as set forth.

2. The combination, with the brushes, brush-holders, and the axis upon which the brush-holders swing, of a solenoid and core, connections from the same to the brush-holders, and an adjusting-screw to limit the movements of the core, substantially as set forth.

3. The combination, with the brush-holders and their axes, of a solenoid and core, and a connection from the core to the brush-holders, and an iron screw at the inner end of the core to adjust the action of the magnetism on the core, substantially as set forth.

4. The combination, with the brushes, the brush-holders and their axes, of a solenoid and core, and connections to move the brush-holders, and a dash-pot provided with a valve, substantially as described, to diminish the speed of movement of the core in one direction more than the other, substantially as set forth.

5. The combination, with the brushes, the brush-holders and their axes, of a solenoid and core, and connections to move the brush-holders, and a dash-pot to diminish the speed of movement of the core, substantially as set forth.

6. The combination, with the brush-holders and the solenoid and core, of links connecting to the holders, and a screw to adjust the position of the core in relation to the solenoid, substantially as set forth.

Signed by me this 12th day of January, A. D. 1886.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

GEO. T. PINCKNEY,
WILLIAM G. MOTT.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF SMILJAN LIKA, AUSTRIA-HUNGARY, ASSIGNOR TO THE
TESLA ELECTRIC LIGHT AND MANUFACTURING COMPANY, OF RAHWAY,
NEW JERSEY.

DYNAMO-ELECTRIC MACHINE.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 359,748, dated March 22, 1887.

Application filed January 14, 1886. Renewed December 1, 1896. Serial No. 220,370. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, of Smiljan Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, have invented certain Improvements in Dynamo-Electric Machines, of which the following is a specification.

The main objects of my invention are to increase the efficiency of the machine and to facilitate and cheapen the construction of the same; and to this end my invention relates to the magnetic frame and the armature, and to other features of construction, hereinafter more fully explained.

My invention is illustrated in the accompanying drawings, in which Figure 1 is a longitudinal section, and Fig. 2 a cross-section, of the machine. Fig. 3 is a top view, and Fig. 4 a side view, of the magnetic frame. Fig. 5 is an end view of the commutator-bars, and Fig. 6 is a section of the shaft and commutator-bars. Fig. 7 is a diagram illustrating the coils of the armature and the connections to the commutator-plates.

The cores *c c c c* of the field-magnets may be tapering in both directions, as shown, for the purposes of concentrating the magnetism upon the middle of the pole-pieces.

The connecting-frame *F F* of the field-magnets is in the form indicated in the side view, Fig. 4, the lower part being provided with the spreading curved cast legs *e e*, so that the machine will rest firmly upon two base-bars, *r r*.

To the lower pole, *S*, of the field-magnet *M* is fastened, preferably by means of Babbitt or other fusible diamagnetic material, the base *B*, which is provided with bearings *b* for the armature-shaft *H*. The base *B* has a projection, *P*, which supports the brush-holders and the regulating devices, which may be of any ordinary character, or may be such as shown in an application of like date herewith.

The armature is constructed with the view to reduce to a minimum the loss of power due to the transversal or Foucault currents and to the change of polarity, and also to shorten as much as possible the length of the inactive wire wound upon the armature-core.

It is well known that when the armature is revolved between the poles of the field-mag-

nets currents are generated in the iron body 50 of the armature which develop heat, and consequently cause a waste of power. Owing to the mutual action of the lines of force, the magnetic properties of iron, and the speed of the different portions of the armature-core, these 55 currents are generated principally on and near the surface of the armature-core, diminishing in strength gradually toward the center of the core. Their quantity is under same conditions proportional to the length of the iron body in 60 the direction in which these currents are generated. By subdividing the iron core electrically in this direction the generation of these currents can be reduced to a great extent. For instance, if the length of the armature-core is 65 twelve inches, and by a suitable construction the same is subdivided electrically, so that there are in the generating direction six inches of iron and six inches of intervening air-spaces or insulating material, the currents will be reduced 70 to fifty per cent.

As shown in the drawings, the armature is constructed of thin iron disks *D D D*, of various diameters, fastened upon the armature-shaft in a suitable manner and arranged according to their sizes, so that a series of iron 75 bodies, *i i i*, is formed, each of which diminishes in thickness from the center toward the periphery. At both ends of the armature the inwardly-curved disks *d d*, preferably of cast-iron, are fastened to the armature-shaft. 80

The armature-core being constructed as shown, it will be easily seen that on those portions of the armature that are the most remote from the axis, and where the currents are 85 principally developed, the length of iron in the generating direction is only a small fraction of the total length of the armature-core, and besides this the iron body is subdivided in the generating direction, and therefore the 90 Foucault currents are greatly reduced. Another cause of heating is the shifting of the poles of the armature-core. In consequence of the subdivision of the iron in the armature and the increased surface for radiation the 95 risk of heating is lessened.

The iron disks *D D D* may be insulated or coated with some insulating-paint, a very care-

ful insulation being unnecessary, as an electrical contact between several disks can only occur on places where the generated currents are comparatively weak. An armature-core constructed in the manner described may be revolved between the poles of the field-magnets without showing the slightest increase of temperature.

The end disks, $d d$, which are of sufficient thickness and, for the sake of cheapness, preferably of cast-iron, are curved inwardly, as indicated in the drawings. The extent of the curve is dependent on the amount of wire to be wound upon the armatures. In my present invention the wire is wound upon the armature in two superimposed parts, and the curve of the end disks, $d d$, is so calculated that the first part—that is, practically half of the wire—just fills up the hollow space to the line $x x$; or, if the wire is wound in any other manner, the curve is such that when the whole of the wire is wound the outside mass of wires, w , and the inside mass of wires, w' , are equal at each side of the plane $x x$. In this case it will be seen the passive or electrically-inactive wires are of the smallest length practicable. The arrangement has further the advantage that the total lengths of the crossing wires at the two sides of the plane $x x$ are practically equal.

To further equalize the armature-coils at both sides of the plates that are in contact with the brushes, the winding and connecting up is effected in the following manner: The whole wire is wound upon the armature-core in two superimposed parts, which are thoroughly insulated from each other. Each of these two parts is composed of three separated groups of coils. The first group of coils of the first part of wire being wound and connected to the commutator-bars in the usual manner, this group is insulated and the second group wound; but the coils of this second group instead of being connected to the next following commutator-bars, are connected to the directly-opposite bars of the commutator. The second group is then insulated and the third group wound, the coils of this group being connected to those bars to which they would be connected in the usual way. The wires are then thoroughly insulated and the second part of wire wound and connected in the same manner. Suppose, for instance, that there are twenty-four coils—that is, twelve in each part—and consequently twenty-four commutator-plates. There will be in each part three groups, each containing four coils, and the coils will be connected as follows:

	Groups.	Commutator-bars.
First part of wire	First.....	1—5
	Second.....	17—21
	Third.....	9—13
Second part of wire	First.....	13—17
	Second.....	5—9
	Third.....	21—1

In constructing the armature-core and winding and connecting the coils in the manner indicated, the passive or electrically-inactive wire is reduced to a minimum, and the coils at each side of the plates that are in contact with the brushes are practically equal, and in this way the electrical efficiency of the machine is increased.

The commutator-plates t are shown as outside the bearing b of the armature-shaft. The shaft H is tubular and split at the end portion, and the wires are carried through the same in any usual manner and connected to the respective commutator-plates. The commutator-plates are upon a cylinder, u , and insulated, and this cylinder is to be properly placed and secured by expanding the split end of the shaft by a tapering screw-plug, v .

I do not claim herein the cores of the field-magnets converging toward the pole-pieces; nor do I claim the method of fastening the base to the lower field-magnet, as this has been claimed in my former application on dynamo-electric machines.

What I claim is—

1. In a dynamo-electric machine, the armature constructed of iron disks of various diameters arranged upon the shaft in such a manner that a series of iron bodies is formed, each diminishing in thickness from the center to the periphery, substantially as and for the purposes set forth.

2. In a dynamo-electric machine, the armature-core having iron disks of various diameters, in combination with inwardly-curved end disks, for the purposes and substantially as set forth.

3. In a dynamo-electric machine, an armature-core having inwardly-curved ends, in combination with the armature-coils, the crossing wires of which coils pass into the concave heads and project equally, substantially as set forth.

4. In a dynamo-electric machine, an armature having separate coils superimposed and connected to the commutator-plates in alternating groups, substantially as set forth.

5. An armature for dynamo-electric machines, having a core composed of disks of various diameters, in combination with separate superimposed coils connected to the commutator-plates in alternate groups, substantially as set forth.

6. In a dynamo-electric machine, the magnetic frame composed of the cores $c c c c$, the curved pole-pieces $N S$, and the connecting-frame with the curved and outwardly-projecting legs $e e$, substantially as described.

Signed by me this 12th day of January, A. D. 1886.

NIKOLA TESLA.

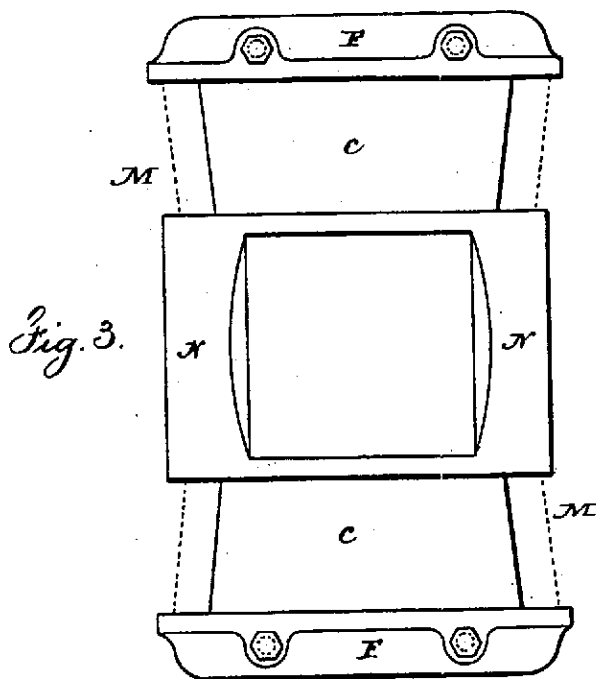
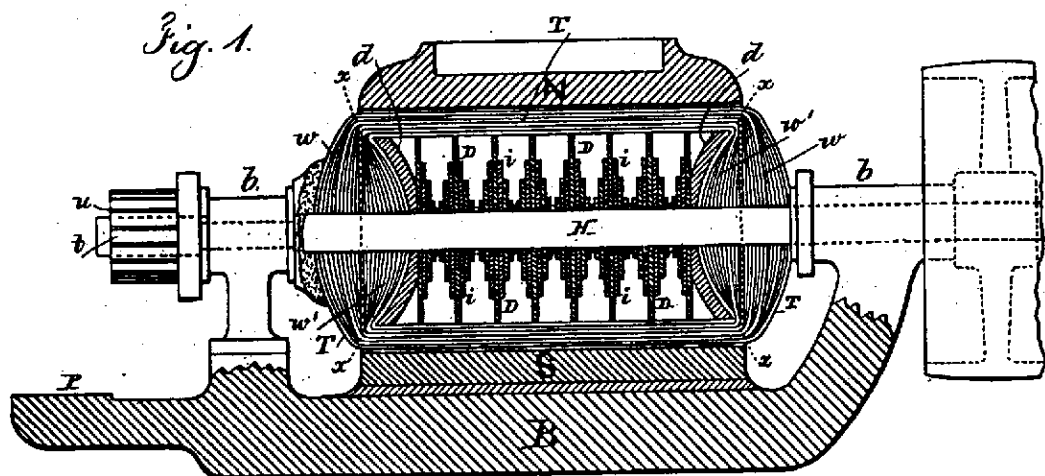
Witnesses:

GEO. T. PINCKNEY,
WALLACE L. SERRELL.

N. TESLA.
DYNAMO ELECTRIC MACHINE.

No. 359,748.

Patented Mar. 22, 1887.



Witnesses

Chas. H. Smith
J. Stail

Inventor

Nikola Tesla
for Lemuel W. Perrell

N. TESLA.
DYNAMO ELECTRIC MACHINE.

No. 359,748.

Patented Mar. 22, 1887.

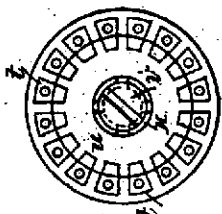
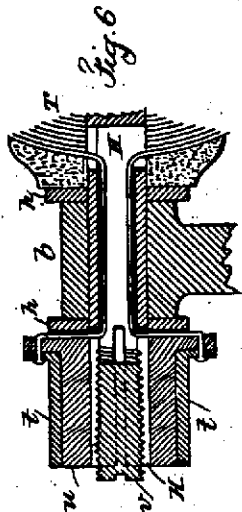


Fig. 4.

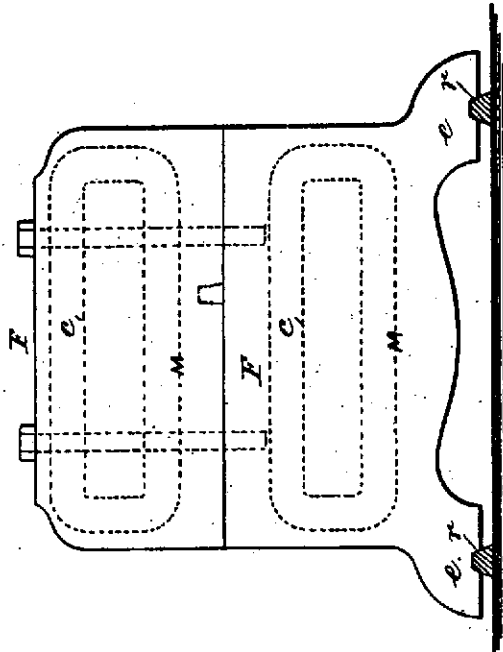
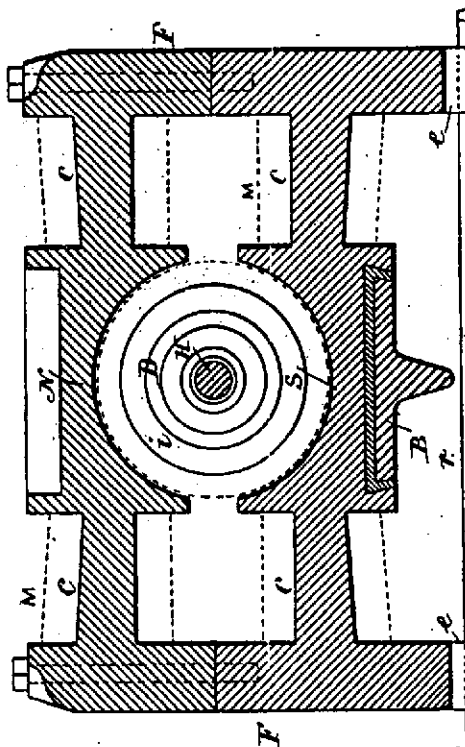


Fig. 2.



Witnesses

Chas. H. Smith
J. Hail

Inventor

Nikola Tesla

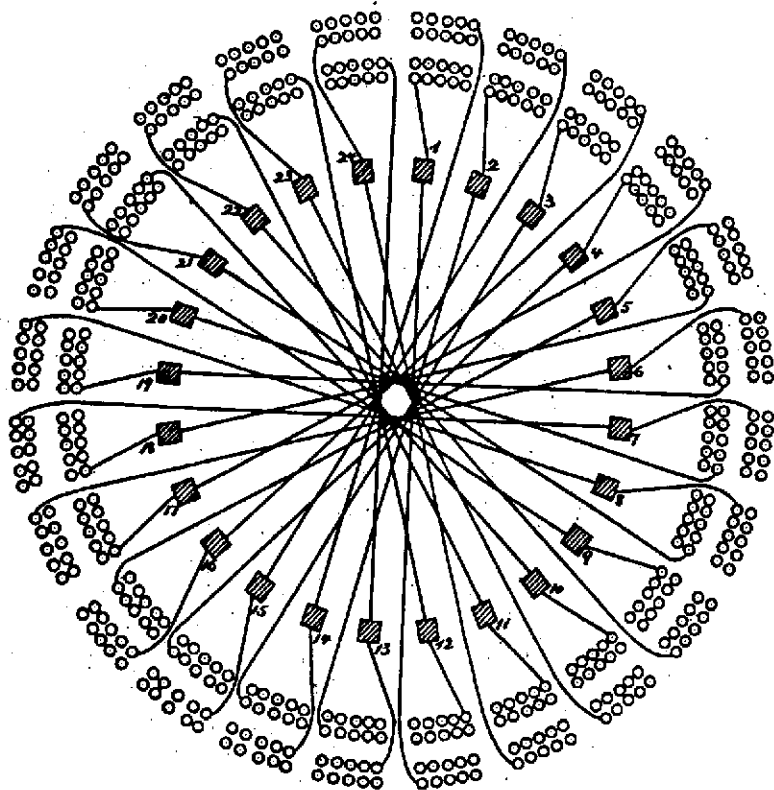
L. W. Linnell
att

N. TESLA.
DYNAMO ELECTRIC MACHINE.

No. 359,748.

Patented Mar. 22, 1887.

Fig. 7.



Inventor

Nikola Tesla

for Lemuel W. Perrell

attg

Witnesses

Chas. H. Smith
Geo. T. Pinckney

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR OF ONE-HALF TO CHARLES F. PECK, OF ENGLEWOOD, NEW JERSEY.

ELECTRO-MAGNETIC MOTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 391,968, dated May 1, 1889.

Application filed October 12, 1887. Serial No. 252,132. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, from Smiljan Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, residing at New York, N. Y., have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Electro-Magnetic Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

The practical solution of the problem of the electrical conversion and transmission of mechanical energy involves certain requirements which the apparatus and systems heretofore employed have not been capable of fulfilling. Such a solution, primarily, demands a uniformity of speed in the motor irrespective of its load within its normal working limits. On the other hand, it is necessary, to attain a greater economy of conversion than has heretofore existed, to construct cheaper and more reliable and simple apparatus, and, lastly, the apparatus must be capable of easy management, and such that all danger from the use of currents of high tension, which are necessary to an economical transmission, may be avoided.

My present invention is directed to the production and improvement of apparatus capable of more nearly meeting these requirements than those heretofore available, and though I have described various means for the purpose, they involve the same main principles of construction and mode of operation, which may be described as follows: A motor is employed in which there are two or more independent circuits through which alternate currents are passed at proper intervals, in the manner hereinafter described, for the purpose of effecting a progressive shifting of the magnetism or of the "lines of force" in accordance with the well-known theory, and a consequent action of the motor. It is obvious that a proper progressive shifting of the lines of force may be utilized to set up a movement or rotation of either element of the motor, the armature, or the field-magnet, and that if the currents directed through the several circuits of the motor are in the proper direction no commutator for the motor will be required; but to avoid all the usual commutating appliances in

the system I prefer to connect the motor-circuits directly with those of a suitable alternate-current generator. The practical results of such a system, its economical advantages, and the mode of its construction and operation will be described more in detail by reference to the accompanying diagrams and drawings.

Figures 1 to 8 and 1^a to 8^a, inclusive, are diagrams illustrating the principle of the action of my invention. The remaining figures are views of the apparatus in various forms by means of which the invention may be carried into effect, and which will be described in their order.

Referring first to Fig. 9, which is a diagrammatic representation of a motor, a generator, and connecting-circuits in accordance with my invention, M is the motor, and G the generator for driving it. The motor comprises a ring or annulus, R, preferably built up of thin insulated iron rings or annular plates, so as to be as susceptible as possible to variations in its magnetic condition. This ring is surrounded by four coils of insulated wire symmetrically placed, and designated by C C C C. The diametrically-opposite coils are connected up so as to co-operate in pairs in producing free poles on diametrically-opposite parts of the ring. The four free ends thus left are connected to terminals T T T T, as indicated. Near the ring, and preferably inside of it, there is mounted on an axis or shaft, α , a magnetic disk, D, generally circular in shape, but having two segments cut away, as shown. This disk is mounted so as to turn freely within the ring R. The generator G is of any ordinary type, that shown in the present instance having field-magnets N S and a cylindrical armature-core, A, wound with the two coils B B'. The free ends of each coil are carried through the shaft α' and connected, respectively, to insulated contact-rings $b b' b'$. Any convenient form of collector or brush bears on each ring and forms a terminal by which the current to and from a ring is conveyed. These terminals are connected to the terminals of the motor by the wires L and L' in the manner indicated, whereby two complete circuits are formed—one including, say, the coils B of 100

the generator C' C' of the motor, and the other the remaining coils B' and C C of the generator and the motor.

It remains now to explain the mode of operation of this system, and for this purpose I refer to the diagrams, Figs. 1 to 8, and 1^a to 8^a, for an illustration of the various phases through which the coils of the generator pass when in operation, and the corresponding and resultant magnetic changes produced in the motor. The revolution of the armature of the generator between the field-magnets N S obviously produces in the coils B B' alternating currents, the intensity and direction of which depend upon well-known laws. In the position of the coils indicated in Fig. 1 the current in the coil B is practically *nil*, whereas the coil B' at the same time is developing its maximum current, and by the means indicated in the description of Fig. 9 the circuit including this coil B' may also include, say, the coils C C of the motor, Fig. 1^a. The result, with the proper connections, would be the magnetization of the ring R', the poles being on the line N S. The same order of connections being observed between the coil B and the coils C', the latter, when traversed by a current, tend to fix the poles at right angles to the line N S of Fig. 1^a. It results, therefore, that when the generator-coils have made one eighth of a revolution, reaching the position shown in Fig. 2, both pairs of coils C and C' will be traversed by currents and act in opposition, in so far as the location of the poles is concerned. The position of the poles will therefore be the resultant of the magnetizing forces of the coils—that is to say, it will advance along the ring to a position corresponding to one-eighth of the revolution of the armature of the generator. In Fig. 3 the armature of the generator has progressed to one-quarter of a revolution. At the point indicated the current in the coil B is maximum, while in B' it is *nil*, the latter coil being in its neutral position. The poles of the ring R in Fig. 3^a will, in consequence, be shifted to a position ninety degrees from that at the start, as shown. I have in like manner shown the conditions existing at each successive eighth of one revolution in the remaining figures. A short reference to these figures will suffice for an understanding of their significance. Figs. 4 and 4^a illustrate the conditions which exist when the generator-armature has completed three eighths of a revolution. Here both coils are generating current; but the coil B', having now entered the opposite field, is generating a current in the opposite direction, having the opposite magnetizing effect; hence the resultant pole will be on the line N S, as shown. In Fig. 5 one-half of one revolution of the armature of the generator has been completed, and the resulting magnetic condition of the ring is shown in Fig. 5^a. In this phase coil B is in the neutral position while coil B' is generating its maximum current, which is in the same direction as in Fig. 4. The poles will consequently be shifted

through one half of the ring. In Fig. 6 the armature has completed five-eighths of a revolution. In this position coil B' develops a less powerful current, but in the same direction as before. The coil B, on the other hand, having entered a field of opposite polarity, generates a current of opposite direction. The resultant poles will therefore be in the line N S, Fig. 6^a, or, in other words, the poles of the ring will be shifted along five-eighths of its periphery. Figs. 7 and 7^a in the same manner illustrate the phases of the generator and ring at three-quarters of a revolution, and Figs. 8 and 8^a the same at seven-eighths of a revolution of the generator armature. These figures will be readily understood from the foregoing. When a complete revolution is accomplished, the conditions existing at the start are re-established and the same action is repeated for the next and all subsequent revolutions, and, in general, it will now be seen that every revolution of the armature of the generator produces a corresponding shifting of the poles or lines of force around the ring. This effect I utilize in producing the rotation of a body or armature in a variety of ways—for example, applying the principle above described to the apparatus shown in Fig. 9. The disk D, owing to its tendency to assume that position in which it embraces the greatest possible number of the magnetic lines, is set in rotation, following the motion of the lines or the points of greatest attraction.

The disk D in Fig. 9 is shown as cut away on opposite sides; but this, I have found, is not essential to effecting its rotation, as a circular disk, as indicated by dotted lines, is also set in rotation. This phenomenon I attribute to a certain inertia or resistance inherent in the metal to the rapid shifting of the lines of force through the same, which results in a continuous tangential pull upon the disk, causing its rotation. This seems to be confirmed by the fact that a circular disk of steel is more effectively rotated than one of soft iron, for the reason that the former is assumed to possess a greater resistance to the shifting of the magnetic lines.

In illustration of other forms of my invention, I shall now describe the remaining figures of the drawings.

Fig. 10 is a view in elevation and part vertical section of a motor. Fig. 12 is a top view of the same with the field in section and a diagram of connections. Fig. 11 is an end or side view of a generator with the fields in section. This form of motor may be used in place of that shown above. D is a cylindrical or drum armature core, which, for obvious reasons, should be split up as far as practicable to prevent the circulation within it of currents of induction. The core is wound longitudinally with two coils, E and E', the ends of which are respectively connected to insulated contact-rings *d d' d'*, carried by the shaft *a*, upon which the armature is mounted. The armature is set to revolve within an iron shell, R',

which constitutes the field-magnet, or other element of the motor. This shell is preferably formed with a slot or opening, r , but it may be continuous, as shown by the dotted lines, and in this event it is preferably made of steel.

It is also desirable that this shell should be divided up similarly to the armature and for similar reasons. As a generator for driving this motor I may use the device shown in Fig. 11. This represents an annular or ring armature, A, surrounded by four coils, F F' F'' F''', of which those diametrically opposite are connected in series, so that four free ends are left, which are connected to the insulated contact-rings $b b' b'' b'''$. The ring is suitably mounted on a shaft, a' , between the poles N S. The contact-rings of each pair of generator-coils are connected to these of the motor, respectively, by means of contact-brushes and the two pairs of conductors L L and L' L', as indicated diagrammatically in Fig. 12. Now it is obvious from a consideration of the preceding figures that the rotation of the generator produces currents in the coils F F', which, being transmitted to the motor-coils, impart to the core of the latter magnetic poles constantly shifting or whirling around the core. This effect sets up a rotation of the armature owing to the attractive force between the shell and the poles of the armature, but inasmuch as the coils in this case move relative to the shell or field-magnet the movement of the coils is in the opposite direction to the progressive shifting of the poles.

Other arrangements of the coils of both generator and motor are possible, and a greater number of circuits may be used, as will be seen in the two succeeding figures.

Fig. 13 is a diagrammatic illustration of a motor and a generator constructed and connected in accordance with my invention. Fig. 14 is an end view of the generator with its field-magnets in section. The field of the motor M is produced by six magnetic poles, G' G'', secured to or projecting from a ring or frame, H. These magnets or poles are wound with insulated coils, those diametrically opposite to each other being connected in pairs so as to produce opposite poles in each pair. This leaves six free ends, which are connected to the terminals T T' T'' T''' T'''' T'''''. The armature, which is mounted to rotate between the poles, is a cylinder or disk, D, of wrought-iron, mounted on the shaft a . Two segments of the same are cut away, as shown. The generator for this motor has in this instance an armature, A, wound with three coils, K K' K'', at sixty degrees apart. The ends of these coils are connected, respectively, to insulated contact-rings $e e' e'' e''' e'''' e'''''$. These rings are connected to those of the motor in proper order by means of collecting-brushes and six wires, forming three independent circuits. The variations in the strength and direction of the currents transmitted through these circuits and traversing the coils of the motor produce a steadily progressive shifting

of the resultant attractive force exerted by the poles G' upon the armature D, and consequently keep the armature rapidly rotating. The peculiar advantage of this disposition is in obtaining a more concentrated and powerful field. The application of this principle to systems involving multiple circuits generally will be understood from this apparatus.

Referring, now, to Figs. 15 and 16, Fig. 15 is a diagrammatic representation of a modified disposition of my invention. Fig. 16 is a horizontal cross-section of the motor. In this case a disk, D, of magnetic metal, preferably cut away at opposite edges, as shown in dotted lines in Fig. 15, is mounted so as to turn freely inside two stationary coils, N' N'', placed at right angles to one another. The coils are preferably wound on a frame, O, of insulating material, and their ends are connected to the fixed terminals T T' T'' T'''. The generator G is a representative of that class of alternating-current machines in which a stationary induced element is employed. That shown consists of a revolving permanent or electro magnet, A, and four independent stationary magnets, P P', wound with coils, those diametrically opposite to each other being connected in series and having their ends secured to the terminals $t t' t'' t'''$. From these terminals the currents are led to the terminals of the motor, as shown in the drawings. The mode of operation is substantially the same as in the previous cases, the currents traversing the coils of the motor having the effect to turn the disk D. This mode of carrying out the invention has the advantage of dispensing with the sliding contacts in the system.

In the forms of motor above described only one of the elements, the armature or the field-magnet, is provided with energizing-coils. It remains, then, to show how both elements may be wound with coils. Reference is therefore had to Figs. 17, 18, and 19. Fig. 17 is an end view of such a motor. Fig. 18 is a similar view of the generator with the field-magnets in section, and Fig. 19 is a diagram of the circuit-connections. In Fig. 17 the field-magnet of the motor consists of a ring, R, preferably of thin insulated iron sheets or bands with eight pole pieces, G', and corresponding recesses, in which four pairs of coils, V, are wound. The diametrically opposite pairs of coils are connected in series and the free ends are connected to four terminals, w , the rule to be followed in connecting being the same as hereinbefore explained. An armature, D, with two coils, E E', at right angles to each other, is mounted to rotate in side of the field-magnet R. The ends of the armature-coils are connected to two pairs of contact-rings, $d d' d'' d'''$, Fig. 19. The generator for this motor may be of any suitable kind to produce currents of the desired character. In the present instance it consists of a field-magnet, N S, and an armature, A, with two coils at right angles, the ends of which are connected to four contact-rings, $b b' b'' b'''$, carried by its shaft. The circuit-connections are es-

established between the rings on the generator-shaft and those on the motor-shaft by collecting brushes and wires, as previously explained. In order to properly energize the field-magnet of the motor, however, the connections are so made with the armature coils or wires leading thereto that while the points of greatest attraction or greatest density of magnetic lines of force upon the armature are shifted in one direction those upon the field-magnet are made to progress in an opposite direction. In other respects the operation is identically the same as in the other cases cited. This arrangement results in an increased speed of rotation. In Figs. 17 and 19, for example, the terminals of each set of field-coils are connected with the wires to the two armature-coils in such way that the field-coils will maintain opposite poles in advance of the poles of the armature.

In the drawings the field-coils are in shunts to the armature, but they may be in series or in independent circuits.

It is obvious that the same principle may be applied to the various typical forms of motor hereinbefore described.

Having now described the nature of my invention and some of the various ways in which it is or may be carried into effect, I would call attention to certain characteristics which the applications of the invention possess and the advantages which the invention secures.

In my motor, considering for convenience that represented in Fig. 9, it will be observed that since the disk D has a tendency to follow continuously the points of greatest attraction, and since these points are shifted around the ring once for each revolution of the armature of the generator, it follows that the movement of the disk D will be synchronous with that of the armature A. This feature by practical demonstrations I have found to exist in all other forms in which one revolution of the armature of the generator produces a shifting of the poles of the motor through three hundred and sixty degrees.

In the particular construction shown in Fig. 15, or in others constructed on a similar plan, the number of alternating impulses resulting from one revolution of the generator armature is double as compared with the preceding cases, and the polarities in the motor are shifted around twice by one revolution of the generator-armature. The speed of the motor will, therefore, be twice that of the generator. The same result is evidently obtained by such a disposition as that shown in Fig. 17, where the poles of both elements are shifted in opposite directions.

Again, considering the apparatus illustrated by Fig. 9 as typical of the invention, it is obvious that since the attractive effect upon the disk D is greatest when the disk is in its proper relative position to the poles developed in the ring R—that is to say, when its ends or poles immediately follow those of the ring—the speed of the motor for all the loads within the normal working limits of the mo-

tor will be practically constant. It is clearly apparent that the speed can never exceed the arbitrary limit as determined by the generator, and also that within certain limits at least the speed of the motor will be independent of the strength of the current.

It will now be more readily seen from the above description how far the requirements of a practical system of electrical transmission of power are realized in my invention. I secure, first, a uniform speed under all loads within the normal working limits of the motor without the use of any auxiliary regulator; second, synchronism between the motor and generator; third, greater efficiency by the more direct application of the current, no commutating devices being required on either the motor or generator; fourth, cheapness and simplicity of mechanical construction and economy in maintenance; fifth, the capability of being very easily managed or controlled; and, sixth, diminution of danger from injury to persons and apparatus.

These motors may be run in series, multiple are or multiple series, under conditions well understood by those skilled in the art.

The means or devices for carrying out the principle may be varied to a far greater extent than I have been able to indicate; but I regard as within my invention, and I desire to secure by Letters Patent in general, motors containing two or more independent circuits through which the operating-currents are led in the manner described. By "independent" I do not mean to imply that the circuits are necessarily isolated from one another, for in some instances there might be electrical connections between them to regulate or modify the action of the motor without necessarily producing a new or different action.

I am aware that the rotation of the armature of a motor wound with two energizing-coils at right angles to each other has been effected by an intermittent shifting of the energizing effect of both coils through which a direct current by means of mechanical devices has been transmitted in alternately-opposite directions; but this method or plan I regard as absolutely impracticable for the purposes for which my invention is designed—at least on any extended scale—for the reasons, mainly, that a great waste of energy is necessarily involved unless the number of energizing-circuits is very great, and that the interruption and reversal of a current of any considerable strength by means of any known mechanical devices is a matter of the greatest difficulty and expense.

In this application I do not claim the method of operating motors which is herein involved, having made separate application for such method.

I therefore claim the following:

1. The combination, with a motor containing separate or independent circuits on the armature or field-magnet, or both, of an alternating-current generator containing induced

circuits connected independently to corresponding circuits in the motor, whereby a rotation of the generator produces a progressive shifting of the poles of the motor, as herein
5 described.

2. In a system for the electrical transmission of power, the combination of a motor provided with two or more independent magnetizing-coils and an alternating-current generator containing induced coils corresponding to
10 the motor-coils, and circuits connecting directly the motor and generator coils in such order that the currents developed by the generator will be passed through the corresponding
15 motor-coils, and thereby produce a progressive shifting of the poles of the motor, as herein set forth.

3. The combination, with a motor having an annular or ring-shaped field-magnet and a
20 cylindrical or equivalent armature, and independent coils on the field-magnet or armature, or both, of an alternating-current generator having correspondingly independent coils, and circuits including the generator-coils and
25 corresponding motor-coils in such manner that

the rotation of the generator causes a progressive shifting of the poles of the motor in the manner set forth.

4. In a system for the electrical transmission of power, the combination of the following instrumentalities, to wit: a motor composed of a disk or its equivalent mounted within a ring or annular field-magnet, which is provided with magnetizing-coils connected
30 in diametrically-opposite pairs or groups to independent terminals, a generator having induced coils or groups of coils equal in number
35 to the pairs or groups of motor-coils, and circuits connecting the terminals of said coils to the terminals of the motor, respectively, and
40 in such order that the rotation of the generator and the consequent production of alternating currents in the respective circuits produces a progressive shifting of the poles of the motor, as hereinbefore described.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

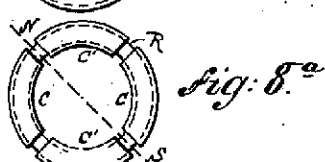
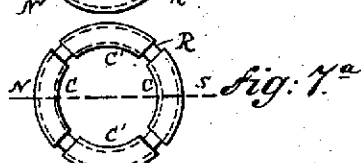
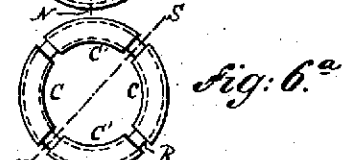
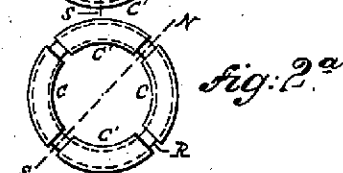
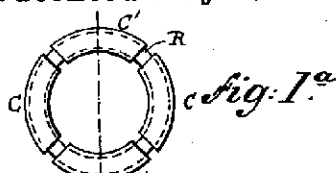
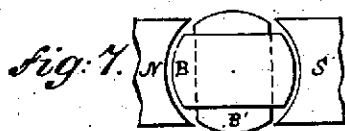
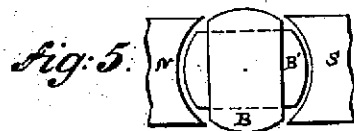
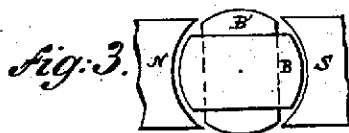
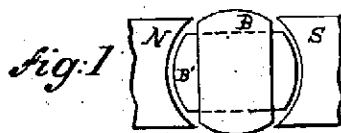
FRANK E. HARTLEY,
FRANK B. MURPHY.

N. TESLA.

ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 381,968.

Patented May 1, 1888.



WITNESSES:

Frank E. Hartley
Frank A. Murphy

INVENTOR.

Nikola Tesla.

BY

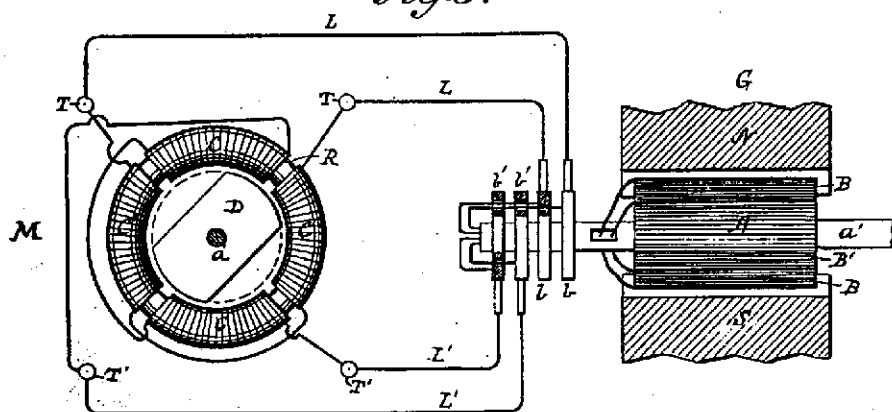
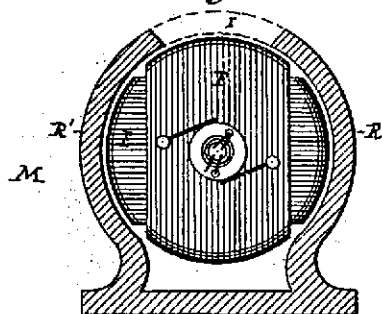
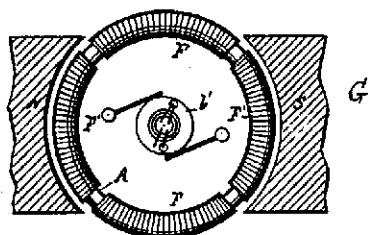
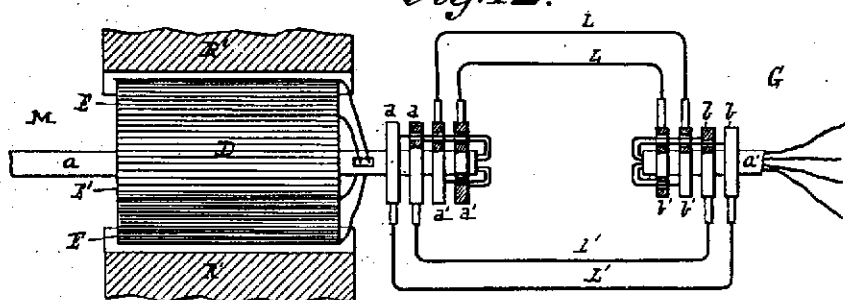
Duncan, Carter & Sage
ATTORNEYS.

N. TESLA.

ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 381,968.

Patented May 1, 1888.

Fig. 9.*Fig. 10.**Fig. 11.**Fig. 12.*

WITNESSES:

INVENTOR.

Frank C. Hartley.
Frank B. Murphy.

Nikola Tesla.
BY
Duncan, Curtis & Hage
ATTORNEYS.

N. TESLA.

ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 381,968.

Patented May 1, 1888.

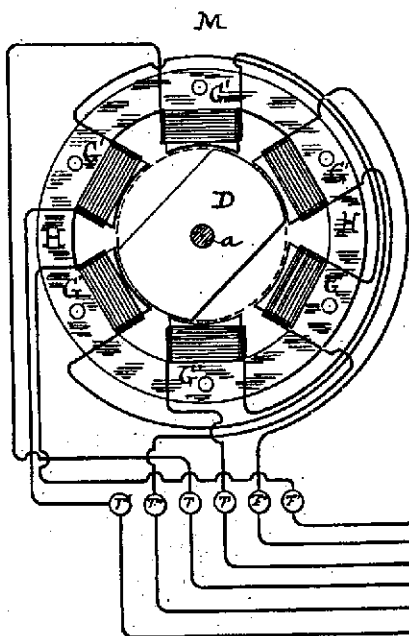


Fig. 13.

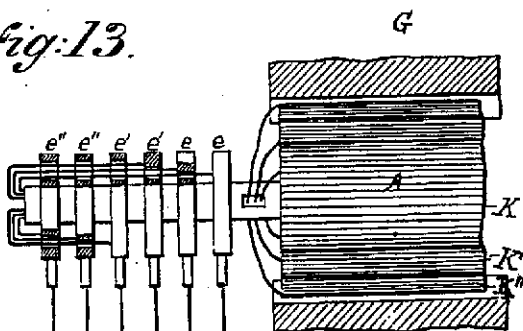


Fig. 14.

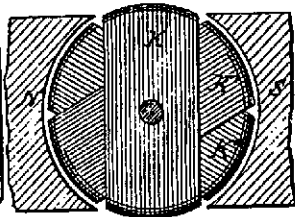
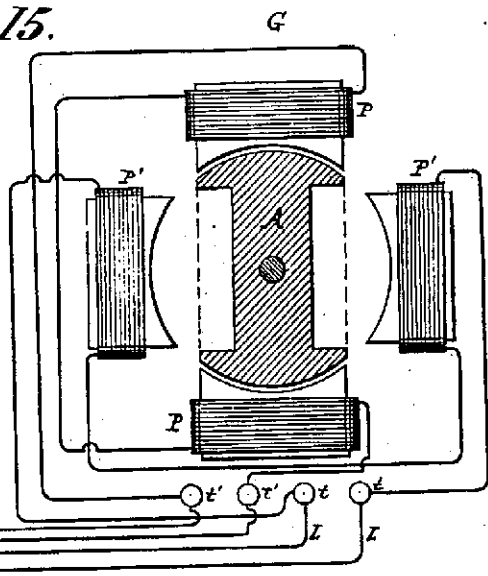
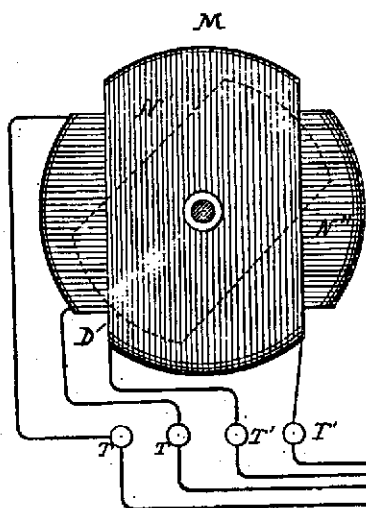


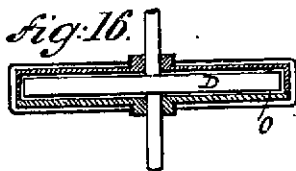
Fig. 15.



WITNESSES:

Frank E. Hartley.
Frank B. Murphy.

Fig. 16.



INVENTOR.

Nikola Tesla.
BY
Lumax, Curtis & Page
ATTORNEYS.

N. TESLA.

ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 381,968.

Patented May 1, 1888.

Fig: 17.

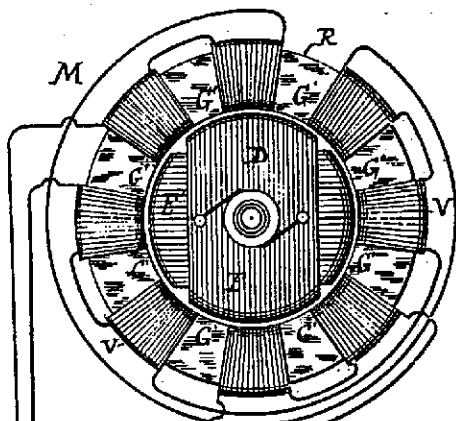


Fig: 18.

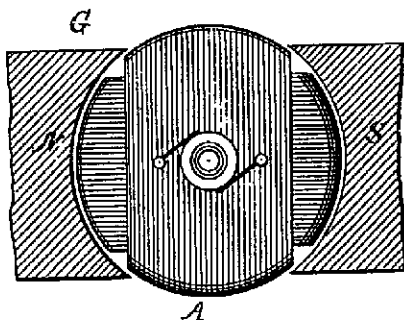
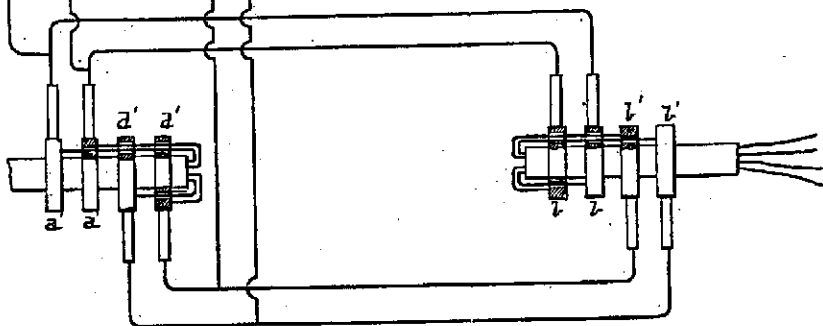


Fig: 19



WITNESSES:

Frank E. Hartley.
Frank B. Murphy.

INVENTOR.

Nikola Tesla,

BY

Duncan, Curtis & Page
ATTORNEYS.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR OF ONE-HALF TO CHARLES F. PECK, OF ENGLEWOOD, NEW JERSEY.

ELECTRO-MAGNETIC MOTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 381,969, dated May 1, 1888.

Application filed November 30, 1887. Serial No. 256,502. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, from Smiljan Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, now residing in New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Electro-Magnetic Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

In an application filed by me October 12, 1887, No. 252,132, I have shown and described a novel form of electro-magnetic motor and a mode of operating the same, which may be generally described as follows: The motor is wound with coils forming independent energizing-circuits on either the armature or field magnet, or both, (it is sufficient for present purposes to consider the case in which the coils are on the armature alone,) and these coils are connected up with corresponding circuits on an alternating-current generator. As the result of this, currents of alternately-opposite direction are sent through the energizing-coils of the motor in such manner as to produce a progressive shifting or rotation of the magnetic poles of the armature. This movement of the poles of the armature obviously tends to rotate the armature in the opposite direction to that in which the movement of the poles takes place, owing to the attractive force between said poles and the field-magnets, and the speed of rotation increases from the start until it equals that of the generator, supposing both motor and generator to be alike.

As the poles of the armature are shifted in a direction opposite to that in which the armature rotates, it will be apparent that when the normal speed is attained the poles of the armature will assume a fixed position relative to the field-magnet, and that in consequence the field-magnets will be energized by magnetic induction, exhibiting two distinct poles, one in each of the pole-pieces. In starting the motor, however, the speed of the armature being comparatively slow, the pole-pieces are subjected to rapid reversals of magnetic polarity; but as the speed increases these reversals become less and less frequent, and finally cease when the movement of the armature become synchronous with that of the gen-

erator. This being the case, the field-cores and the pole-pieces of the motor become a magnet, but by induction only.

I have found that advantageous results are secured by winding the field-magnets with a coil or coils and passing a continuous current through them, thus maintaining a permanent field, and in this feature my present invention consists.

I shall now describe the apparatus which I have devised for carrying out this invention and explain the mode of using or operating the same.

Figure 1 is an end view in elevation of my improved motor. Fig. 2 is a part horizontal central section, and Fig. 3 is a diagrammatic representation of the motor and generator combined and connected for operation.

Let A A in Fig. 1 represent the legs or pole-pieces of a field-magnet, around which are coils B B, included in the circuit of a continuous-current generator, C, which is adapted to impart magnetism to the said poles in the ordinary manner.

D D' are two independent coils wound upon a suitable cylindrical or equivalent armature-core, which, like all others used in a similar manner, should be split or divided up into alternate magnetic and insulating parts in the usual way. This armature is mounted in non-magnetic cross-bars E E, secured to the poles of the field-magnet. The terminals of the armature-coils D D' are connected to insulated sliding contact-rings a a b b, carried by the armature shaft, and brushes c c' bear upon these rings to convey to the coils the currents which operate the motor.

The generator for operating this motor is or may be of precisely identical construction; and for convenience of reference I have marked in Fig. 3 its parts, as follows: F F, the field-magnets, energized by a continuous current passing in its field-coils G G; H H', the coils carried by the cylindrical armature; d d e e, the friction or collecting rings, carried by the armature-shaft and forming the terminals of the armature-coils; and f f', the collecting-brushes which deliver the currents developed in the armature-coils to the two circuits g g', which connect the generators with the motor.

The operation of this system will be understood from the foregoing. The action of the generator, by causing a progressive shifting of the poles in the motor-armature, sets up in the latter a rotation opposite in direction to that in which the poles move. If, now, the continuous current be directed through the field coils, so as to strongly energize the magnet A A, the speed of the motor, which depends upon that of the generator, will not be increased, but the power which produces its rotation will be increased in proportion to the energy supplied through the coils B B.

It is characteristic of this motor that its direction of rotation is not reversed by reversing the direction of the current through its field-coils, for the direction of rotation depends not upon the polarity of the field, but upon the direction in which the poles of the armature are shifted. To reverse the motor, the connections of either of the circuits *g g'* must be reversed.

I have found that if the field-magnet of the motor be strongly energized by its coils B B and the circuits through the armature-coils closed, assuming the generator to be running at a certain speed, the motor will not start; but if the field be but slightly energized or in general in such condition that the magnetic influence of the armature preponderates in determining its magnetic condition the motor will start and, with sufficient current, will reach its maximum or normal speed. For this reason it is desirable to keep at the start and until the motor has attained its normal speed, or nearly so, the field-circuit open or to permit but little current to pass through it. I have found, however, if the fields of both the generator and motor be strongly energized that starting the generator starts the motor, and that the speed of the motor is increased

in synchronism with the generator. Motors constructed and operated on this principle maintain almost absolutely the same speed for all loads within their normal working-limits; and in practice I have observed that if the motor be overloaded to such an extent as to check its speed the speed of the generator, if its motive power be not too great, is diminished synchronously with that of the motor.

I have in other applications shown how the construction of these or similar motors may be varied in certain well-known ways—as, for instance, by rotating the field about a stationary armature or rotating conductors within the field; but I do not illustrate these features further herein, as with the illustration which I have given I regard the rest as within the power of a person skilled in the art to construct.

The present form of motor is cheap, simple, reliable, and easy to maintain. It requires the simplest type of generator for its operation, and when properly constructed shows a high efficiency.

I do not claim herein the method of transmitting power which this system involves, having made it the subject of another application for patent.

What I claim is—

The combination, with a motor having independent energizing or armature circuits, of an alternating-current generator with corresponding induced circuits connected with the motor for effecting a progressive shifting of the poles of the motor-armature, and a source of continuous current for energizing the field of said motor, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

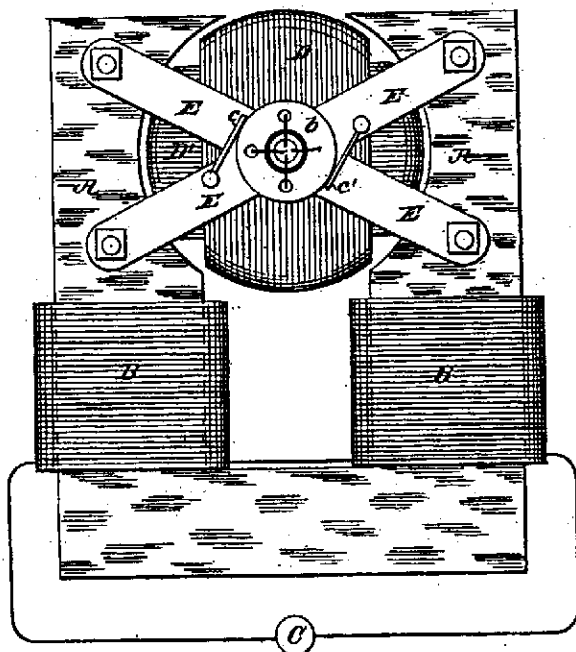
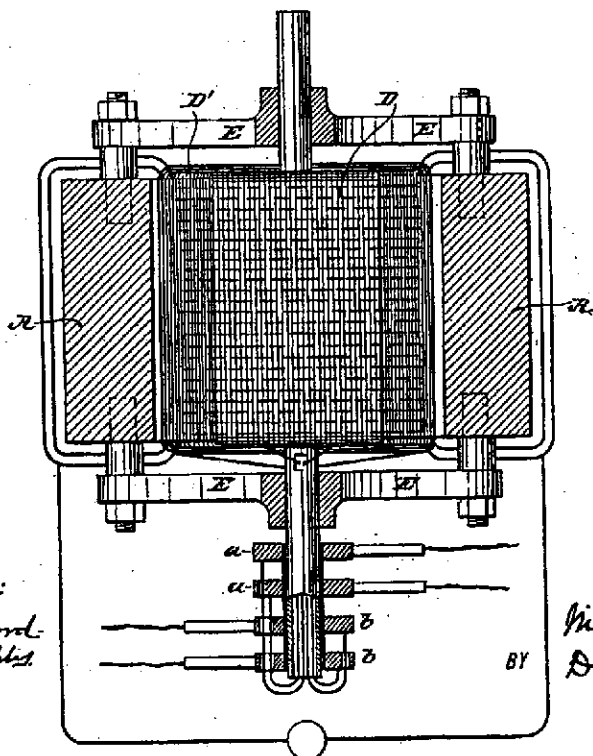
FRANK B. MURPHY,
FRANK E. HARTLEY.

N. TESLA.

ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 381,969.

Patented May 1, 1888.

Fig. 1.*Fig. 2.*

WITNESSES:

Robt. F. Gaylord.
Franc. B. Minkley.

INVENTOR.

Nikola Tesla.
Duncan, Curtis,
& Pugh
ATTORNEYS.

BY

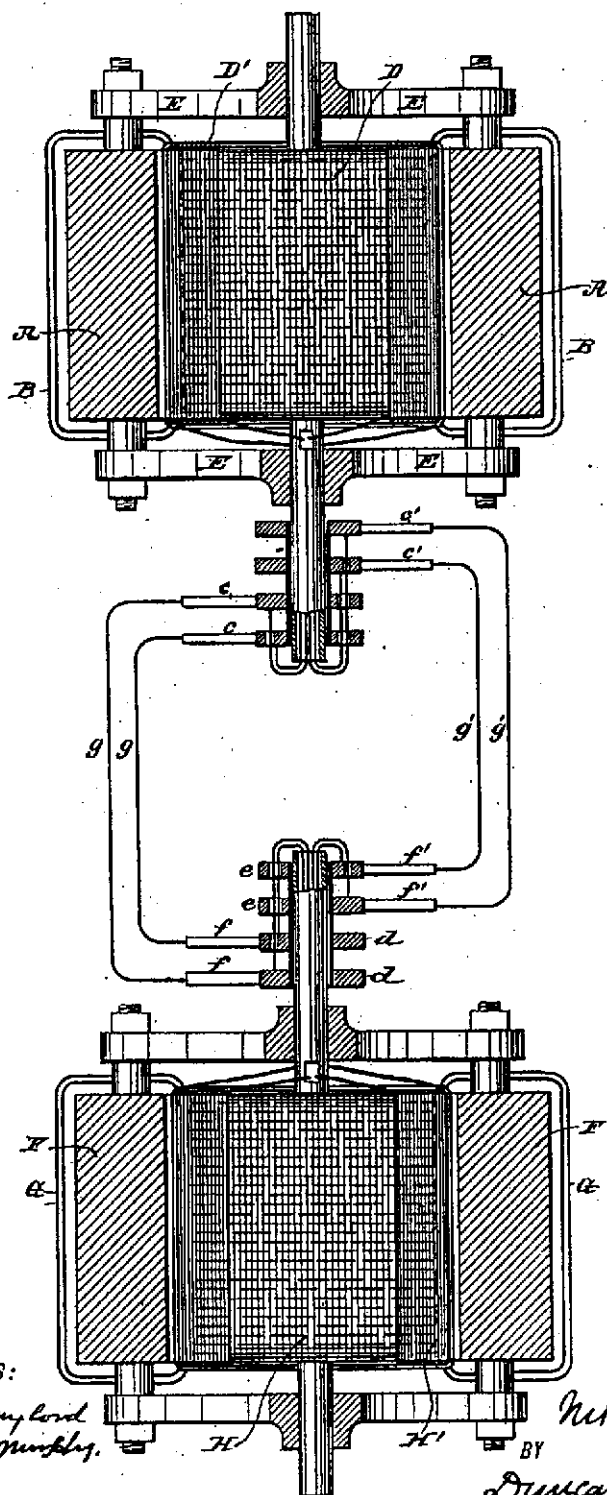
N. TESLA.

ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 381,969.

Patented May 1, 1888.

Fig. 3



WITNESSES:

Robert F. Gonyard
Frank B. Murphy.

INVENTOR.

Nikola Tesla

Duncan, Curtis & Page

ATTORNEYS.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR OF ONE-HALF TO CHARLES F. PECK, OF ENGLEWOOD, NEW JERSEY.

SYSTEM OF ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 381,970, dated May 1, 1888.

Application filed December 23, 1887. Serial No. 258,787. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, from Smiljan Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, now residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Systems of Electrical Distribution, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

This invention relates to those systems of electrical distribution in which a current from a single source of supply in a main or transmitting circuit is caused to induce by means of suitable induction apparatus a current or currents in an independent working circuit or circuits.

The main objects of the invention are the same as have been heretofore obtained by the use of these systems—viz., to divide the current from a single source, whereby a number of lamps, motors, or other translating devices may be independently controlled and operated by the same source of current, and in some cases to reduce a current of high potential in the main circuit to one of greater quantity and lower potential in the independent consumption or working circuit or circuits.

The general character of the devices employed in these systems is now well understood. An alternating-current magneto-machine is used as the source of supply. The current developed thereby is conducted through a transmission-circuit to one or more distant points at which the transformers are located. These consist of induction-machines of various kinds. In some cases ordinary forms of induction-coil have been used with one coil in the transmitting-circuit and the other in a local or consumption circuit, the coils being differently proportioned according to the work to be done in the consumption-circuit—that is to say, if the work requires a current of higher potential than that in the transmission-circuit the secondary or induced coil is of greater length and resistance than the primary, while, on the other hand, if a quantity current of lower potential is wanted the longer coil is made the primary. In lieu of these devices

various forms of electro-dynamic induction-machines, including the combined motors and generators, have been devised. For instance, a motor is constructed in accordance with well-understood principles, and on the same armature are wound induced coils which constitute a generator. The motor-coils are generally of fine wire and the generator-coils of coarser wire, so as to produce a current of greater quantity and lower potential than the line-current, which is of relatively high potential, to avoid loss in long transmission. A similar arrangement is to wind coils corresponding to those described in a ring or similar core, and by means of a commutator of suitable kind to direct the current through the inducing-coils successively, so as to maintain a movement of the poles of the core and of the lines of force which set up the currents in the induced coils.

Without enumerating the objections to these systems in detail, it will suffice to say that the theory or the principle of the action or operation of these devices has apparently been so little understood that their proper construction and use have up to the present time been attended with various difficulties and great expense. The transformers are very liable to be injured and burned out, and the means resorted to for curing this and other defects have almost invariably been at the expense of efficiency.

The form of converter or transformer which I have devised appears to be largely free from the defects and objections to which I have alluded. While I do not herein advance any theory as to its mode of operation, I would state that, in so far as the principal of construction is concerned, it is analogous to those transformers which I have above described as electro-dynamic induction-machines, except that it involves no moving parts whatever, and is hence not liable to wear or other derangement, and requires no more attention than the other and more common induction-machines.

In carrying out my invention I provide a series of inducing-coils and corresponding induced coils, which, by preference, I wind upon a core closed upon itself—such as an annulus or ring subdivided in the usual manner. The

two sets of coils are wound side by side or superposed or otherwise placed in well-known ways to bring them into the most effective relations to one another and to the core. The inducing or primary coils wound on the core are divided into pairs or sets by the proper electrical connections, so that while the coils of one pair or set to co-operate in fixing the magnetic poles of the core at two given diametrically-opposite points, the coils of the other pair or set—assuming, for sake of illustration, that there are but two—tend to fix the poles ninety degrees from such points. With this induction device I use an alternating-current generator with coils or sets of coils to correspond with those of the converter, and by means of suitable conductors I connect up in independent circuits the corresponding coils of the generator and converter. It results from this that the different electrical phases in the generator are attended by corresponding magnetic changes in the converter; or, in other words, that as the generator-coils revolve the points of greatest magnetic intensity in the converter will be progressively shifted or whirled around. This principle I have applied under variously-modified conditions to the operation of electro-magnetic motors, and in previous applications, notably in those having Serial Nos. 252,132 and 256,561, I have described in detail the manner of constructing and using such motors. In the present application my object is to describe the best and most convenient manner of which I am at present aware of carrying out the invention as applied to a system of electrical distribution; but one skilled in the art will readily understand from the description by the modifications proposed in said applications, wherein the form of both the generator and converter in the present case may be modified.

In illustration therefore of the details of construction which my present invention involves, I now refer to the accompanying drawings.

Figure 1 is a diagrammatic illustration of the converter and the electrical connections of the same. Fig. 2 is a horizontal central cross-section of Fig. 1. Fig. 3 is a diagram of the circuits of the entire system, the generator being shown in section.

I use a core, A, which is closed upon itself—that is to say, of an annular cylindrical or equivalent form—and as the efficiency of the apparatus is largely increased by the subdivision of this core I make it of thin strips, plates, or wires of soft iron electrically insulated as far as practicable. Upon this core, by any well-known method, I wind, say, four coils, B B B' B', which I use as primary coils, and for which I use long lengths of comparatively fine wire. Over these coils I then wind shorter coils of coarser wire, C C C' C', to constitute the induced or secondary coils. The construction of this or any equivalent form of converter may be carried further, as above

pointed out, by inclosing these coils with iron—as, for example, by winding over the coils a layer or layers of insulated iron wire.

The device is provided with suitable binding-posts, to which the ends of the coils are led. The diametrically-opposite coils B B and B' B' are connected, respectively, in series, and the four terminals are connected to the binding-posts 1 2 3 4. The induced coils are connected together in any desired manner. For example, as shown in Fig. 3, C C may be connected in multiple arc when a quantity current is desired—as for running a group of incandescent lamps, D—while C' C' may be independently connected in series in a circuit including arc lamps or the like. The generator in this system will be adapted to the converter in the manner illustrated. For example, in the present case I employ a pair of ordinary permanent or electro magnets, E E, between which is mounted a cylindrical armature on a shaft, F, and wound with two coils, G G'. The terminals of these coils are connected, respectively, to four insulated contact or collecting rings, H H H' H', and the four line circuit-wires L connect the brushes K, bearing on these rings, to the converter in the order shown. Noting the results of this combination, it will be observed that at a given point of time the coil G is in its neutral position and is generating little or no current, while the other coil, G', is in a position where it exerts its maximum effect. Assuming coil G to be connected in circuit with coils B B of the converter, and coil G' with coils B' B', it is evident that the poles of the ring A will be determined by coils B' B' alone; but as the armature of the generator revolves, coil G develops more current and coil G' less, until G reaches its maximum and G' its neutral position. The obvious result will be to shift the poles of the ring A through one-quarter of its periphery. The movement of the coils through the next quarter of a turn, during which coil G' enters a field of opposite polarity and generates a current of opposite direction and increasing strength, while coil G, in passing from its maximum to its neutral position generates a current of decreasing strength and same direction as before, causes a further shifting of the poles through the second quarter of the ring. The second half-revolution will obviously be a repetition of the same action. By the shifting of the poles of the ring A a powerful dynamic inductive effect on the coils C C' is produced. Besides the currents generated in the secondary coils by dynamo-magnetic induction other currents will be set up in the same coils in consequence of any variations in the intensity of the poles in the ring A. This should be avoided by maintaining the intensity of the poles constant, to accomplish which care should be taken in designing and proportioning the generator and in distributing the coils in the ring A and balancing their effect. When this is

done, the currents are produced by dynamo-magnetic induction only, the same result being obtained as though the poles were shifted by a commutator with an infinite number of segments.

The modifications which are applicable to other forms of converter are in many respects applicable to this. I refer more particularly to the form of the core, the relative lengths and resistances of the primary and secondary coils, and the arrangements for running or operating the same.

The new method of electrical conversion which this system involves I have made the subject of another application, and I do not claim it therefore herein.

Without limiting myself therefore to any specific form, what I claim is—

1. The combination, with a core closed upon itself, inducing or primary coils wound thereon and connected up in independent pairs or sets, and induced or secondary coils wound upon or near the primary coils, of a generator of alternating currents and independent connections to the primary coils, whereby by the operation of the generator a progressive shifting of the poles of the core is effected, as set forth.

2. The combination, with an annular or similar magnetic core and primary and secondary coils wound thereon, of an alternating-current generator having induced or armature coils corresponding to the primary coils, and independent circuits connecting the primary coils with the corresponding coils of the generator, as herein set forth.

3. The combination, with independent electric transmission-circuits, of transformers consisting of annular or similar cores wound with primary and secondary coils, the opposite primary coils of each transformer being connected to one of the transmission-circuits, an alternating-current generator with independent induced or armature coils connected with the transmission-circuits, whereby alternating currents may be directed through the primary coils of the transformers in the order and manner herein described.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

ROBT. H. DUNCAN,
ROBT. F. GAYLORD.

N. TESLA.

SYSTEM OF ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION.

No. 381,970.

Patented May 1, 1888.

Fig. 1.

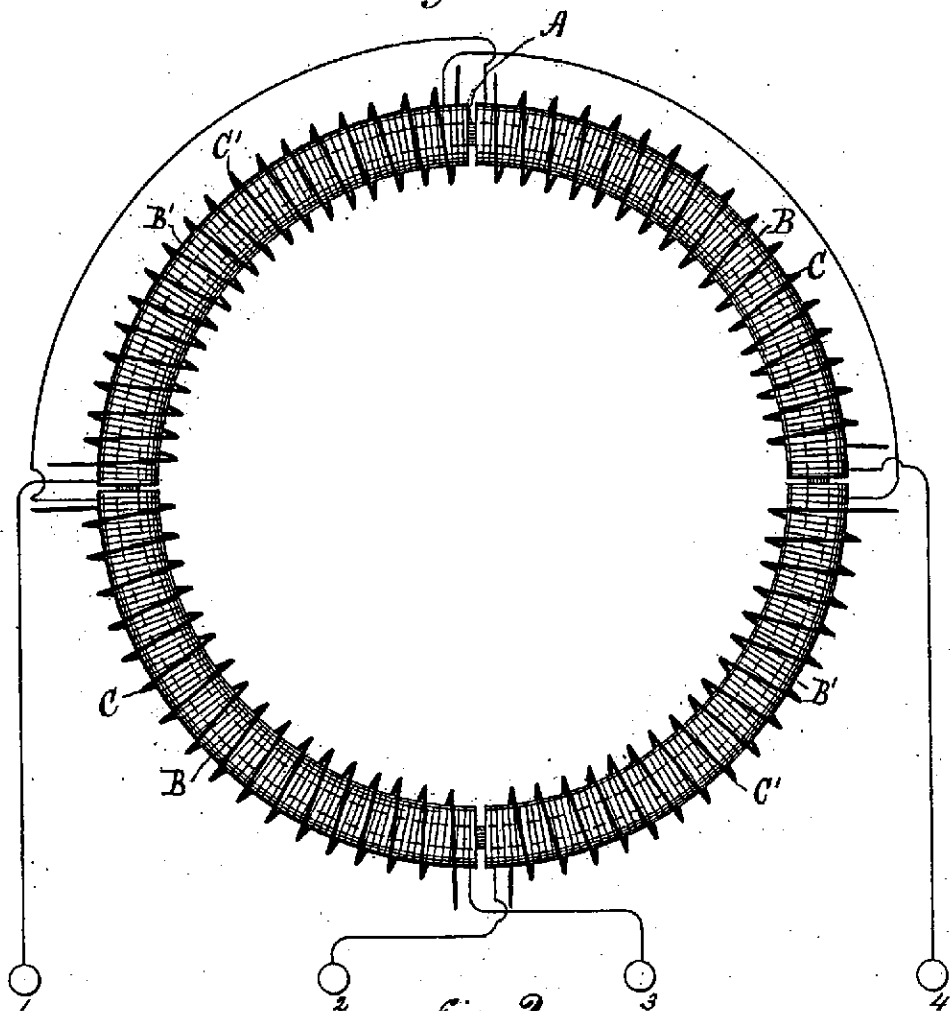
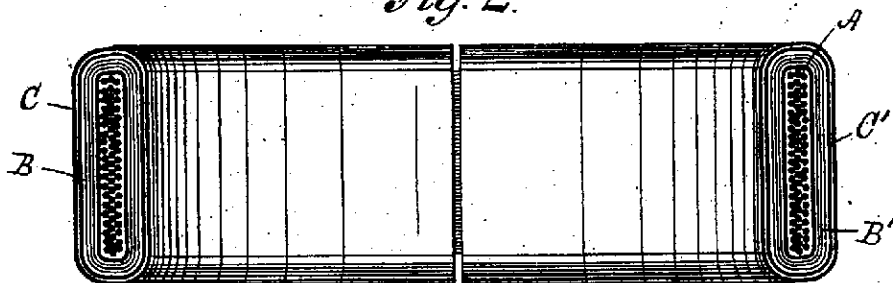


Fig. 2.



WITNESSES:

Robt. H. Duncan.

Robert F. Gayford

INVENTOR.

Nikola Tesla.

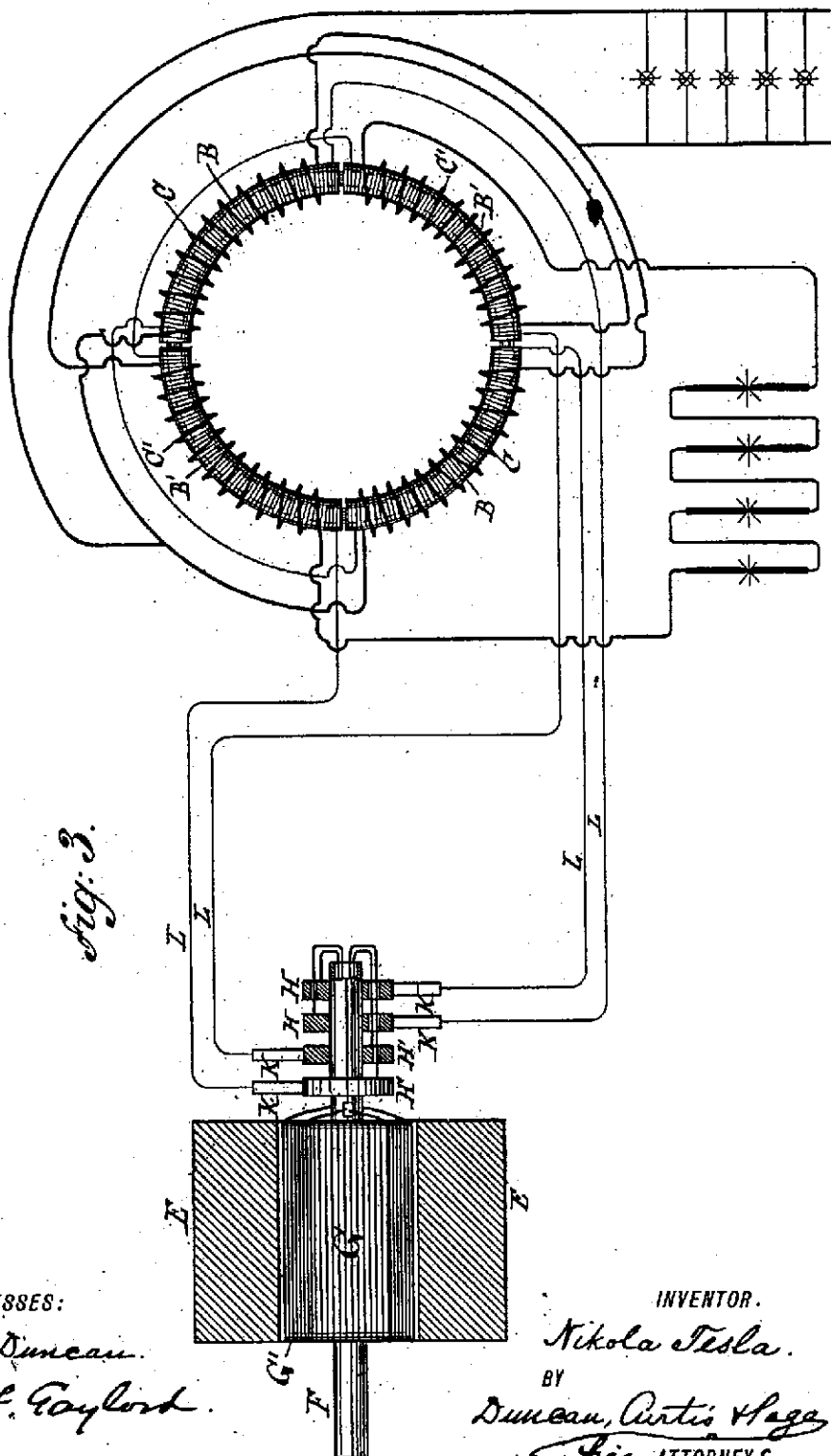
BY
Duncan, Curtis & Page
ATTORNEYS.

N. TESLA.

SYSTEM OF ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION.

No. 381,970.

Patented May 1, 1888.



WITNESSES:

Robt. H. Duncan.

Reubt. F. Gaylord.

INVENTOR.

Nikola Tesla.

BY

Duncan, Curtis & Page
His ATTORNEYS.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR OF ONE-HALF TO CHARLES F. PECK, OF ENGLEWOOD, NEW JERSEY.

ELECTRO-MAGNETIC MOTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 382,279, dated May 1, 1888.

Application filed November 30, 1887. Serial No. 256,561. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, now residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Electro-Magnetic Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

In a former application, filed October 12, 1887, No. 252,132, I have shown and described a mode or plan of operating electric motors by causing a progressive shifting of the poles of one or both of the parts or elements of a motor—that is to say, of either the field magnet or magnets or armature, or both. I accomplish this by constructing a motor with two or more independent energizing-circuits, on the field-magnets, for example, and I connect these up with corresponding induced or generating circuits in an alternating-current generator, so that alternating currents are caused to traverse the motor-circuits. By so doing the poles of the field-magnet of the motor are progressively shifted, and by their attraction upon a rotary armature set up a rotation in the latter in the direction of the movement of the poles. In this case, however, the rotation is produced and maintained by the direct attraction of the magnetic elements of the motor. I have discovered that advantageous results may be secured in this system by utilizing the shifting of the poles primarily to set up currents in a closed conductor located within the influence of the field of the motor, so that the rotation may result from the reaction of such currents upon the field.

To illustrate more fully the nature of the invention I refer to the accompanying drawings.

Figure 1 represents in side elevation the operative parts or elements of a motor embodying the principles of my invention, and in section the generator for operating the same. Fig. 2 is a horizontal central section of the motor in Fig. 1, the circuits being shown partly in diagram. Fig. 3 is a modified form of motor in side elevation. Fig. 4 is a central horizontal cross-section of Fig. 3.

In Figs. 1 and 2, A is an annular core of soft iron, preferably laminated or formed of in-

sulated sections, so as to be susceptible to rapid variations of magnetism. This core is wound with four coils, C C' C', the diametrically-opposite coils being connected in the same circuit, and the two free ends of each pair being brought to the terminals *t* and *t'*, respectively, as shown. Within this annular field-magnet A is mounted a soft-iron cylinder or disk, D, on an axis, *a*, in bearings *b b*, properly supported by the frame-work of the machine. The disk carries two coils, E E', of insulated wire, wound at right angles to one another, and having their respective ends joined, so that each coil forms a separate closed circuit.

In illustration of the action or mode of operation of this apparatus, let it be assumed that the annular field-magnet A is permanently magnetized, so as to present two free poles diametrically opposite. If suitable mechanical provision be now made for rotating the field-magnet around the disk, the apparatus exemplifies the conditions of an ordinary magneto-generator, and currents would be set up in the coils or closed conductors E E' on the disk D. Evidently these currents would be the most powerful at or near the points of the greatest density of the lines of force, and they would, as in all similar cases, tend, at least theoretically, to establish magnetic poles in the disk D at right angles to those in the annular field-magnet A. As a result of the well-known reaction of these polarities upon each other, a more or less powerful tendency in the disk to rotate in the same direction as that of the field-magnet would be established. If, on the other hand, the ring or annular field-magnet A be held stationary and its magnetic poles progressively shifted by passing through its coils C C' properly-alternated currents, it is obvious that similar results will follow, for the passage of the currents causing the shifting or whirling of the poles of the field-magnet A induces currents in the closed circuits of the armature-coils E E', with the result of setting up a rotation of the disk D in the same direction of such shifting. Inasmuch as the currents are always induced or generated in the coils E E' in the same manner, the poles of the disk or cylinder follow continuously the poles of the annular field-magnet, maintaining, at least theoretically, the same rela-

tive positions. This results in an even and perfect action of the apparatus.

In order that the system as a whole may be better understood, I shall now describe the mode or plan devised by me for producing the currents that effect the progressive shifting of the poles of the motor.

In Fig. 1, B B' are the poles or pole-pieces of an alternating-current generator. They are permanently magnetized and of opposite polarity. F is a cylindrical or other armature containing the independent coils G G'. These coils are wound at right angles, so that while one is crossing the strongest portion of the field of force the other is at the neutral point. The coils G G' terminate in the two pairs of insulated collecting-rings *f* and *f'*, upon which bear the brushes *g* *g'*. Four wires connect the motor-terminals *t* and *t'* with the brushes *g* and *g'*, respectively. When the generator is rotated, the coil G will at the certain point shown in the drawings be generating its maximum current, while coil G' is neutral. Let it be assumed that this current is conveyed from the rings *f* *f'* to the terminals *t* and through the coils O C. Its effect will be to establish poles in the ring midway between the two coils. By the further rotation of the generator the coil G' is brought within the influence of the field and begins to produce a current, which grows stronger as the said coil approaches the maximum points of the field, while the current produced in the coil G diminishes as the said coil recedes from those points. The current from the coil G', being conveyed to the terminals *t'* and through coils C' C', has a tendency to establish poles at right angles to those set up by the coils O C; but owing to the greater effect of the current in coils O C the result is merely to advance the poles from the position in which they would remain if due to the magnetizing influence of coils O C alone. This progression continues for a quarter-revolution until coil G becomes neutral and coil G' produces its maximum current. The action described is then repeated, the poles having been shifted through one-half of the field, or a half-revolution. The second half-revolution is accomplished in a similar way, the same polarity being maintained in the shifting poles by the movement of the generator-coils alternately through fields of opposite polarity.

The same principle of operation may be applied to motors of various forms, and I have shown one of such modified forms in Figs. 3 and 4 of the drawings. In these figures, M M' are field-magnets secured to or forming part of a frame, F', mounted on a base, P. These magnets should be laminated or composed of a number of electrically-insulated magnetic sections, to prevent the circulation of induced currents and to render them capable of rapid magnetic changes. These magnetic cores or poles are wound with insulated coils O C', the diametrically-opposite coils being connected

together in series and their free ends brought to terminals *t* *t'*, respectively. Between the poles there is mounted, in bearings in the cross-pieces G'', a cylindrical iron core, D, which, in order to prevent the formation of eddy currents, and the loss consequent thereon, is subdivided in the usual way. Insulated conductors or coils are applied to the cylinder D longitudinally, and for these I may employ copper plates E E', which are secured to the sides and ends of the cylindrical core in well-known ways. These plates or conductors may form one or preferably several independent circuits around the core. In the drawings two of such circuits are shown, formed respectively by the conductors E and E', which are insulated from each other. It is advantageous also to slot these plates longitudinally, to prevent the formation of eddy currents and waste of energy.

From what has now been given the operation of this apparatus will be readily understood. To the binding-posts *t* *t'* are connected the proper circuits from the generator to cause a progressive shifting of the resultant magnetic poles produced by the magnets M upon the armature. Thus currents are induced in the closed circuits on the core, which, energizing the core strongly, maintain a powerful attraction between the same and the field, which causes a rotation of the armature in the direction in which the resultant poles are shifted.

The particular advantage of the construction illustrated in Figs. 3 and 4 is that a concentrated and powerful field is obtained and a remarkably powerful tendency to rotation in the armature secured. The same results may be obtained in the form illustrated in Figs. 1 and 2, however, by forming polar projections on the field and armature cores.

When these motors are not loaded, but running free, the rotation of the armature is nearly synchronous with the rotation of the poles of the field, and under these circumstances very little current is perceptible in the coils E E'; but if a load is added the speed tends to diminish and the currents in coils E E' are augmented, so that the rotary effort is increased proportionately.

Obviously the principle of this invention is capable of many modified applications, most of which follow as a matter of course from the constructions described. For instance, the armature-coils, or those in which the currents are set up by induction, may be held stationary and the alternating currents from the generator conducted through the rotating inducing or field coils by means of suitable sliding contacts. It is also apparent that the induced coils may be movable and the magnetic parts of the motor stationary; but I have illustrated these modifications fully in the application to which reference has herein been made.

In the case of motors wound with independent field and armature circuits and operated by shifting their poles, as described in my said

prior application, I may by short-circuiting the armature-coils apply the present invention in order to obtain greater power on starting.

An advantage and characteristic feature of motors constructed and operated in accordance with this invention is their capability of almost instantaneous reversal by a reversal of one of the energizing-currents from the generator. This will be understood from a consideration of the working conditions. Assuming the armature to be rotating in a certain direction following the movement of the shifting poles, then reverse the direction of the shifting, which may be done by reversing the connections of one of the two energizing-circuits.

If it be borne in mind that in a dynamo-electric machine the energy developed is very nearly proportionate to the cube of the speed, it is evident that at such moment an extraordinary power is brought to play in reversing the motor. In addition to this the resistance of the motor is very greatly reduced at the moment of reversal, so that a much greater amount of current passes through the energizing-circuits.

The phenomenon alluded to—viz., the variation of the resistance of the motor apparently like that in ordinary motors—I attribute to the variation in the amount of self-induction in the primary or energizing circuits.

These motors present numerous advantages, chief among which are their simplicity, reliability, economy in construction and maintenance, and their easy and dangerless management. As no commutators are required on

either the generators or the motors, the system is capable of a very perfect action and involves but little loss.

I do not claim herein the mode or plan of producing currents in closed conductors in a magnetic field which is herein disclosed, except in its application to this particular purpose; but

What I claim is—

1. The combination, with a motor containing independent inducing or energizing circuits and closed induced circuits, of an alternating-current generator having induced or generating circuits corresponding to and connected with the energizing-circuits of the motor, as set forth.

2. An electro-magnetic motor having its field-magnets wound with independent coils and its armature with independent closed coils, in combination with a source of alternating currents connected to the field-coils and capable of progressively shifting the poles of the field-magnet, as set forth.

3. A motor constructed with an annular field-magnet wound with independent coils and a cylindrical or disk armature wound with closed coils, in combination with a source of alternating currents connected with the field-magnet coils and acting to progressively shift or rotate the poles of the field, as herein set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

FRANK R. MURPHY,
FRANK E. HARTLEY.

N. TESLA.

ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 382,279.

Patented May 1, 1888.

Fig. 1.

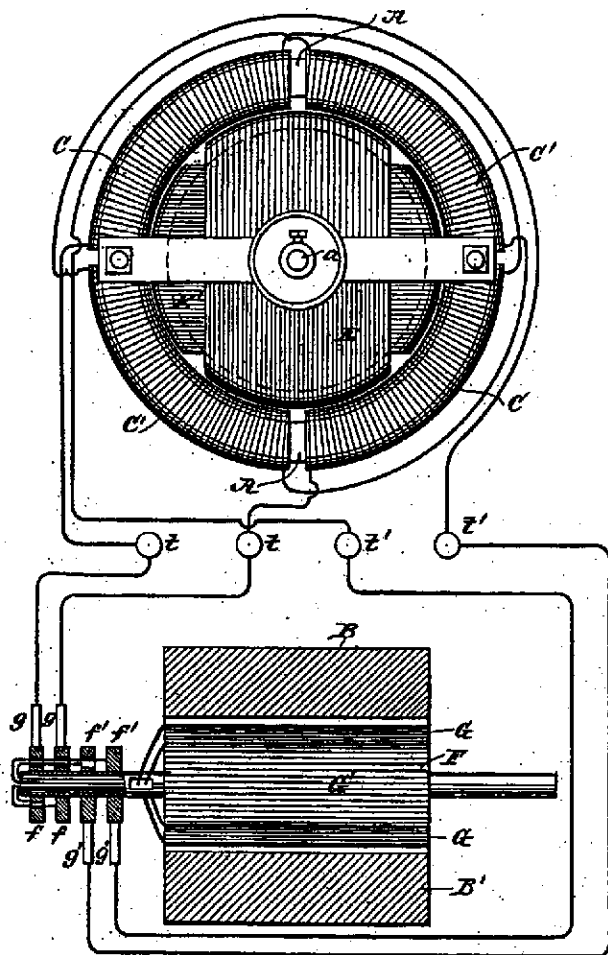
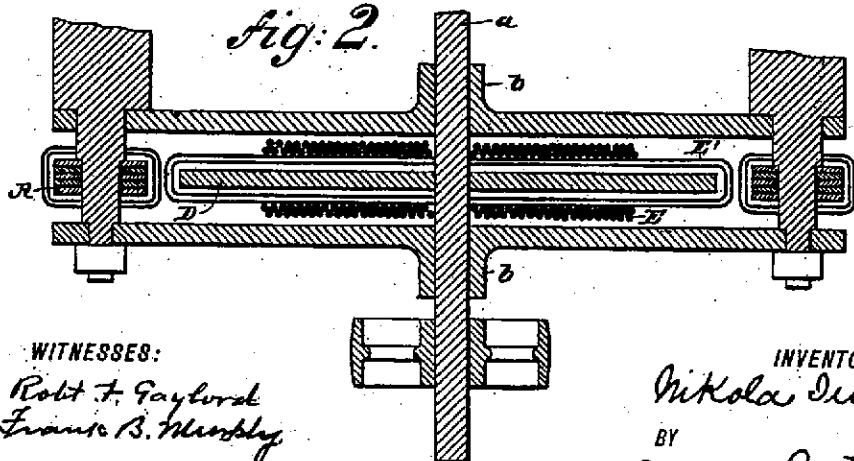


Fig. 2.



WITNESSES:

Robert F. Gaylord
Francis B. Mosby

INVENTOR.

Nikola Tesla.

BY

Duncan, Curtis & Page

ATTORNEYS.

N. TESLA.

ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 382,279.

Patented May 1, 1888.

Fig. 3.

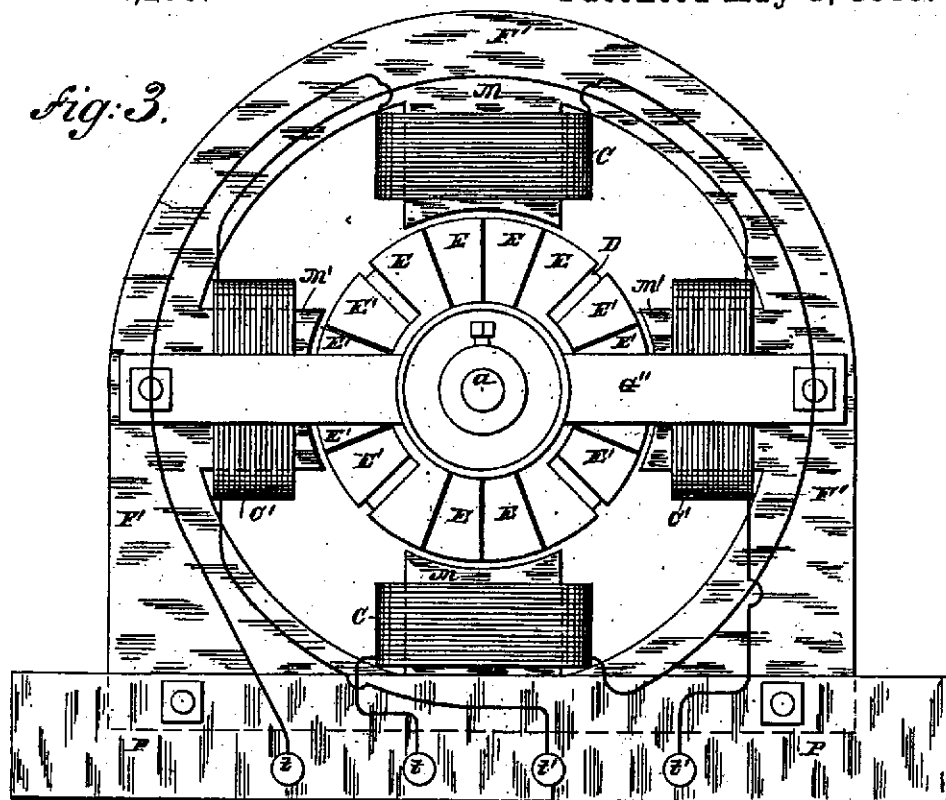
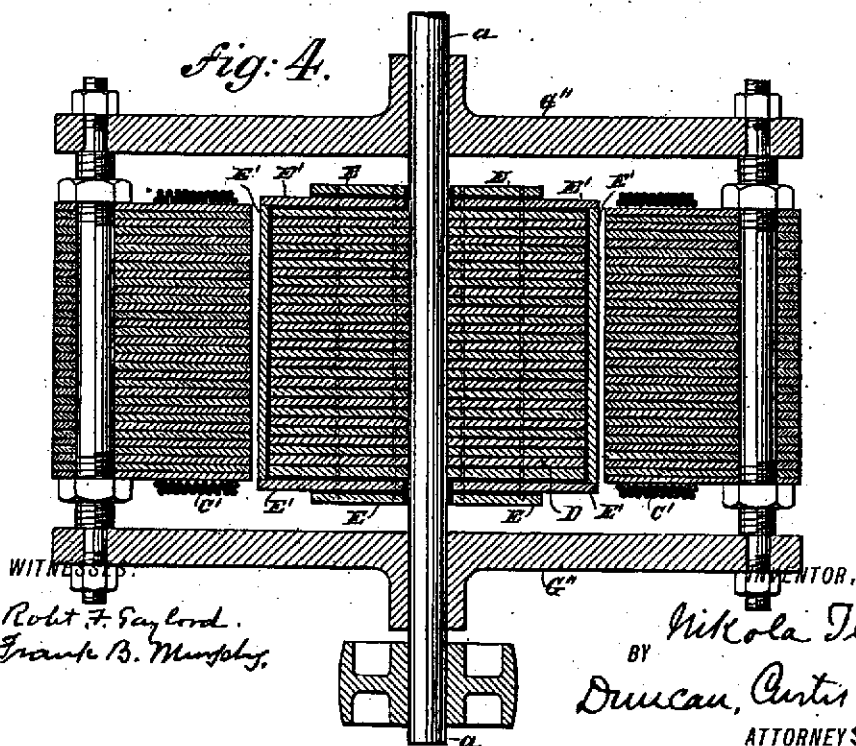


Fig. 4.



WITNESSES:
 Robt. F. Gaylord.
 Frank B. Murphy.

INVENTOR,
 Nikola Tesla.
 BY
 Duncan, Curtis & Bage
 ATTORNEYS.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

ELECTRICAL TRANSMISSION OF POWER.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 382,280, dated May 1, 1888.

Original application filed October 12, 1887. Serial No. 252,132. Divided and this application filed March 9, 1888. Serial No. 254,755. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, and residing in the city, county, and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in the Transmission of Power, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

This application is a division of an application filed by me October 12, 1887, No. 252,132.

The practical solution of the problem of the electrical conversion and transmission of mechanical energy involves certain requirements which the apparatus and systems heretofore employed have not been capable of fulfilling. Such a solution primarily demands a uniformity of speed in the motor irrespective of its load within its normal working limits. On the other hand, it is necessary, to attain a greater economy of conversion than has heretofore existed, to construct cheaper and more reliable and simple apparatus, and such that all danger from the use of currents of high tension, which are necessary to an economical transmission, may be avoided.

My present invention is a new method or mode of effecting the transmission of power by electrical agency, whereby many of the present objections are overcome and great economy and efficiency secured.

In carrying out my invention I employ a motor in which there are two or more independent energizing-circuits, through which I pass, in the manner hereinafter described, alternating currents, effecting thereby a progressive shifting of the magnetism or of the "lines of force," which, in accordance with well-known theories, produces the action of the motor.

It is obvious that a proper progressive shifting of the lines of force may be utilized to set up a movement or rotation of either element of the motor, the armature, or the field-magnet, and that if the currents directed through the several circuits of the motor are in proper direction no commutator for the motor will be required; but to avoid all the usual commutating appliances in the system I connect the motor-circuits directly with those of a suitable alternating-current generator. The practical results of such a system, its economical advan-

tages, and the mode of its construction and operation will be described more in detail by reference to the accompanying diagrams and drawings.

Figures 1 to 8 and 1^a to 8^a, inclusive, are diagrams illustrating the principle of the action of my invention. The remaining figures are views of the apparatus in various forms by means of which the invention may be carried into effect, and which will be described in their order.

Referring first to Fig. 9, which is a diagrammatic representation of a motor, a generator, and connecting-circuits in accordance with my invention, M is the motor, and G the generator for driving it. The motor comprises a ring or annulus, R, preferably built up of thin insulated iron rings or annular plates, so as to be as susceptible as possible to variations in its magnetic condition. This ring is surrounded by four coils of insulated wire symmetrically placed and designated by CCC' C. The diametrically-opposite coils are connected up so as to co-operate in pairs in producing free poles on diametrically-opposite parts of the ring. The four free ends thus left are connected to terminals T T T' T', as indicated. Near the ring, and preferably inside of it, there is mounted on an axis or shaft a magnetic disk, O, generally circular in shape, but having two segments, cut away as shown. This disk is mounted so as to turn freely within the ring R. The generator G is of any ordinary type, that shown in the present instance having field-magnets N S and a cylindrical armature-core, A, wound with the two coils B B'. The free ends of each coil are carried through the shaft *a* and connected, respectively, to insulated contact-rings *b b' b'' b'''*. Any convenient form of collector or brush bears on each ring and forms a terminal by which the current to and from a ring is conveyed. These terminals are connected to the terminals of the motor by the wires L and L' in the manner indicated, whereby two complete circuits are formed, one including, say, the coils B of the generator and C O of the motor and the other the remaining coils B' and C' of the generator and the motor.

It remains now to explain the mode of operation of this system, and for this purpose I

refer to the diagrams, Figs. 1 to 8 and 1^a to 8^a, for an illustration of the various phases through which the coils of the generator pass when in operation, and the corresponding and resultant magnetic changes produced in the motor. The revolution of the armature of the generator between the field-magnets N S obviously produces in the coils B B' alternating currents the intensity and direction of which depend upon well-known laws. In the position of the coils indicated in Fig. 1 the current in the coil B is practically *nil*, whereas the coil B' at the same time is developing its maximum current, and by the means indicated in the description of Fig. 9 the circuit including this coil may also include, say, the coils C O of the motor, Fig. 1^a. The result, with the proper connections, would be the magnetization of the ring R, the poles being on the line N S. The same order of connections being observed between the coil B and the coil C', the latter when traversed by a current tend to fix the poles at right angles to the line N S of Fig. 1^a. It results, therefore, that when the generator-coils have made one-eighth of a revolution, reaching the position shown in Fig. 2, both pairs of coils, C and C', will be traversed by current and act in opposition in so far as the location of the poles is concerned. The position of the poles will therefore be the resultant of the magnetizing forces of the coils—that is to say, it will advance along the ring to a position corresponding to one-eighth of the revolution of the armature of the generator.

In Fig. 3 the armature of the generator has progressed to one-fourth of a revolution. At the point indicated the current in the coil B is maximum, while in B' it is *nil*, the latter coil being in its neutral position. The poles of the ring R in Fig. 3^a will in consequence be shifted to a position ninety degrees from that at the start, as shown. I have in like manner shown the conditions existing at each successive eighth of one revolution in the remaining figures. A short reference to these figures will suffice to an understanding of their significance.

Figs. 4 and 4^a illustrate the conditions which exist when the generator-armature has completed three-eighths of a revolution. Here both coils are generating currents; but the coil B', having now entered the opposite field, is generating a current in the opposite direction having the opposite magnetizing effect; hence the resultant pole will be on the line N S, as shown.

In Fig. 5 one-half of one revolution of the armature of the generator has been completed, and the resulting magnetic condition of the ring is shown in Fig. 5^a. In this phase coil B is in the neutral position, while coil B' is generating its maximum current, which is in the same direction as in Fig. 4. The poles will consequently be shifted through one-half of the ring.

In Fig. 6 the armature has completed five-eighths of a revolution. In this position coil

B' develops a less powerful current, but in the same direction as before. The coil B, on the other hand, having entered a field of opposite polarity, generates a current of opposite direction. The resultant poles will therefore be in the line N S, Fig. 6^a; or, in other words, the poles of the ring will be shifted along five-eighths of its periphery.

Figs. 7 and 7^a in the same manner illustrate the phases of the generator and ring at three-quarters of a revolution, and Figs. 8 and 8^a the same at seven eighths of a revolution of the generator-armature. These figures will be readily understood from the foregoing.

When a complete revolution is accomplished, the conditions existing at the start are re-established, and the same action is repeated for the next and all subsequent revolutions, and in general it will now be seen that every revolution of the armature of the generator produces a corresponding shifting of the poles or lines of force around the ring. This effect I utilize in producing the rotation of a body or armature in a variety of ways—for example, applying the principle above described to the apparatus shown in Fig. 9. The disk D, owing to its tendency to assume that position in which it embraces the greatest possible number of the magnetic lines, is set in rotation, following the motion of the lines or the points of greatest attraction.

The disk D in Fig. 9 is shown as cut away on opposite sides; but this I have found is not essential to effecting its rotation, as a circular disk, as indicated by dotted lines, is also set in rotation. This phenomenon I attribute to a certain inertia or resistance inherent in the metal to the rapid shifting of the lines of force through the same, which results in a continuous tangential pull upon the disk, causing its rotation. This seems to be confirmed by the fact that a circular disk of steel is more effectively rotated than one of soft iron, for the reason that the former is assumed to possess a greater resistance to the shifting of the magnetic lines.

In illustration of other forms of apparatus by means of which I carry out my invention, I shall now describe the remaining figures of the drawings.

Fig. 10 is a view in elevation and part vertical section of a motor. Fig. 12 is a top view of the same with the field in section and a diagram of connections. Fig. 11 is an end or side view of a generator with the fields in section. This form of motor may be used in place of that shown.

D is a cylindrical or drum armature-core, which, for obvious reasons, should be split up as far as practicable to prevent the circulation within it of currents of induction. The core is wound longitudinally with two coils, B and B', the ends of which are respectively connected to insulated contact-rings d d' d', carried by the shaft a, upon which the armature is mounted.

The armature is set to revolve within an

iron shell, R, which constitutes the field-magnet or other element of the motor. This shell is preferably formed with a slot or opening, r ; but it may be continuous, as shown by the dotted lines, and in this event it is preferably made of steel. It is also desirable that this shell should be divided up similarly to the armature, and for similar reasons. As a generator for driving this motor, I may use the device shown in Fig. 11. This represents an annular or ring armature, A, surrounded by four coils, F F' F' F', of which those diametrically opposite are connected in series, so that four free ends are left, which are connected to the insulated contact-rings $b b' b' b'$. The ring is suitably mounted on a shaft, a' , between the poles N S. The contact-rings of each pair of generator coils are connected to those of the motor, respectively, by means of contact-brushes and the two pairs of conductors, L L and L' L', as indicated diagrammatically in Fig. 13.

Now, it is obvious from a consideration of the preceding figures that the rotation of the generator-ring produces currents in the coils F F', which, being transmitted to the motor-coils, impart to the core of the latter magnetic poles constantly shifting or whirling around the core. This effect sets up a rotation of the armature, owing to the attractive force between the shell and the poles of the armature; but inasmuch as the coils in this case move relatively to the shell or field-magnet the movement of the coils is in the opposite direction to the progressive shifting of the poles.

Other arrangements of the coils of both generator and motor are possible, and a greater number of circuits may be used, as will be seen in the two succeeding figures.

Fig. 13 is a diagrammatic illustration of a motor and a generator connected and constructed in accordance with my invention. Fig. 14 is an end view of the generator with its field-magnets in section.

The field of the motor M is produced by six magnetic poles, G' G', secured to or projecting from a ring or frame, H. These magnets or poles are wound with insulated coils, those diametrically opposite to each other being connected in pairs, so as to produce opposite poles in each pair. This leaves six free ends, which are connected to the terminals T T' T' T' T' T'. The armature which is mounted to rotate between the poles is a cylinder or disk, D, of wrought-iron, mounted on the shaft a . Two segments of the same are cut away, as shown. The generator for this motor has in this instance an armature, A, wound with three coils, K K' K', at sixty degrees apart. The ends of these coils are connected, respectively, to insulated contact rings $e e' e' e' e' e'$. These rings are connected to those of the motor in proper order by means of collecting-brushes and six wires, forming three independent circuits. The variations in the strength and direction of the currents transmitted through these circuits and traversing the coils of the

motor produce a steadily-progressive shifting of the resultant attractive force exerted by the poles G' upon the armature D, and consequently keep the armature rapidly rotating. The peculiar advantage of this disposition is in obtaining a more concentrated and powerful field. The application of this principle to systems involving multiple circuits generally will be understood from this apparatus.

Referring now to Figs. 15 and 16, Fig. 15 is a diagrammatic representation of a modified disposition of my invention. Fig. 16 is a horizontal cross-section of the motor. In this case a disk, D, of magnetic metal, preferably cut away at opposite edges, as shown in dotted lines in the figure, is mounted so as to turn freely inside two stationary coils, N' N'', placed at right angles to one another. The coils are preferably wound on a frame, O, of insulating material, and their ends are connected to the fixed terminals T T' T' T'. The generator G is a representative of that class of alternating-current machines in which a stationary induced element is employed. That shown consists of a revolving permanent or electro-magnet, A, and four independent stationary magnets, P P', wound with coils, those diametrically opposite to each other being connected in series and having their ends secured to the terminals t t' t' t'. From these terminals the currents are led to the terminals of the motor, as shown in the drawings. The mode of operation is substantially the same as in the previous cases, the currents traversing the coils of the motor having the effect to turn the disk D. This mode of carrying out the invention has the advantage of dispensing with the sliding contacts in the system.

In the forms of motor above described only one of the elements—the armature or the field-magnet—is provided with energizing-coils. It remains, then, to show how both elements may be wound with coils. Reference is therefore had to Figs. 17, 18, and 19. Fig. 17 is an end view of such a motor. Fig. 18 is a similar view of the generator, with the field-magnets in section; and Fig. 19 is a diagram of the circuit-connections. In Fig. 17 the field-magnet of the motor consists of a ring, R, preferably of thin insulated iron sheets or bands, with eight pole-pieces, G, and corresponding recesses in which four pairs of coils, V, are wound. The diametrically-opposite pairs of coils are connected in series and the free ends connected to four terminals, w , the rule to be followed in connecting being the same as hereinbefore explained. An armature, D, with two coils, E E', at right angles to each other, is mounted to rotate inside of the field-magnet R. The ends of the armature-coils are connected to two pairs of contact-rings, $d d' d' d'$. The generator for this motor may be of any suitable kind to produce currents of the desired character. In the present instance it consists of a field-magnet, N S, and an armature, A, with two coils at right angles, the ends of which are connected to four contact-

rings, $b b' b'$, carried by its shaft. The circuit-connections are established between the rings on the generator-shaft and those on the motor-shaft by collecting brushes and wires, as previously explained. In order to properly energize the field-magnet of the motor, however, the connections are so made with the armature-coils by wires leading thereto that while the points of greatest attraction or greatest density of magnetic lines of force upon the armature are shifted in one direction those upon the field-magnet are made to progress in an opposite direction. In other respects the operation is identically the same as in the other cases cited. This arrangement results in an increased speed of rotation.

In Figs. 17 and 19, for example, the terminals of each set of field-coils are connected with the wires to the two armature-coils in such a way that the field-coils will maintain opposite poles in advance of the poles of the armature.

In the drawings the field-coils are in shunts to the armature; but they may be in series or in independent circuits.

It is obvious that the same principle may be applied to the various typical forms of motor hereinbefore described.

Having now described the nature of my invention and some of the various ways in which it is or may be carried into effect, I would call attention to certain characteristics which the applications of the invention possess, and the advantages which it offers.

In my motor, considering, for convenience, that represented in Fig. 9, it will be observed that since the disk D has a tendency to follow continuously the points of greatest attraction, and since these points are shifted around the ring once for each revolution of the armature of the generator, it follows that the movement of the disk D will be synchronous with that of the armature A. This feature by practical demonstration I have found to exist in all other forms in which one revolution of the armature of the generator produces a shifting of the poles of the motor through three hundred and sixty degrees.

In the particular modification shown in Fig. 15, or in others constructed on a similar plan, the number of alternating impulses resulting from one revolution of the generator-armature is double as compared with the preceding cases, and the polarities in the motor are shifted around twice by one revolution of the generator-armature. The speed of the motor will therefore be twice that of the generator. The same result is evidently obtained by such a disposition as that shown in Fig. 17, where the poles of both elements are shifted in opposite directions.

Again, considering the apparatus illustrated by Fig. 9 as typical of the invention, it is obvious that since the attractive effect upon the disk D is greatest when the disk is in its proper relative position to the poles developed in the ring R—that is to say, when its ends or poles immediately follow those of the ring—the

speed of the motor for all loads within the normal working limits of the motor will be practically constant.

It is clearly apparent that the speed can never exceed the arbitrary limit as determined by the generator, and also that within certain limits, at least, the speed of the motor will be independent of the strength of the current.

It will now be more readily seen from the above description how far the requirements of a practical system of electrical transmission of power are realized in my invention. I secure, first, a uniform speed under all loads within the normal working limits of the motor without the use of any auxiliary regulator; second, synchronism between the motor and the generator; third, greater efficiency by the more direct application of the current, no commutating devices being required on either the motor or the generator; fourth, cheapness and simplicity of mechanical construction; fifth, the capability of being very easily managed or controlled, and, sixth, diminution of danger from injury to persons and apparatus.

These motors may be run in series—multiple arc or multiple series—under conditions well understood by those skilled in the art.

I am aware that it is not new to produce the rotations of a motor by intermittently shifting the poles of one of its elements. This has been done by passing through independent energizing-coils on one of the elements the current from a battery or other source of direct or continuous currents, reversing, such current by suitable mechanical appliances, so that it is directed through the coils in alternately opposite directions. In such cases, however, the potential of the energizing-currents remains the same, their direction only being changed. According to my invention, however, I employ true alternating currents; and my invention consists in the discovery of the mode or method of utilizing such currents.

The difference between the two plans and the advantages of mine are obvious. By producing an alternating current each impulse of which involves a rise and fall of potential I reproduce in the motor the exact conditions of the generator, and by such currents and the consequent production of resultant poles the progression of the poles will be continuous and not intermittent. In addition to this, the practical difficulty of interrupting or reversing a current of any considerable strength is such that none of the devices at present could be made to economically or practically effect the transmission of power by reversing in the manner described a continuous or direct current. In so far, then, as the plan of acting upon one element of the motor is concerned, my invention involves the use of an alternating as distinguished from a reversed current, or a current which, while continuous and direct, is shifted from coil to coil by any form of commutator, reverser, or interrupter. With regard to that part of the invention which consists in acting upon both elements of the motor

simultaneously, I regard the use of either alternating or reversed currents as within the scope of the invention, although I do not consider the use of reversed currents of any practical importance.

What I claim is—

The method herein described of electrically transmitting power, which consists in producing a continuously progressive shifting of the

polarities of either or both elements (the armature or field magnet or magnets) of a motor by developing alternating currents in independent circuits, including the magnetizing-coils of either or both elements, as herein set forth,
NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

FRANK B. MURPHY,
FRANK E. HARTLEY.

THE OFFICIAL GAZETTE

OF THE

United States Patent Office.

[BY AUTHORITY OF CONGRESS.]

VOL. 72.—No. 4.

TUESDAY, JULY 23, 1895.

PRICE—\$5 per year.

CONTENTS.

	Page.
ATTORNEYS	421
DISCLAIMERS	421
OFFICIAL GAZETTE	421
AMENDMENT TO THE RULES OF PRACTICE	421
PUBLISHERS' CATALOGUES	422
ISSUE OF JULY 23, 1895	422
APPLICATIONS UNDER EXAMINATION	422
PATENTS GRANTED	423
REISSUES	581
DESIGNS	582
TRADE-MARKS	584
PRINTS	None.
LABELS	None.
COMMISSIONER'S DECISIONS—	
<i>Ex parte</i> Knudson	589
DECISIONS OF THE U. S. COURTS—	
<i>Russell v. Kern</i>	590
<i>Johnson Company v. Pennsylvania Steel Company</i>	594

Attorneys.

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR,
OFFICE OF THE SECRETARY,
Washington, D. C., July 15, 1895.

SIR: The Secretary of the Interior has ordered that Mary E. Hansee, of Ellenville, N. Y., be not recognized after this date as agent or attorney in the prosecution of any claim or other matter before this Department or any Bureau thereof.

Very respectfully,

E. WOMACK,
Chief Clerk.

The Commissioner of Patents.

DISCLAIMERS.

323,019.—*Thaddeus Fowler*, Bridgeport, Conn. IMPROVEMENT IN SAWS. Patent dated October 13, 1885. Disclaimer filed July 19, 1895, by *Henry G. Thompson, H. Grant Thompson, and Samuel E. Mower*, assignees.

Enter their disclaimer to so much of said claims as cover circular saws and back-saws, leaving said claims to include only back-saws and band-saws.

382,280.—*Nikola Tesla*, New York, N. Y. IMPROVEMENT IN ELECTRICAL TRANSMISSION OF POWER. Patent dated May 1, 1888. Disclaimer filed July 17, 1895, by the assignees, the *Westinghouse Electric and Manufacturing Company*, Pittsburg, Pa., and the *Tesla Electric Company*, New York, N. Y.

Enter their disclaimer to such part of the claim of the said patent as might by construction include the use of reversed currents for acting upon both elements of a motor, it being the intent and purpose of this disclaimer to limit the said claim to the use of alternating currents, whether acting on one element or both elements of the motor, as distinguished from reversed currents or currents which, while continuous and direct, are shifted from coil to coil by any form of commutator, reverser, or interrupter; and in furtherance of this purpose your petitioners, and

each of them, enter their disclaimer to the following parts of the specification of said Letters Patent—viz, in the last sentence but one preceding the claim, the words:

In so far, then, as the plan of acting upon one element of the motor is concerned;

and also the words composing the last sentence of the specification, as follows:

With regard to that part of the invention which consists in acting upon both elements of the motor simultaneously, I regard the use of either alternating or reversed currents as within the scope of the invention, although I do not consider the use of reversed currents of any practical importance.

The Official Gazette.

THE OFFICIAL GAZETTE is published every Tuesday, simultaneously with the weekly issue of patents. From January 1, 1873, (the commencement of its publication,) to June 30, 1883, it was published and bound in semi-annual volumes; since July 1, 1883, in quarterly volumes. All subscriptions must commence with the beginning of a volume; none taken for less than three months. Terms: To all subscribers within the United States and Canada, \$5 per annum; to foreign subscribers, \$10; single copies, 10 cents, if mailed to foreign countries 10 cents additional for postage; bound semi-annual volumes, (prior to June 30, 1883,) full sheep, \$4 per volume; bound quarterly volumes, (subsequent to July 1, 1883,) full sheep, \$2.75 per volume. No club rates. Payment in advance. All orders should be addressed to "The Commissioner of Patents, Washington, D. C."

Amendment to the Rules of Practice

The following regulations for the conduct of proceedings in the Patent Office are established:

65. An applicant will be considered to persist in his claim for a patent without altering his specification in case he fail to act in prosecution of the same for six months after the Office action thereon, and thereupon the Examiner will make a re-examination of the case.

134. In appealable cases in which no limit of appeal is fixed, no appeal will be entertained by any tribunal in the Office unless taken within six months from the action which puts the case in condition for appeal, unless it be shown to the satisfaction of the Commissioner that such delay was unavoidable.

68. In every case pending before the Office more than five years, in which the record raises the presumption that there have been intentional delays in prosecution, the Examiner may require the applicant to show cause why the case was not more rapidly prosecuted, and at the hearing thereon, or upon failure of the applicant to appear, the Examiner will determine, under all the circumstances of the case, whether there have been intentional and unreasonable delays in prosecution, and upon finding the fact to be so, he will reject the case for that reason. Present Rules 65, 69, and 134 are repealed, and present Rule 68 is renumbered 69.

The foregoing rules will be in effect on and after April 15, 1895, and will affect pending cases as though the last Office action were upon said date.

N. TESLA.

ELECTRICAL TRANSMISSION OF POWER.

No. 382,280.

Patented May 1, 1888.

Fig. 1

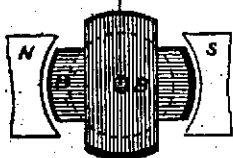


Fig. 2

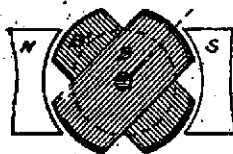


Fig. 3

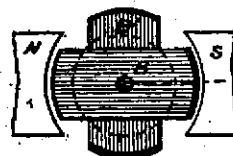


Fig. 4

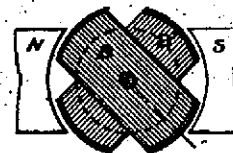


Fig. 5

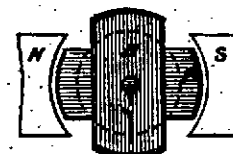


Fig. 6

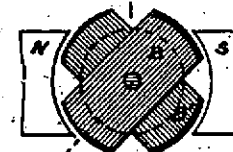


Fig. 7

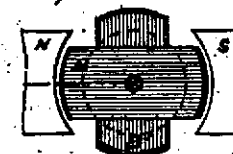
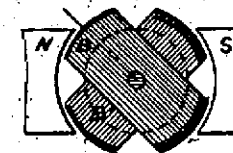
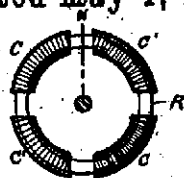
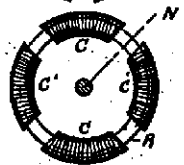
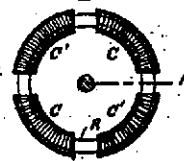
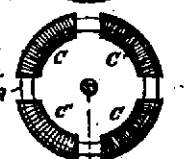
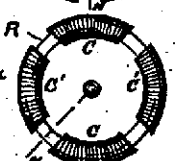
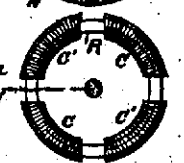


Fig. 8

Fig. 1^aFig. 2^aFig. 3^aFig. 4^aFig. 5^aFig. 6^aFig. 7^aFig. 8^a

WITNESSES:

D. H. Sherman

Marvin A. Curtis

INVENTOR.

Nikola Tesla

BY

Duncan, Curtis & Co.

ATTORNEYS.

N. TESLA.

ELECTRICAL TRANSMISSION OF POWER.

No. 382,280.

Patented May 1, 1888.

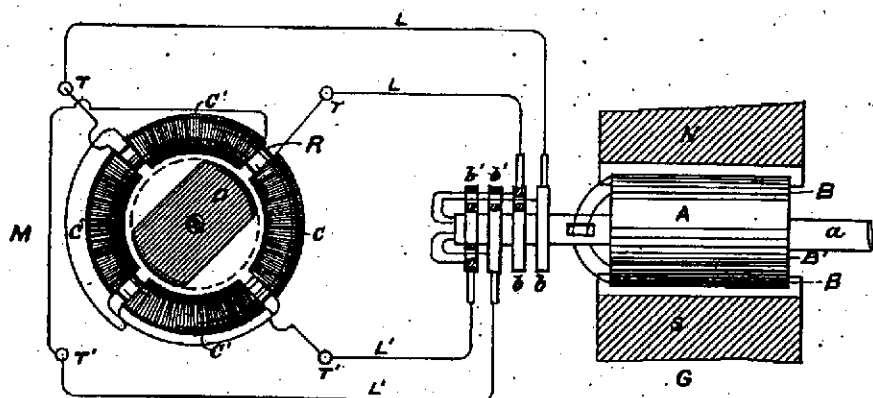


Fig. 9

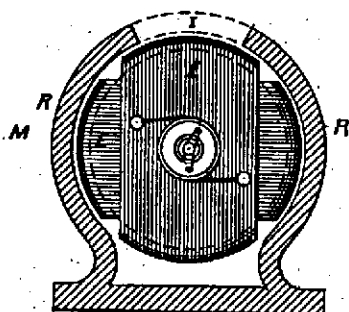


Fig. 10

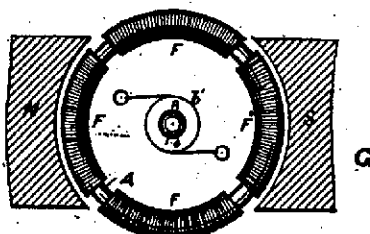


Fig. 11

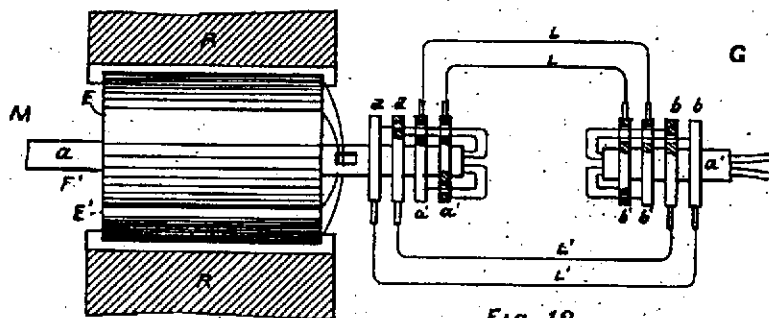


Fig. 12

WITNESSES:

D. H. Sherman.

Marvin A. Curtis.

INVENTOR.

Nikola Tesla.

BY

Duncan, Curtis & Hage.

ATTORNEYS.

N. TESLA.

ELECTRICAL TRANSMISSION OF POWER.

No. 382,280.

Patented May 1, 1888.

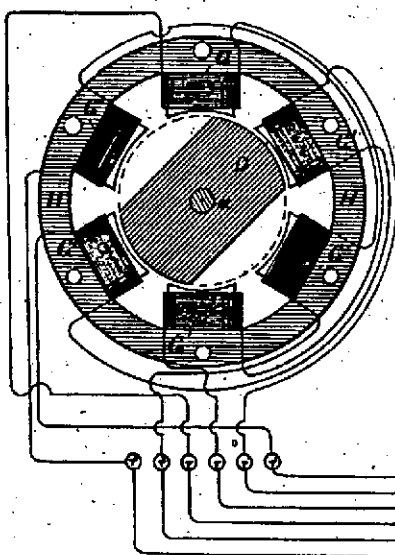


Fig. 13

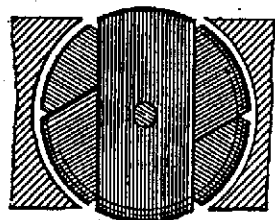
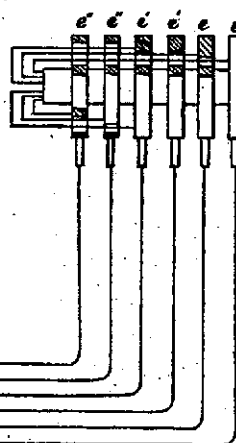


Fig. 14

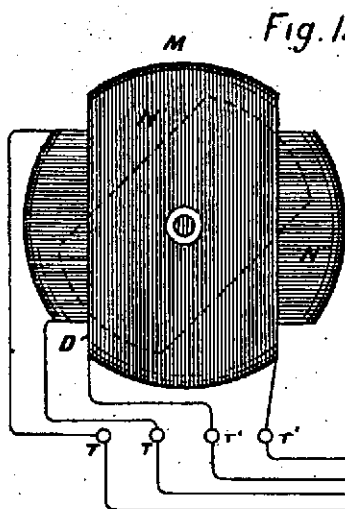


Fig. 15

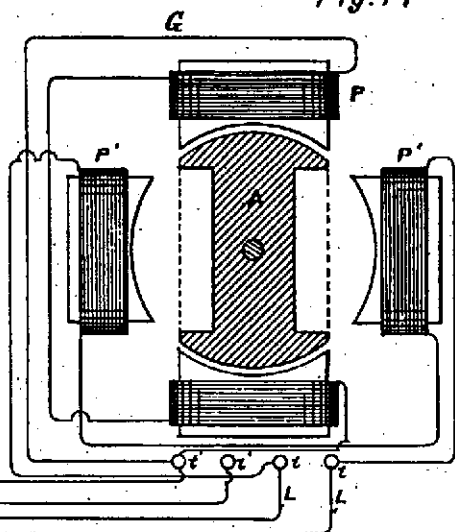
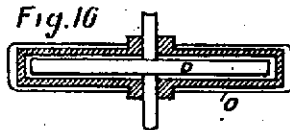


Fig. 16



WITNESSES

D.H. Sherman

Marion A. Curtis

INVENTOR,

Nikola Tesla.

BY

Duncan, Curtis & Page
ATTORNEYS.

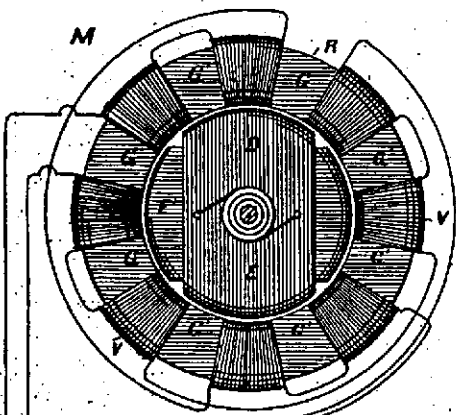
N. TESLA.

ELECTRICAL TRANSMISSION OF POWER.

No. 382,280.

Patented May 1, 1888.

Fig. 17



G

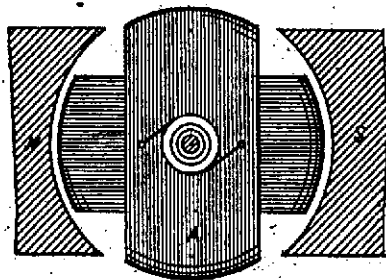
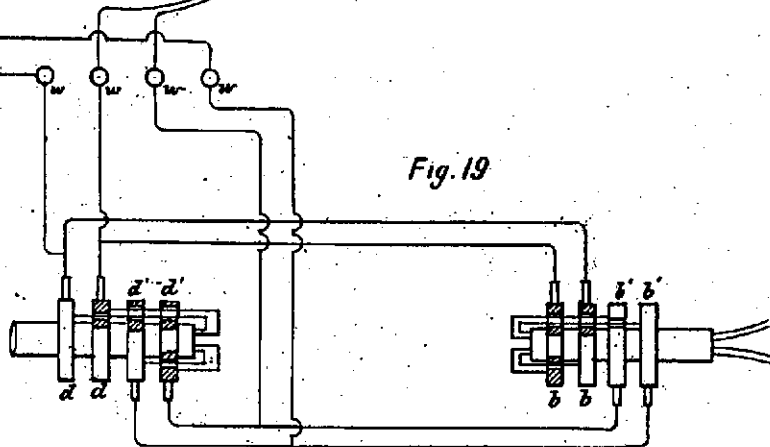


Fig. 18

Fig. 19



WITNESSES:

D. H. Sherman.

Marvin A. Curtis.

INVENTOR.

Nikola Tesla.

BY

Duncan, Curtis & Sage.

ATTORNEYS.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

ELECTRICAL TRANSMISSION OF POWER.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 382,281, dated May 1, 1888.

Original application filed November 30, 1887, Serial No. 256,562. Divided and this application filed March 9, 1888. Serial No. 260,754. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, and residing in the city, county, and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in the Electric Transmission of Power, of which the following is a specification, this application being a division of an application filed by me November 30, 1887, Serial No. 256,562.

In a previous application filed by me—viz., No. 252,132, filed October 12, 1887—I have set forth an improvement in motors and in the mode or method of operating the same, which, generally stated, consists in progressively and continuously shifting the poles or lines of maximum magnetic effect of either the field-magnets or armature, or both, of a motor, and thereby producing a movement of rotation in the motor. The means which I have shown for effecting this, while varying in detail, are exemplified in the following system, which, for present purposes, it will be sufficient to consider as a typical embodiment of the invention.

The motor is wound with coils forming independent energizing-circuits on the armature, which is a cylinder or disk mounted to rotate between two opposite magnetic poles. These coils are connected up with corresponding induced or current-producing circuits in an alternating-current generator. As a result of this, when the generator is set in motion, currents of alternately-opposite direction are directed through the energizing-coils of the motor in such manner as to produce a progressive shifting or rotation of the magnetic poles of the motor-armature. This movement of the poles of the armature obviously tends to rotate the armature in the opposite direction to that in which the movement of the poles takes place, owing to the attractive force between said poles and the field-magnets, and the speed of rotation increases from the start until it equals that of the generator, supposing both motor and generator to be alike.

As the magnetic poles of the armature are shifted in a direction opposite to that in which the armature rotates, it will be apparent that when the normal speed is attained the poles of

the armature will assume a fixed position relatively to the field-magnets, and that in consequence the field-magnets will be energized by magnetic induction, exhibiting two distinct poles, one on each of the pole-pieces. In starting the motor, however, the speed of the armature being comparatively slow, the pole-pieces are subjected to rapid reversals of magnetic polarity; but as the speed increases these reversals become less and less frequent and finally cease, when the movement of the armature becomes synchronous with that of the generator. This being the case, the field-cores or the pole-pieces of the motor become a magnet, but by induction only.

I have found that advantageous results are secured by winding the field-magnets with a coil or coils and passing a continuous current through them, thus maintaining a permanent field, and in this feature my present invention consists.

I shall now describe the apparatus which I have devised for carrying out this invention and explain the mode of using or operating the same.

Figure 1 is an end view in elevation of my improved motor. Fig. 2 is a part horizontal central section, and Fig. 3 is a diagrammatic representation of the motor and generator combined and connected for operation.

Let A A in Fig. 1 represent the legs or pole-pieces of a field-magnet, around which are coils B B, included in the circuit of a continuous-current generator, C, which is adapted to impart magnetism to the said poles in the ordinary manner.

D D' are two independent coils wound upon a suitable cylindrical or equivalent armature-core, which, like all others used in a similar manner, should be split or divided up into alternate magnetic and insulating parts in the usual way. This armature is mounted in non-magnetic cross-bars E E, secured to the poles of the field-magnet. The terminals of the armature-coils D D' are connected to insulated sliding contact-rings a a b b, carried by the armature-shaft, and brushes c c bear upon these rings to convey to the coils the currents which operate the motor.

The generator for operating this motor is or

may be of precisely identical construction, and for convenience of reference I have marked in Fig. 3 its parts, as follows: F F, the field-magnets energized by a continuous current 5 passing in its field-coils G G; H H', the coils carried by the cylindrical armature; $d d e e$, the friction or collecting rings carried by the armature-shaft and forming the terminals of the armature-coils; and $f f$ the collecting- 10 brushes which deliver the currents developed in the armature-coils to the two circuits $g g'$, which connect the generator with the motor.

The operation of this system will be understood from the foregoing. The action of the 15 generator by causing a progressive shifting of the poles in the motor-armature sets up in the latter a rotation opposite in direction to that in which the poles move. If, now, the continuous current be directed through the 20 field-coils so as to strongly energize the magnet A A, the speed of the motor, which depends upon that of the generator, will not be increased, but the power which produces its rotation will be increased in proportion to the energy supplied through the coils B B. It is character- 25 istic of this motor that its direction of rotation is not reversed by reversing the direction of the current through its field-coils, for the direction of rotation depends not upon the polarity of the field, but upon the direction in which the poles of the armature are shifted. 30 To reverse the motor the connections of either of the circuits $g g'$ must be reversed.

I have found that if the field-magnet of the 35 motor be strongly energized by its coils B B, and the circuits through the armature-coils closed, assuming the generator to be running at a certain speed, the motor will not start; but if the field be but slightly energized, or in 40 general in such condition that the magnetic influence of the armature preponderates in determining its magnetic condition, the motor will start, and with sufficient current will reach its maximum or normal speed. For 45 this reason it is desirable to keep at the start, and until the motor has attained its normal speed, or nearly so, the field-circuit open, or to permit but little current to pass through it. I have found, however, if the fields of both the 50 generator and motor be strongly energized that starting the generator starts the motor, and that the speed of the motor is increased in synchronism with the generator.

Motors constructed and operated on this principle maintain almost absolutely the same 55 speed for all loads within their normal working limits, and in practice I have observed that if the motor be overloaded to such an extent as to check its speed the speed of the generator, if its motive power be not too great, 60 is diminished synchronously with that of the motor.

I have in other applications shown how the construction of these or similar motors may be varied in certain well-known ways—as, for in- 65 stance, by rotating the field about a stationary armature or rotating conductors within the field—but I do not illustrate these features further herein, as with the illustration which I have given I regard the rest as within the 70 power of a person skilled in the art to construct.

I am aware that a device embodying the characteristics of a motor and having a per- 75 manently-magnetized field-magnet has been operated by passing through independent coils on its armature a direct or continuous current in opposite directions. Such a system, how- ever, I do not regard as capable of the practical applications for which my invention is 80 designed, nor is it the same in principle or mode of operation, mainly in that the shifting of the poles is intermittent and not continuous, and that there is necessarily involved a waste of energy. 85

In my present application I do not limit myself to any special form of motor, nor of the means for producing the alternating currents as distinguished from what are called “re- 90 versed currents,” and I may excite or energize the field of the motor and of the generator by any source of current which will produce the desired result.

What I claim is—

The method herein described of transmit- 95 ting power by electro-magnetic motors, which consists in continuously and progressively shifting the poles of one element of the motor by alternating currents and magnetizing the other element by a direct or continuous cur- 100 rent, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

FRANK B. MURPHY,
FRANK E. HARTLEY.

N. TESLA.

ELECTRICAL TRANSMISSION OF POWER.

No. 382,281.

Patented May 1, 1888.

Fig. 1

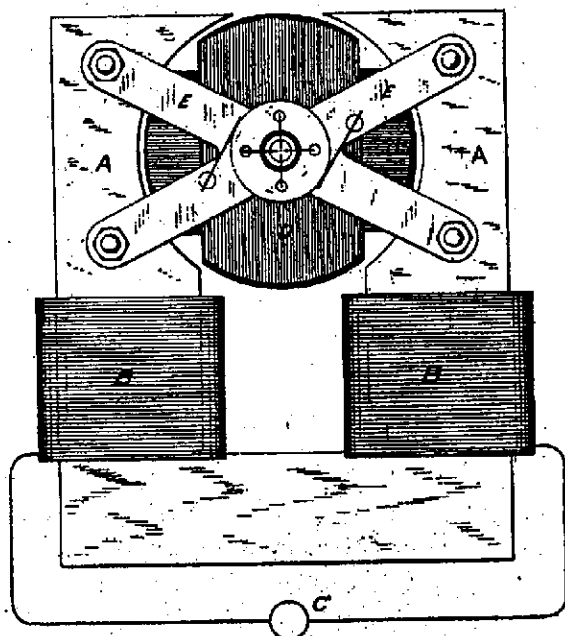
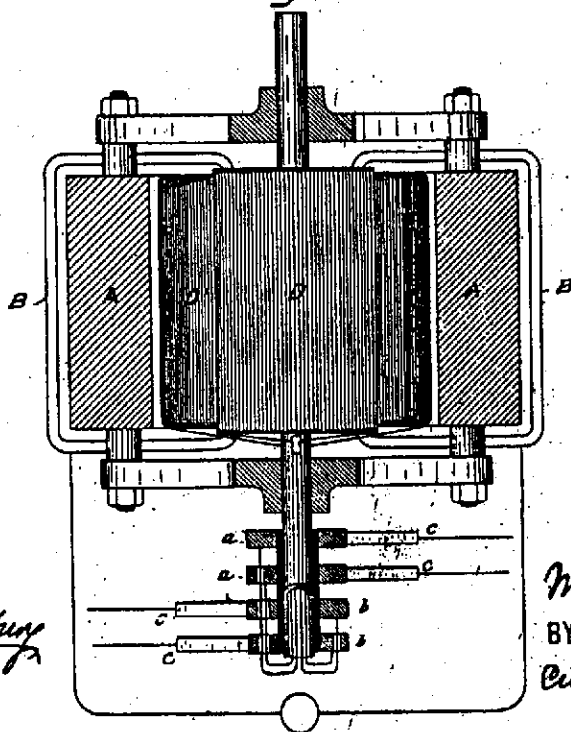


Fig. 2



WITNESSES:

Raphael Nelson
Henry F. Newburg

INVENTOR.

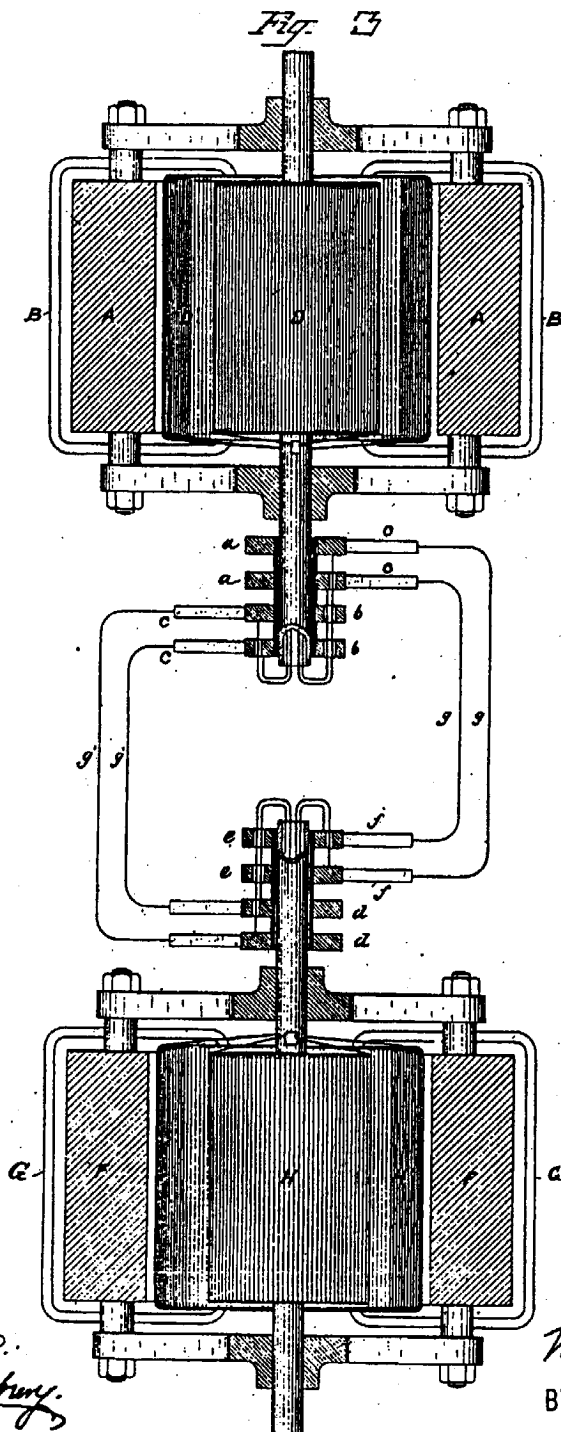
Nikola Tesla
 BY *Duncan*
Custer & Page
 ATTORNEYS.

N. TESLA.

ELECTRICAL TRANSMISSION OF POWER.

No. 382,281.

Patented May 1, 1888.



WITNESSES:

Russell Kitter.
George F. Newbury.

INVENTOR.

Nikola Tesla

BY *Duncan,*

Curtis & Page

ATTORNEYS

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

METHOD OF CONVERTING AND DISTRIBUTING ELECTRIC CURRENTS.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 382,282, dated May 1, 1888.

Original application filed December 23, 1887, Serial No. 258,787. Divided and th's application filed March 9, 1888. Serial No. 264,757. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, and now residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Methods of Converting and Distributing Electric Currents, of which the following is a specification, this application being a division of an application filed by me December 23, 1887, Serial No. 258,787.

This invention relates to those systems of electrical distribution in which a current from a single source of supply in a main or transmitting circuit is caused to induce, by means of suitable induction apparatus, a current or currents in an independent working circuit or circuits.

The main objects of the invention are the same as have been heretofore obtained by the use of these systems—viz., to divide the current from a single source, whereby a number of lamps, motors, or other translating devices may be independently controlled and operated by the same source of current, and in some cases to reduce a current of high potential in the main circuit to one of greater quantity and lower potential in the independent consumption or working circuit or circuits.

The general character of the devices employed in these systems is now well understood. An alternating-current magneto-machine is used as a source of supply. The current developed thereby is conducted through a transmission-circuit to one or more distant points, at which the transformers are located. These consist of induction-machines of various kinds. In some cases ordinary forms of induction-coil have been used with one coil in the transmitting-circuit and the other in a local or consumption circuit, the coils being differently proportioned, according to the work to be done in the consumption-circuit—that is to say, if the work requires a current of higher potential than that in the transmission-circuit the secondary or induced coil is of greater length and resistance than the primary, while, on the other hand, if a quantity current of lower potential is wanted, the longer coil is made the primary. In lieu of these devices various forms of electro-dynamic induction-

machines, including the combined motors and generators, have been devised. For instance, a motor is constructed in accordance with well-understood principles, and on the same armature are wound induced coils which constitute a generator. The motor-coils are generally of fine wire and the generator-coils of coarser wire, so as to produce a current of greater quantity and lower potential than the line-current, which is of relatively high potential to avoid loss in long transmission. A similar arrangement is to wind coils corresponding to those described on a ring or similar core, and by means of a commutator of suitable kind to direct the current through the inducing-coils successively, so as to maintain a movement of the poles of the core or of the lines of force which set up the currents in the induced coils.

Without enumerating the objections to these systems in detail, it will suffice to say that the theory or the principle of the action or operation of these devices has apparently been so little understood that their proper construction and use have, up to the present time, been attended with various difficulties and great expense. The transformers are very liable to be injured and burned out, and the means resorted to for curing this and other defects have invariably been at the expense of efficiency. I have discovered a method of conversion and distribution, however, which is not subject to the defects and objections to which I have alluded, and which is both efficient and safe. I secure by it a conversion by true dynamic induction under highly efficient conditions and without the use of expensive or complicated apparatus or moving devices, which in use wear out and require attention. This method consists in progressively and continuously shifting the line or points of maximum effect in an inductive field across the convolutions of a coil or conductor within the influence of said field and included in or forming part of a secondary or translating circuit.

In carrying out my invention I provide a series of inducing-coils and corresponding induced coils which, by preference, I wind upon a core closed upon itself—such as an annulus or ring—subdivided in the usual manner. The two sets of coils are wound side by side or superposed or otherwise placed in well-known

ways to bring them into the most effective relations to one another and to the core. The inducing or primary coils wound on the core are divided into pairs or sets by the proper electrical connections, so that while the coils of one pair or set co-operate in fixing the magnetic poles of the core at two given diametrically-opposite points the coils of the other pair or set—assuming, for the sake of illustration, that there are but two—tend to fix the poles at ninety degrees from such points. With this induction device I use an alternating-current generator with coils or sets of coils to correspond with those of the converter, and by means of suitable conductors I connect up in independent circuits the corresponding coils of the generator and converter. It results from this that the different electrical phases in the generator are attended by corresponding magnetic changes in the converter; or, in other words, that as the generator-coils revolve the points of greatest magnetic intensity in the converter will be progressively shifted or whirled around. This principle I have applied under variously modified conditions to the operation of electro-magnetic motors, and in previous applications—notably in those having serial numbers 252,132 and 256,561—I have described in detail the manner of constructing and using such motors.

In the present application my object is to describe the best and most convenient manner of which I am at present aware of carrying out the invention as applied to a system of electrical distribution; but one skilled in the art will readily understand, from the description of the modifications proposed in said applications, wherein the form of both the generator and converter in the present case may be modified. In illustration, therefore, of the details of construction which my present invention involves, I now refer to the accompanying drawings.

Figure 1 is a diagrammatic illustration of the converter and the electrical connections of the same. Fig. 2 is a horizontal central cross-section of Fig. 1. Fig. 3 is a diagram of the circuits of the entire system, the generator being shown in section.

I use a core, A, which is closed upon itself—that is to say, of an annular, cylindrical, or equivalent form—and as the efficiency of the apparatus is largely increased by the subdivision of this core I make it of thin strips, plates, or wires of soft iron electrically insulated as far as practicable. Upon this core, by any well-known method, I wind, say, four coils, B B B' B', which I use as primary coils, and for which I use long lengths of comparatively fine wire. Over these coils I then wind shorter coils of coarser wire, C C C' C', to constitute the induced or secondary coils. The construction of this or any equivalent form of converter may be carried farther, as above pointed out, by inclosing these coils with iron—as, for example, by winding over the coils a layer or layers of insulated iron wire.

The device is provided with suitable binding-posts, to which the ends of the coils are led. The diametrically-opposite coils B B and B' B' are connected, respectively, in series, and the four terminals are connected to the binding-posts 1 2 3 4. The induced coils are connected together in any desired manner. For example, as shown in Fig. 3, C C may be connected in multiple arc when a quantity current is desired—as for running a group of incandescent lamps, D—while C' C' may be independently connected in series in a circuit including arc lamps D', or the like.

The generator in this system will be adapted to the converter in the manner illustrated. For example, in the present case I employ a pair of ordinary permanent or electromagnets, E E, between which is mounted a cylindrical armature on a shaft, F, and wound with two coils, G G'. The terminals of these coils are connected, respectively, to four insulated contact or collecting rings, H H H' H', and the four line-circuit wires L connect the brushes K bearing on these rings to the converter in the order shown. Noting the results of this combination, it will be observed that at a given point of time the coil G is in its neutral position and is generating little or no current, while the other coil, G', is in a position where it exerts its maximum effect. Assuming coil G to be connected in circuit with coils B B of the converter and coil G' with coils B' B', it is evident that the poles of the ring A will be determined by coils B' B' alone; but as the armature of the generator revolves, coil G develops more current and coil G' less until G reaches its maximum and G' its neutral position. The obvious result will be to shift the poles of the ring A through one quarter of its periphery. The movement of the coils through the next quarter of a turn, during which coil G' enters a field of opposite polarity and generates a current of opposite direction and increasing strength, while coil G is passing from its maximum to its neutral position, generates a current of decreasing strength and same direction as before, and causes a further shifting of the poles through the second quarter of the ring. The second half-revolution will obviously be a repetition of the same action. By the shifting of the poles of the ring A a power-dynamic inductive effect on the coils C C' is produced. Besides the currents generated in the secondary coils by dynamo-magnetic induction, other currents will be set up in the same coils in consequence of any variations in the intensity of the poles in the ring A. This should be avoided by maintaining the intensity of the poles constant, to accomplish which care should be taken in designing and proportioning the generator and in distributing the coils in the ring A and balancing their effect. When this is done, the currents are produced by dynamo-magnetic induction only, the same result being obtained as though the poles were shifted by a commutator with an infinite number of segments.

The apparatus by means of which this method of conversion is or may be carried out may be varied almost indefinitely. The specific form which I have herein shown I regard
5 as the best and most efficient, and in another application I have claimed it; but I do not limit myself herein to the use of any particular form or combination of devices which is or may be capable of effecting the same result in
10 a similar way.

What I claim is—

1. The method of electrical conversion and distribution herein described, which consists in continuously and progressively shifting the
15 points or line of maximum effect in an inductive field, and inducing thereby currents in the coils or convolutions of a circuit located

within the inductive influence of said field, as herein set forth.

2. The method of electrical conversion and
20 distribution herein described, which consists in generating in independent circuits producing an inductive field alternating currents in such order or manner as to produce by their
conjoint effect a progressive shifting of the
25 points of maximum effect of the field, and inducing thereby currents in the coils or convolutions of a circuit located within the inductive influence of the field, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

FRANK B. MURPHY,
FRANK E. HARTLEY.

N. TESLA.

METHOD OF CONVERTING AND DISTRIBUTING ELECTRIC CURRENTS.

No. 382,282.

Patented May 1, 1888.

Fig. 1

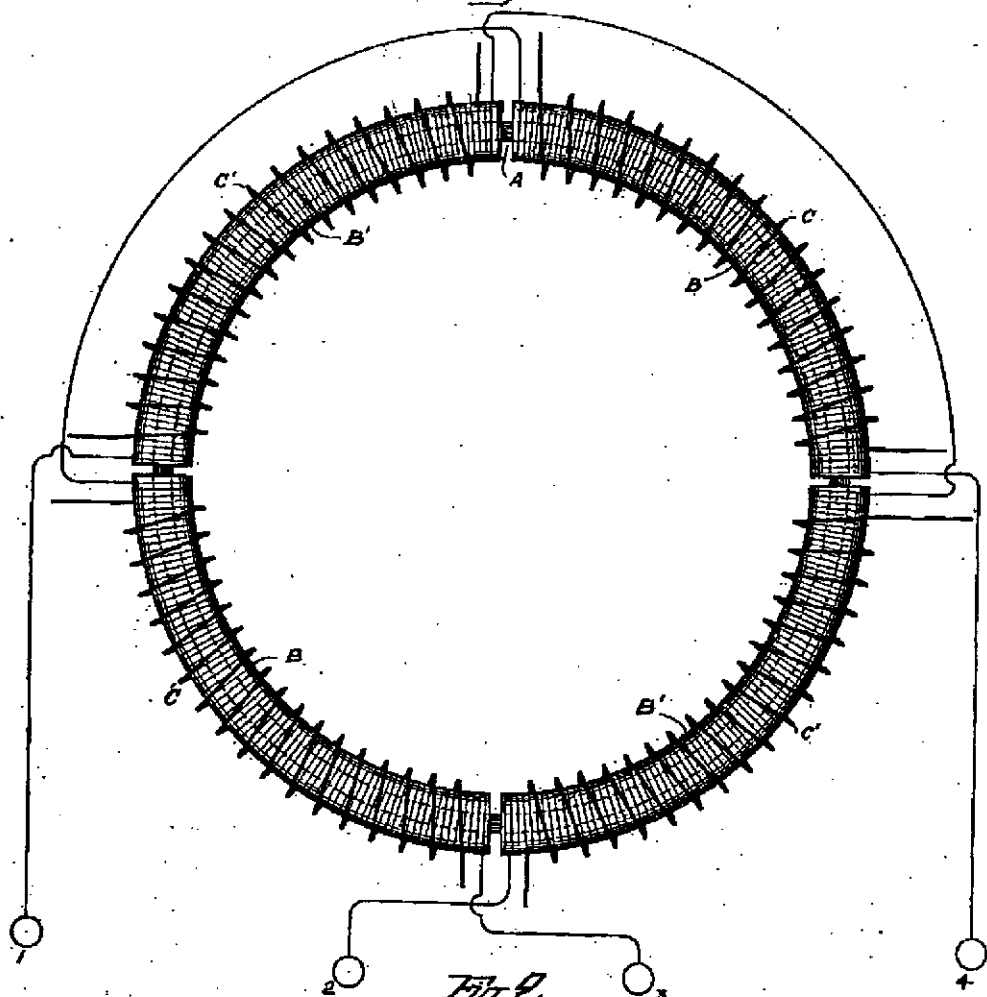
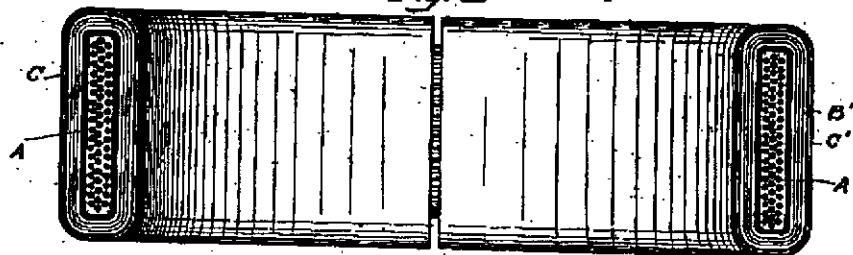


Fig. 2



WITNESSES:

Raphael Miller
Frank B. Murphy

INVENTOR,

Nikola Tesla

BY

Duncan, Curtis & Page
ATTORNEYS

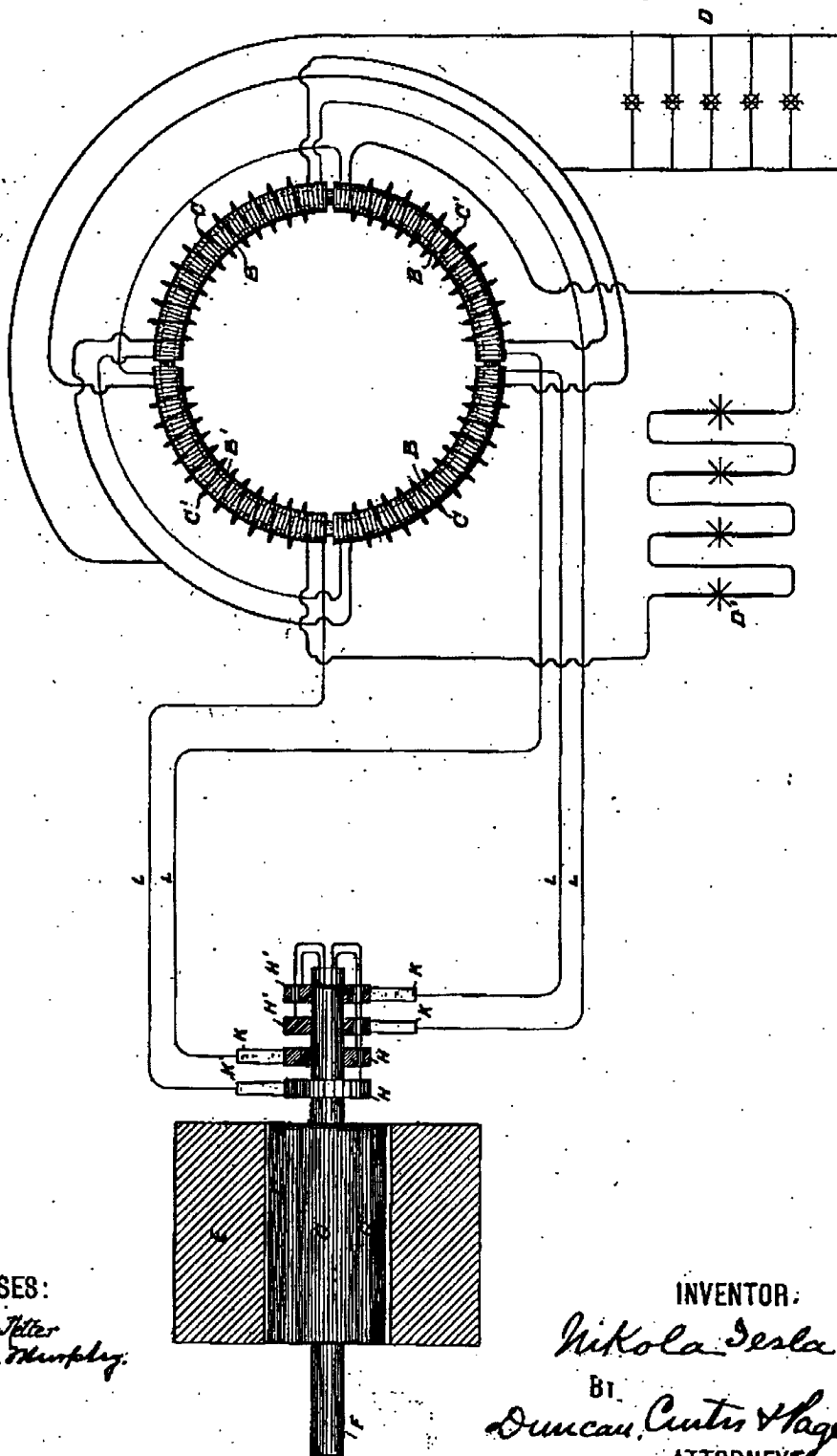
N. TESLA.

METHOD OF CONVERTING AND DISTRIBUTING ELECTRIC CURRENTS.

No. 382,282.

Patented May 1, 1888.

Fig. 3



WITNESSES:

Joseph Miller
Frank B. Murphy

INVENTOR:

Nikola Tesla

By

Duncan, Curtis & Hage
ATTORNEYS.

(No Model.)

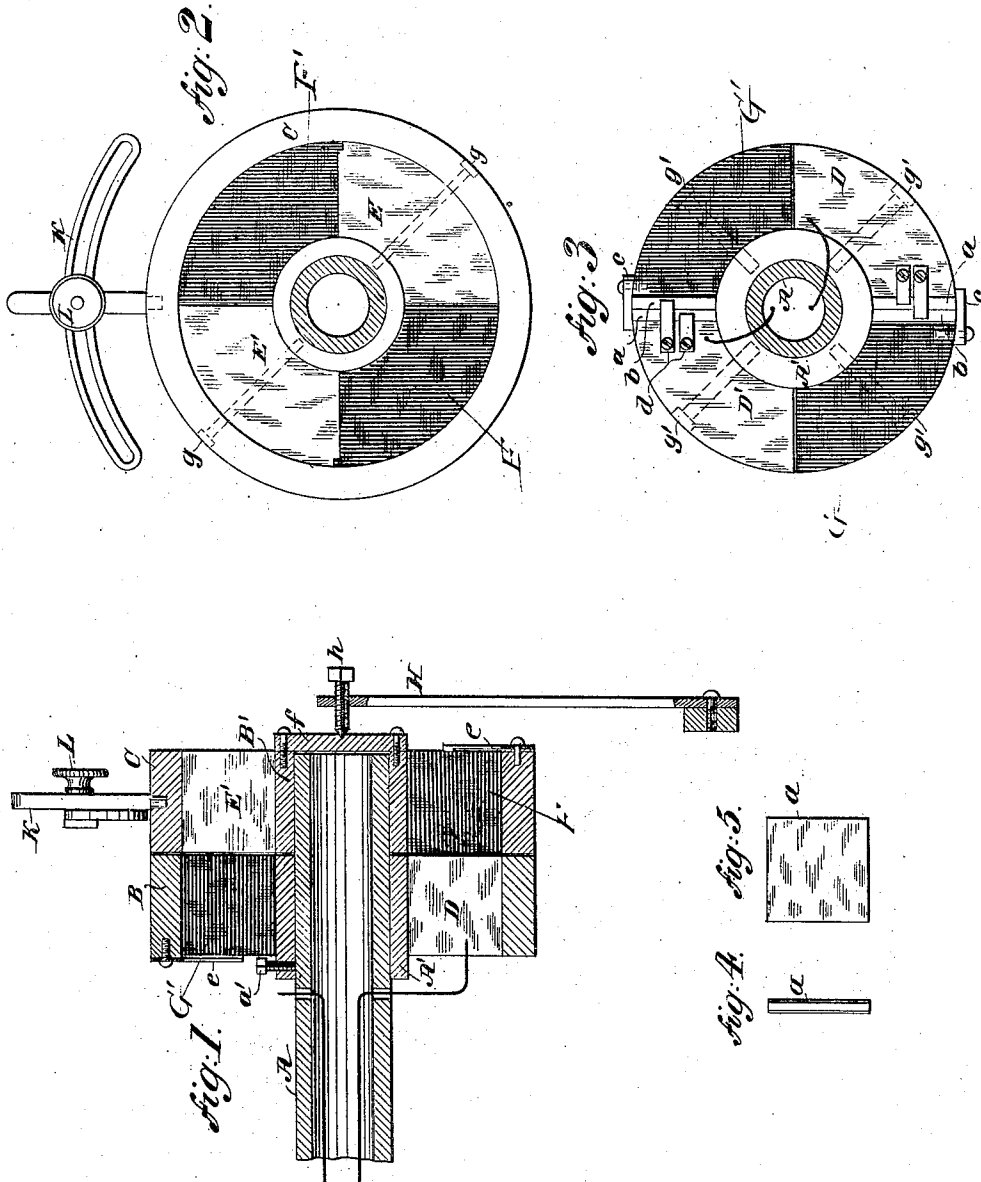
2 Sheets—Sheet 1.

N. TESLA.

COMMUTATOR FOR DYNAMO ELECTRIC MACHINES.

No. 382,845.

Patented May 15, 1888.



WITNESSES:

Robt. F. Gayford
Robt. V. Harlow

INVENTOR.

Nikola Tesla.
BY
Duncan, Curtis & Page
ATTORNEYS.

(No Model.)

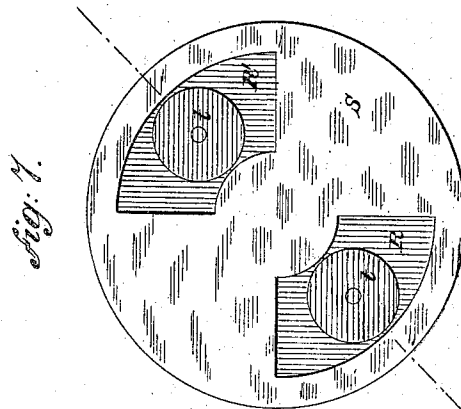
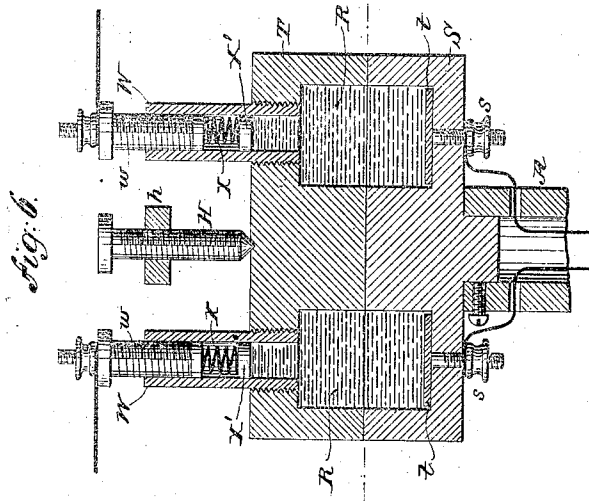
2 Sheets—Sheet 2.

N. TESLA.

COMMUTATOR FOR DYNAMO ELECTRIC MACHINES.

No. 382,845.

Patented May 15, 1888.



WITNESSES:

Robt. F. Gaylord.
Robt. P. Harlow.

INVENTOR.

Nikola Tesla.
BY
Duncan, Curtis & Page.
ATTORNEYS.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR OF ONE-HALF TO CHARLES F. PECK, OF ENGLEWOOD, NEW JERSEY.

COMMUTATOR FOR DYNAMO-ELECTRIC MACHINES.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 382,845, dated May 15, 1888.

Application filed April 30, 1887. Serial No. 236,711. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, at present residing in the city, county, and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Commutators for Dynamo-Electric Machines and Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

This invention relates to dynamo-electric machines or motors, and is an improvement in the devices for commutating and collecting the currents.

The objects of the invention are, first, to avoid the sparking and the gradual wearing away or destruction of the commutator-segments and brushes or collectors resulting therefrom; second, to obviate the necessity of readjustment of the commutator or the brushes or collectors and other consequences of the wear of the same; third, to render practicable the construction of very large dynamo-electric machines and motors with the minimum number of commutator-segments, and, fourth, to increase the efficiency and safety and reduce the cost of the machine.

In carrying out my invention in a manner to accomplish these results I construct a commutator and the collectors therefor in two parts mutually adapted to one another, and, so far as the essential features are concerned, alike in mechanical structure. Selecting as an illustration a commutator of two segments adapted for use with an armature the coils or coil of which have but two free ends, connected respectively to the said segments, the bearing-surface is the face of a disk, and is formed of two metallic quadrant-segments and two insulating-segments of the same dimensions, and the face of the disk should be smoothed off, so that the metal and insulating segments are flush. The part which takes the place of the usual brushes, or what I term the "collector," is a disk of the same character as the commutator and having a surface similarly formed with two insulating and two metallic segments. These two parts are mounted with their faces in contact and in such manner that the rotation of the armature causes

the commutator to turn upon the collector, whereby the currents induced in the coils are taken off by the collector-segments and thence conveyed off by suitable conductors leading from the collector-segments. This is the general plan of the construction which I have invented. Aside from certain adjuncts, the nature and functions of which will be hereinafter set forth, this means of commutation will be seen to possess many important advantages. In the first place the short-circuiting and breaking of the armature-coil connected to the commutator-segments occur at the same instant, and from the nature of the construction this will be done with the greatest precision; secondly, the duration of both the break and that of the short circuit will be reduced to a minimum. The first results in a reduction which amounts practically to a suppression of the spark, since the break and the short circuit produce opposite effects in the armature-coil. The second has the effect of diminishing the destructive effect of a spark, since this would be in a measure proportioned to the duration of the spark, while lessening the duration of the short circuit obviously increases the efficiency of the machine.

The mechanical advantages will be better understood by referring to the accompanying drawings, in which—

Figure 1 is a central longitudinal section of the end of a shaft with my improved commutator carried thereon. Fig. 2 is a view of the inner or bearing face of the collector. Fig. 3 is an end view from the armature side of a modified form of commutator. Figs. 4 and 5 are views of details of Fig. 3. Fig. 6 is a longitudinal central section of another modification, and Fig. 7 is a sectional view of the same.

A is the end of the armature-shaft of a dynamo-electric machine or motor.

A' is a sleeve of insulating material around the shaft, secured in place by a screw, α' , or by other suitable means.

The commutator proper is in the form of a disk which is made up of four segments, D D' G G', similar to those shown in Fig. 3. Two of these segments, as D D', are of metal and are in electrical connection with the ends of the coils on the armature. The other two seg-

ments are of insulating material. The segments are held in place by a band, B, of insulating material. The disk is held in place by friction or by screws, such as $g' g'$, Fig. 3, which secure the disk firmly to the sleeve A'.

The collector is made in the same form as the commutator. It is composed of the two metallic segments E E' and the two insulating-segments F F', bound together by a band, C. The metallic segments E E' are of the same or practically the same width or extent as the insulating segments or spaces of the commutator. The collector is secured to a sleeve, B', by screws $g g$, and the sleeve is arranged to turn freely on the shaft A. The end of the sleeve B' is closed by a plate, as f , upon which presses a pivot-pointed screw, h , adjustable in a spring, H, which acts to maintain the collector in close contact with the commutator and to compensate for the play of the shaft. Any convenient means is employed to hold the collector so that it may not turn with the shaft. For example, I have shown a slotted plate, K, which is designed to be attached to a stationary support, and an arm extending from the collector and carrying a clamping-screw, L, by which the collector may be adjusted and set to the desired position.

I prefer in the form shown in Figs. 1 and 2 to fit the insulating-segments of both commutator and collector loosely and to provide some means—as, for example, light springs $e e$, secured to the bands A' B', respectively, and bearing against the segments—to exert a light pressure upon them and keep them in close contact and to compensate for wear. The metal segments of the commutator may be moved forward by loosening the screw a' .

The circuit or line wires are led from the metal segments of the collector, being secured thereto in any convenient manner, the plan of connections being shown as applied to a modified form of the commutator in Fig. 6. The commutator and the collector in thus presenting two flat and smooth bearing-surfaces prevent by mechanical action the occurrence of sparks, and this is more effectively accomplished as is here done—that is to say, by the interposition of an insulating body between the separating plates or segments of the commutator and collector—than by any other mechanical devices of which I am aware.

The insulating-segments are made of some hard material capable of being polished and formed with sharp edges. Such materials as glass, marble, or soapstone may be advantageously used. The metal segments are preferably of copper or brass; but they may have a facing or edge of durable material—such as platinum or the like—where the sparks are liable to occur.

In Fig. 3 a somewhat modified form of my invention is shown, a form designed to facilitate the construction and replacing of the parts. In this form the commutator and collector are made in substantially the same manner as previously described, except that the

bands B C may be omitted. The four segments of each part, however, are secured to their respective sleeves by screws $g' g'$, and one edge of each segment is cut away, so that small plates $a b$ may be slipped into the spaces thus formed. Of these plates $a a$ are of metal, and are in contact with the metal segments D D', respectively. The other two, $b b$, are of glass or marble, and they are all preferably square, as shown in Figs. 4 and 5, so that they may be turned to present new edges should any edge become worn by use. Light springs d bear upon these plates and press those in the commutator toward those in the collector, and insulating-strips $c c$ are secured to the periphery of the disks to prevent the blocks from being thrown out by centrifugal action. These plates are, of course, useful at those edges of the segments only where sparks are liable to occur, and, as they are easily replaced, they are of great advantage. I prefer to coat them with platinum or silver.

In Figs. 6 and 7 is shown the construction which I use when, instead of solid segments, a fluid is employed. In this case the commutator and collector are made of two insulating-disks, S T, and in lieu of the metal segments a space is cut out of each part, as at R R', corresponding in shape and size to a metal segment. The two parts are fitted smoothly and the collector T held by the screw h and spring H against the commutator S. As in the other cases, the commutator revolves while the collector remains stationary. The ends of the coils are connected to binding-posts $s s$, which are in electrical connection with metal plates $t t$ within the recesses in the two parts S T. These chambers or recesses are filled with mercury, and in the collector part are tubes W W, with screws $w w$, carrying springs X and pistons X', which compensate for the expansion and contraction of the mercury under varying temperatures, but which are sufficiently strong not to yield to the pressure of the fluid due to centrifugal action, and which serve as binding-posts.

In all the above cases I have described commutators adapted for a single coil, and the device is particularly adapted to such purposes. The number of segments may be increased, however, or more than one commutator used with a single armature, as will be well understood.

Although I have shown the bearing-surfaces as planes at right angles to the shaft or axis, it is evident that in this particular the construction may be very greatly modified without departure from the invention.

Without confining myself, therefore, to the details of construction which I have shown in illustration of the invention, what I claim as new is—

1. In a dynamo-electric machine, the combination, with a commutator formed with conducting terminals or segments with intervening insulating-spaces, of a collector adapted to bear upon the surface of the commutator.

and formed with conducting terminals or segments equal in extent to the insulating space between the commutator segments, as set forth.

2. The combination, with a commutator built or formed of alternate blocks or segments of conducting and insulating material, of a collector adapted to bear upon the surface of the commutator and formed of conducting blocks or segments of a width or extent equal to that of the insulating segments of the commutator and separated by interposed blocks or segments of insulating material, as described.

3. The combination, with a commutator formed as a disk with alternate terminals or segments of conducting and insulating material, of a collector similarly formed and mounted with its face in contact with that of the commutator, as set forth.

4. The combination, with a commutator hav-

ing a bearing surface formed of alternate sections of conducting and insulating material, of a collector with a similar and symmetrically formed bearing surface and means for applying spring pressure to force the two bearing surfaces together, as set forth.

5. The combination, with a commutator and a collector the bearing surfaces of which are identical in respect to the disposition of the conducting and insulating parts, of means for applying spring pressure to maintain the two bearing surfaces in contact and means for holding the collector against rotary movement, as set forth.

Signed this 21st day of April, 1887.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

ROBT. F. GAYLORD,
FRANK E. HARTLEY.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

SYSTEM OF ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 390,413, dated October 2, 1888.

Application filed April 10, 1888. Serial No. 270,187. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, residing in the city, county, and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Systems of Electrical Distribution, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

In previous applications for patents made by me I have shown and described electrical systems for the transmission of power and the conversion and distribution of electrical energy, in which the motors and the transformers contain two or more coils or sets of coils, which were connected up in independent circuits with corresponding coils of an alternating-current generator, the operation of the system being brought about by the co-operation of the alternating currents in the independent circuits in progressively moving or shifting the poles or points of maximum magnetic effect of the motors or converters. In these systems, as I have described them, two independent conductors were employed for each of the independent circuits connecting the generator with the devices for converting the transmitted currents into mechanical energy or into electric currents of another character; but I have found that this is not always necessary, and that the two or more circuits may have a single return path or wire in common, with a loss, if any, which is so extremely slight that it may be disregarded entirely. For sake of illustration, if the generator have two independent coils and the motor two coils or two sets of coils in corresponding relations to its operative elements one terminal of each generator-coil is connected to the corresponding terminals of the motor coils through two independent conductors, while the opposite terminals of the respective coils are both connected to one return-wire.

This invention is applicable to my system in various ways, as will be seen by reference to the drawings, in which—

Figure 1 is a diagrammatic illustration of a generator and single motor constructed and electrically connected in accordance with the

invention. Fig. 2 is a diagram of the system as it is used in operating motors or converters, or both, in parallel or multiple arc. Fig. 3 illustrates diagrammatically the manner of operating two or more motors or converters, or both, in series.

It is obvious that for purposes of this invention motors or transformers, which may be all designated as "converters," are the same, and that either or both may be operated by the same system or arrangement of circuits.

Referring to Fig. 1, A A designate the poles of the field-magnets of an alternating-current generator, the armature of which, being in this case cylindrical in form and mounted on a shaft, C, is wound longitudinally with coils B B'. The shaft C carries three insulated contact-rings, a b c, to two of which, as b c, one terminal of each coil, as a d, is connected. The remaining terminals, f g, are both connected to the third ring, a.

A motor in this case is shown as composed of a ring, H, wound with four coils, I I J J, electrically connected, so as to co-operate in pairs, with a tendency to fix the poles of the ring at four points ninety degrees apart. Within the magnetic ring H is a disk or cylindrical core wound with two coils, G G', which may be connected to form two closed circuits. The terminals j k of the two sets or pairs of coils are connected, respectively, to the binding-posts B' B', and the other terminals, k i, are connected to a single binding-post, D'. To operate the motor, three line-wires are used to connect the terminals of the generator with those of the motor.

So far as the apparent action or mode of operation of this arrangement is concerned, the single wire D, which is, so to speak, a common return-wire for both circuits, may be regarded as two independent wires. In illustration, with the order of connection shown, coil B' of the generator is producing its maximum current and coil B its minimum; hence the current which passes through wire c, ring b, brush b', line-wire B, terminal B', wire f, coils I I, wire or terminal D', line-wire D, brush a', ring a, and wire f, fixes the polar line of the motor midway between the two coils I I; but as the coil B' moves from the po-

sition indicated it generates less current, while coil B, moving into the field, generates more. The current from coil B passes through the devices and wires designated by the letters *a*, *c*, *e*, *f*, *h*, *j*, *k*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *o*, *p*, *q*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *u*, *v*, *w*, *x*, *y*, *z*, and the position of the poles of the motor will be due to the resultant effect of the currents in the two sets of coils—that is, it will be advanced in proportion to the advance or forward movement of the armature coils. The movement of the generator armature through one-quarter of a revolution will obviously bring coil B' into its neutral position and coil B into its position of maximum effect, and this shifts the poles ninety degrees, as they are fixed solely by coils B. This action is repeated for each quarter of a complete revolution.

When more than one motor or other device is employed, they may be run either in parallel or series. In Fig. 2 the former arrangement is shown. The electrical device is shown as a converter, L, constructed as I have described in my application Serial No. 258,787, filed December 23, 1887. The two sets of primary coils *p* *r* are connected, respectively, to the mains F E, which are electrically connected with the two coils of the generator. The cross-circuit wires *l* *m*, making these connections, are then connected to the common return-wire D. The secondary coils *p'* *p''* are in circuits *a* *o*, including, for example, incandescent lamps. Only one converter is shown entire in this figure, the others being illustrated diagrammatically.

When motors or converters are to be run in series, the two wires E F are led from the generator to the coils of the first motor or converter, then continued on to the next, and so on through the whole series, and are then joined to the single wire D, which completes both circuits through the generator. This is shown in Fig. 3, in which J I represent the two coils or sets of coils of the motors.

Obviously it is immaterial to the operation of the motor or equivalent device in Fig. 1 what order of connections is observed between the respective terminals of the generator or motor.

I have described the invention in its best and most practicable form of which I am aware; but there are other conditions under which it may be carried out. For example, in case the motor and generator each has three independent circuits, one terminal of each cir-

cuit is connected to a line-wire and the other three terminals to a common return-conductor. This arrangement will secure similar results to those attained with a generator and motor having but two independent circuits, as above described.

When applied to such machines and motors as have three or more induced circuits with a common electrical joint, the three or more terminals of the generator would be simply connected to those of the motor. Such forms of machines, when adapted in this manner to my system, I have, however, found to be less efficient than the others.

The invention is applicable to machines and motors of various types, and according to circumstances and conditions readily understood, with more or less efficient results. I do not therefore limit myself to any of the details of construction of the apparatus herein shown.

What I claim is—

1. The combination, with a generator having independent current-generating circuits and a converter or converters having independent and corresponding circuits, of independent conductors connecting one terminal of each generator-circuit with a corresponding terminal of the motor and a single conductor connecting the remaining generator and converter terminals, as set forth.

2. The combination, with a generator having independent current-generating circuits and a converter or converters having independent and corresponding circuits, of independent line or connecting circuits formed in part through a conductor common to all, as set forth.

3. The system of electrical distribution herein set forth, consisting of the combination, with an alternating-current generator having independent generating-circuits and electro-magnetic motors or converters provided with corresponding energizing-circuits, of line wires or conductors connecting the coils of the motors or converters, respectively, in series with one terminal of each circuit of the generator, and a single return wire or conductor connecting the said conductors with the other terminals of the generator, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

ROBT. F. GAYLORD,
FRANK E. HARTLEY.

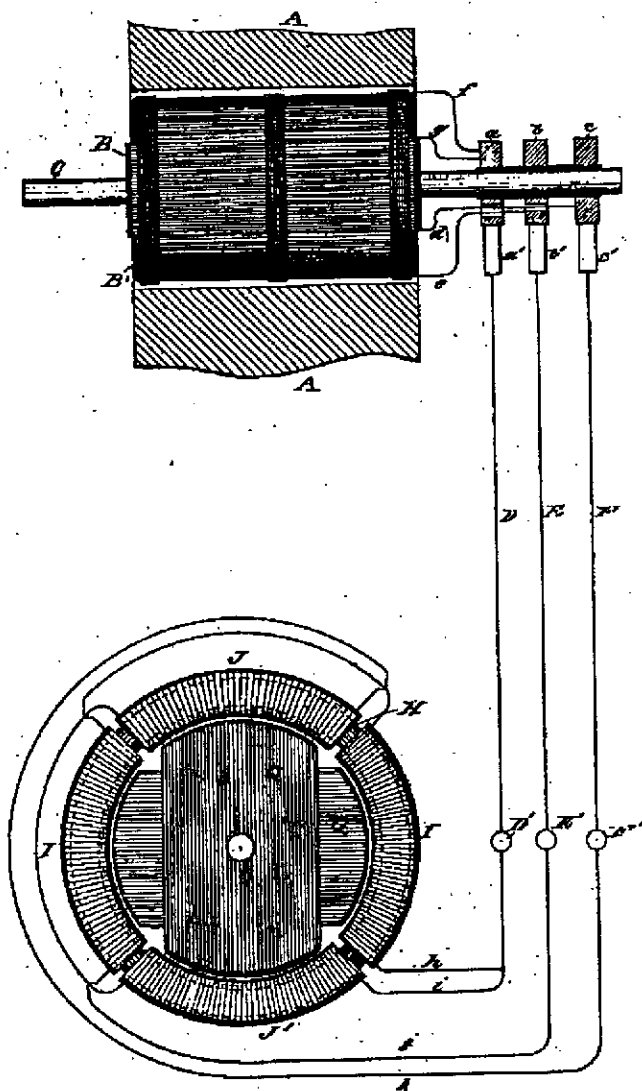
N. TESLA.

SYSTEM OF ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION.

No. 390,413.

Patented Oct. 2, 1888.

Fig. 1



WITNESSES:

Raphael Nathan
Francis B. Mursch

INVENTOR

Nikola Tesla

BY

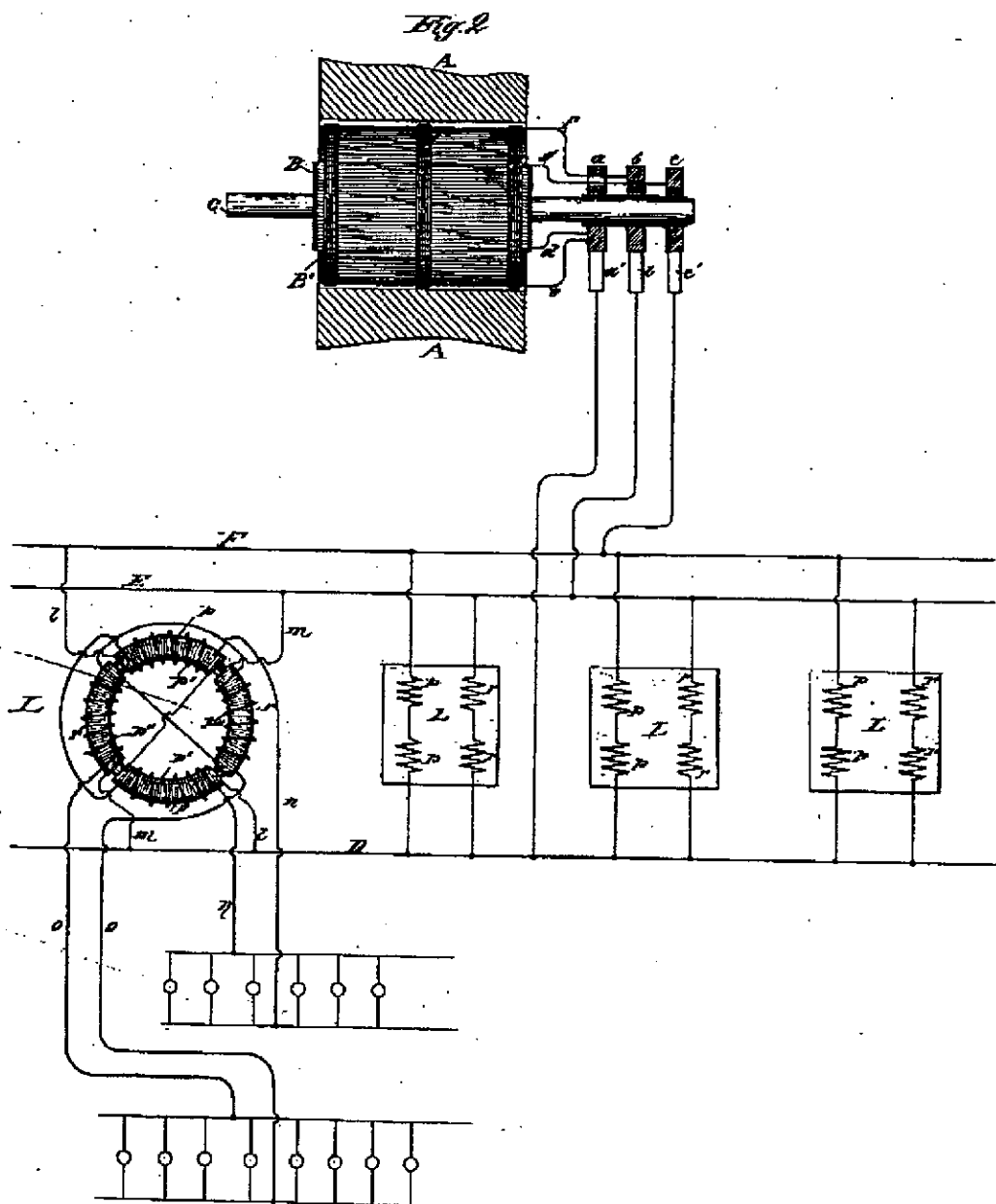
Duncan, Curtis & Page
ATTORNEY

N. TESLA.

SYSTEM OF ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION.

No. 390,413.

Patented Oct. 2, 1888.



WITNESSES:

Radjuel Nestor
Frank A. Murray

INVENTOR

Nikola Tesla

BY

Duncan, Curtis & Page
 ATTORNEYS

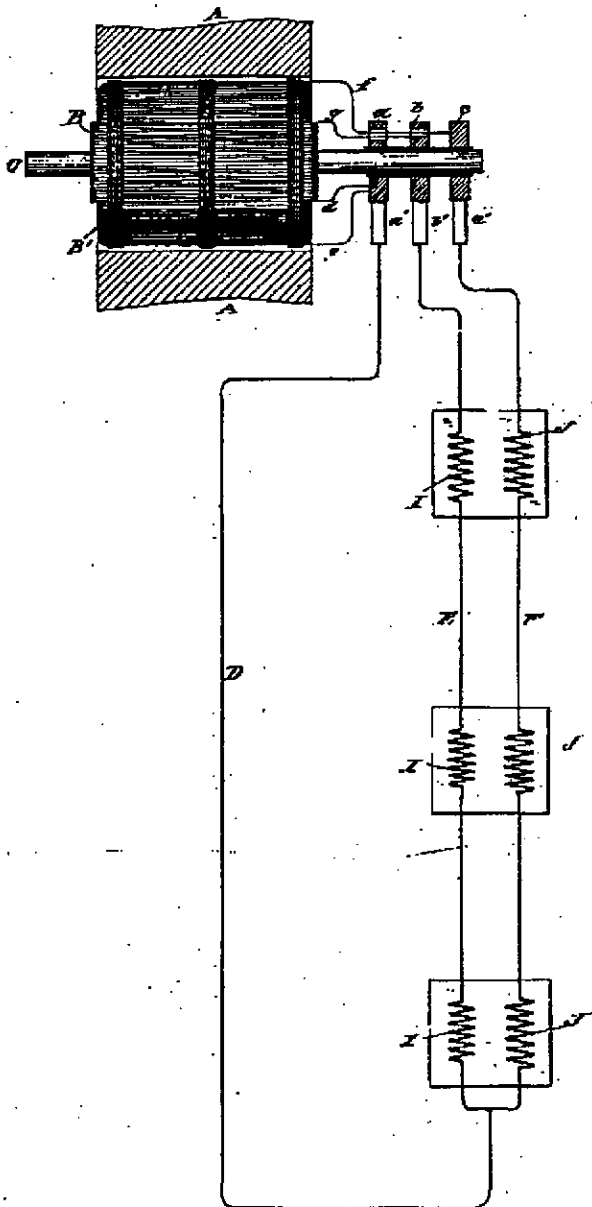
N. TESLA.

SYSTEM OF ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION.

No. 390,413.

Patented Oct. 2, 1888.

Fig 3



WITNESSES:

Raphael Nessler
Francis D. Merrill

INVENTOR

Nikola Tesla

BY

Duncan, Curtis & Page
ATTORNEYS.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

DYNAMO-ELECTRIC MACHINE.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 390,414, dated October 2, 1888.

Application filed April 23, 1888. Serial No. 271,636. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, now residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Dynamo-Electric Machines, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

In certain patents granted to Charles F. Peck and myself—notably in Patents No. 381,968 and No. 382,280, May 1, 1888—I have shown and described a plan of constructing and operating motors, transformers, and the like, by alternating currents conveyed through two or more independent circuits from a generator having such relation to the motors or transformers as to produce therein a progressive movement of the magnetic poles or lines of force. In the said applications the descriptions and illustrations of the generators were confined to those types of alternating current machine in which the current generating coils are independent or separate; but I have found that the ordinary forms of continuous current dynamos now in use may be readily and cheaply adapted to my system, or utilized both as continuous and alternating current generators with but slight changes in their construction. The mode of effecting this forms the substance of my present application.

Generally stated, the plan pursued by me in carrying out this invention is as follows: On the shaft of a given generator, either in place of or in addition to the regular commutator, I secure as many pairs of insulated collecting-rings as there are circuits to be formed. Now, it will be understood that in the operation of any dynamo electric generator the currents in the coils in their movement through the field of force undergo different phases—that is to say, at different positions of the coils the currents have certain directions and certain strengths—and that in my improved motors or transformers it is necessary that the currents in the energizing coils should undergo a certain order of variations in strength and direction. Hence, the further step—viz, the connection between the induced or generating coils of the machine and the contact-rings from

which the currents are to be taken off—will be determined solely by what order of variations of strength and direction in the currents is desired for producing a given result in the electrical translating device. This may be accomplished in various ways; but in the drawings I have given typical instances only of the best and most practicable ways of applying the invention to three of the best-known types of machines, in order to illustrate the principle and to enable any one skilled in the art to apply the invention in any other case or under any modified conditions which the circumstances of particular cases may require.

Figure 1 is a diagram illustrative of the mode of applying the invention to the well-known type of closed or continuous circuit machines. Fig. 2 is a similar diagram containing an armature with separate coils connected diametrically, or what is generally called an "open-circuit" machine. Fig. 3 is a diagram showing the application of the invention to a machine the armature-coils of which have a common joint.

Referring to Fig. 1, let A represent one of my improved motors or transformers, which, for convenience, I shall designate a "converter," which consists of an annular core, B, wound with four independent coils, C and D, those diametrically opposite being connected together so as to co-operate in pairs in establishing free poles in the ring, the tendency of each pair being to fix the poles at ninety degrees from the other. There may be an armature, E, within the ring, which is wound with coils closed upon themselves. The object is to pass through coils C D currents of such relative strength and direction as to produce a progressive shifting or movement of the points of maximum magnetic effect around the ring, and to thereby maintain a rotary movement of the armature. I therefore secure to the shaft E of the generator four insulated contact-rings, a b c d, upon which I cause to bear the collecting-brushes a' b' c' d', connected by wires G G H H, respectively, with the terminals of coils C and D.

Assume, for sake of illustration, that the coils D D are to receive the maximum and coils C C at the same instant the minimum current, so that the polar line may be midway

between the coils D D, the rings *a b* would therefore be connected to the continuous armature-coil at its neutral points with respect to the field or the point corresponding with that of the ordinary commutator brushes, and between which exists the greatest difference of potential, while rings *c d* would be connected to two points in the coil, between which exists no difference of potential. The best results will be obtained by making these connections at points equidistant from one another, as shown. These connections are easiest made by using wires L between the rings and the loops or wires J, connecting the coil I to the segments of the commutator K. When the converters are made in this manner, it is evident that the phases of the currents in the sections of the generator-coil will be reproduced in the converter coils. For example, after turning through an arc of ninety degrees the conductors, L L, which before conveyed the maximum current, will receive the minimum current by reason of the change in the position of their coils, and it is evident that for the same reason the current in said coils has gradually fallen from the maximum to the minimum in passing through the arc of ninety degrees. In this special plan of connections the rotation of the magnetic poles of the converter will be synchronous with that of the armature-coils of the generator, and the result will be the same, whether the energizing-circuits are derivations from a continuous armature-coil or from independent coils, as in my previous devices.

I have shown in Fig. 1, in dotted lines, the brushes M M in their proper normal position. In practice these brushes may be removed from the commutator and the field of the generator excited by an external source of current; or the brushes may be allowed to remain on the commutator and to take off a converted current to excite the field, or to be used for other purposes.

In a certain well-known class of machines the armature contains a number of coils the terminals of which connect to commutator-segments, the coils being connected across the armature in pairs. This type of machine is represented in Fig. 2. In this machine each pair of coils goes through the same phases as the coils in some of the generators I have shown, and it is obviously only necessary to utilize them in pairs or sets to operate one of my converters by extending the segments of the commutators belonging to each pair of coils and causing a collecting-brush to bear on the continuous portion of each segment. In this way two or more circuits may be taken off from the generator, each including one or more pairs or sets of coils, as may be desired.

In Fig. 2 I I represent the armature-coils, T T the poles of the field-magnet, and F the shaft carrying the commutators, which are ex-

tended to form continuous portions *a b c d*. The brushes bearing on the continuous portions for taking off the alternating currents are represented by *a' b' c' d'*. The collecting-brushes, or those which may be used to take off the direct current, are designated by M M. Two pairs of the armature-coils and their commutators are shown in the figure as being utilized; but all may be utilized in a similar manner.

There is another well-known type of machine in which three or more coils, A' B' C', on the armature have a common joint, the free ends being connected to the segments of a commutator. This form of generator is illustrated in Fig. 3. In this case each terminal of the generator is connected directly or in derivation to a continuous ring, *a b c*, and collecting-brushes *a' b' c'*, bearing thereon, take off the alternating currents that operate the motor. It is preferable in this case to employ a motor or transformer with three energizing-coils, A" B" C", placed symmetrically with those of the generator, and the circuits from the latter are connected to the terminals of such coils either directly—as when they are stationary—or by means of brushes *e'* and contact-rings *e*. In this, as in the other cases, the ordinary commutator may be used on the generator, and the current taken from it utilized for exciting the generator field-magnets or for other purposes.

These examples serve to illustrate the principle of the invention. It will be observed that in any case it is necessary only to add the continuous contact or collecting rings and to establish the connections between them and the appropriate coils.

It will be understood that this invention is applicable to other types of machine—as, for example, those by which the induced coils are stationary and the brushes and magnet revolve; but the manner of its application is obvious to one skilled in the art.

Having now described my invention, what I claim is—

1. The combination, with a converter having independent energizing-coils, of a continuous or direct current dynamo or magneto machine, and intermediate-circuits permanently connected at suitable points to the induced or generating coils of the generator, as herein set forth.

2. The combination, with a converter provided with independent energizing-circuits, of a continuous or direct current generator provided with continuous collecting-rings connected in derivation to the armature-coils to form the terminals of circuits corresponding to those of the converter, as herein set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

ROBT. F. GAYLORD,

FRANK B. MURPHY.

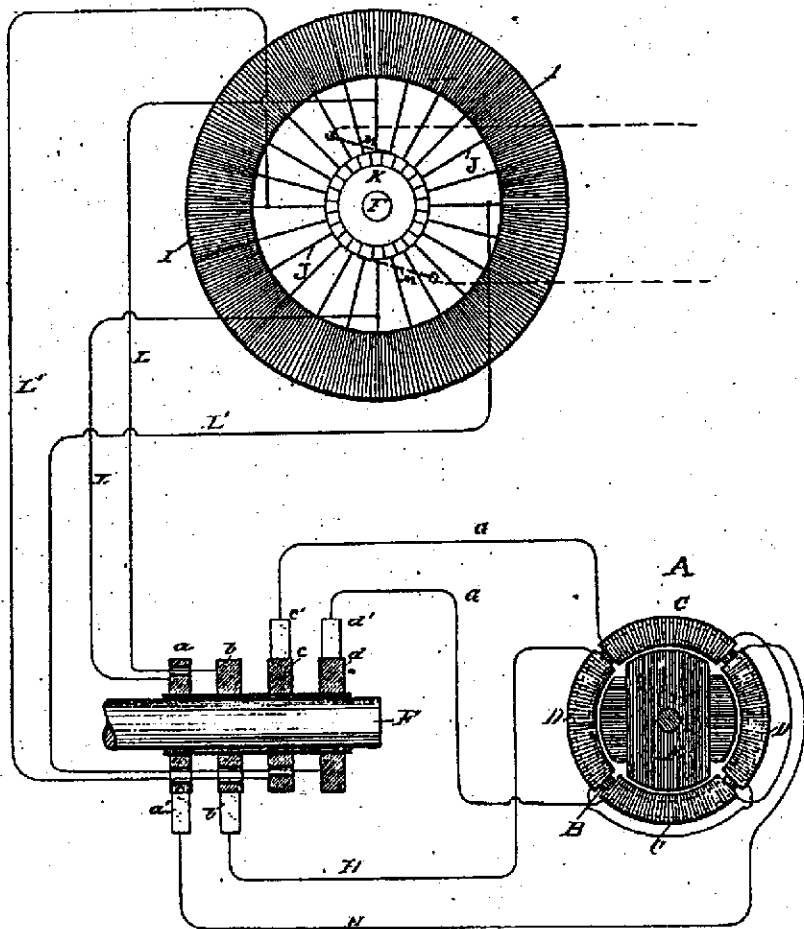
N. TESLA.

DYNAMO ELECTRIC MACHINE.

No. 390,414.

Patented Oct. 2, 1888.

Fig. 1



WITNESSES:

Rapahail Tetter
 Francis H. Carter

INVENTOR

Nikola Tesla

BY

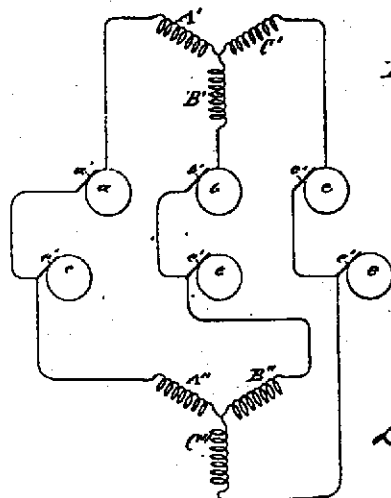
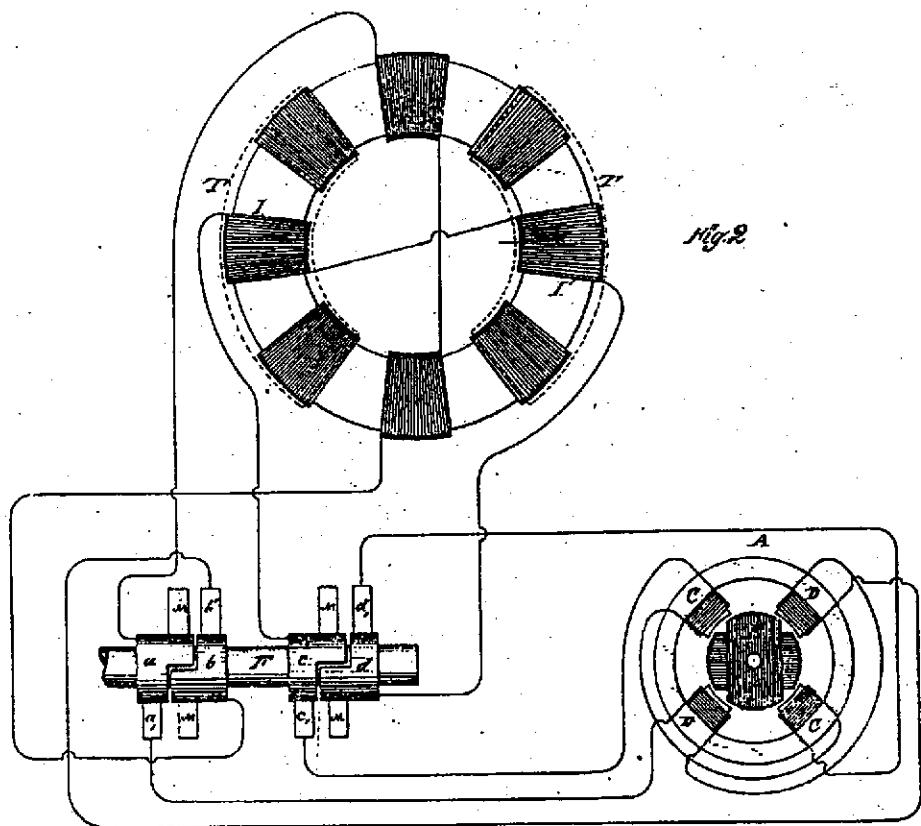
Duncan, Carter & Bag
 ATTORNEYS

N. TESLA.

DYNAMO ELECTRIC MACHINE.

No. 390,414.

Patented Oct. 2, 1888.



WITNESSES:

Raphael Netter
 Frank R. Harter

Fig. 3

INVENTOR
 Nikola Tesla
 BY
 Duncan, Curtis & Lag
 ATTORNEYS

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

DYNAMO-ELECTRIC MACHINE OR MOTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 390,415, dated October 2, 1888.

Application filed May 15, 1888. Serial No. 273,994. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, now residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Dynamo-Electric Machines and Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

This invention is an improvement in the construction of dynamo or magneto electric machines or motors, the improvement consisting in a novel form of frame and field-magnet which renders the machine more solid and compact as a structure, which requires fewer parts, and which involves less trouble and expense in its manufacture.

The invention is applicable to generators and motors generally, not only to those which I have described in former patents, and which have independent circuits adapted for use in my patented alternating current system, but to other continuous or alternating current machines, such as have heretofore been more generally used.

In the drawings hereto annexed, which illustrate my improvements, Figure 1 shows the machine in side elevation. Fig. 2 is a vertical sectional view of the field-magnets and frame and an end view of the armature; and Fig. 3 is a plan view of one of the parts of the frame and the armature, a portion of the latter being cut away.

I cast the field-magnets and frame in two parts. These parts are identical in size and shape, and each consists of the solid plates or ends A B, from which project inwardly the cores C D and the side bars or bridge-pieces, E F. The precise shape of these parts is largely a matter of choice—that is to say, each casting, as shown, forms an approximately-rectangular frame; but it may obviously be more or less oval, round, or square without departure from the invention. I also prefer to reduce the width of the side bars, E F, at the center and to so proportion the parts that when the frame is put together the spaces between the pole-pieces will be practically equal to the arcs which the surfaces of the poles occupy.

The bearings G for the armature-shaft are cast in the side bars, E F. The field-coils are either wound on the pole-pieces or, preferably, wound on a form and then slipped on over the ends of the pole-pieces. The lower part or casting is secured to a suitable base after being finished off. The armature K on its shaft is then mounted in the bearings of the lower casting and the other part of the frame placed in position, dowel-pins L or any other means being used to secure the two parts in proper position.

In order to secure an easier fit I cast the side bars, E F, and end pieces, A B, so that slots M are formed when the two parts are put together.

This machine possesses many advantages. For example, I magnetize the cores alternately, as indicated by the characters N S, and it will be seen that the magnetic circuit between the poles of each part of a casting is completed through the solid iron side bars. The bearings for the shaft are located at the neutral points of the field, so that the armature-core is not affected by the magnetic condition of the field.

My improvement is not restricted to the use of four pole-pieces, as it is evident that each pole-piece could be divided or more than four formed by the shape of the casting.

What I claim is—

1. A dynamo or magneto electric machine or motor the frame of which is built up of two castings, each consisting of end plates with pole-pieces extending inwardly therefrom and connecting side bars, as set forth.

2. A frame for generators or motors built up of two superposed castings, each consisting of a rectangular frame with pole-pieces extending inwardly from its ends, as set forth.

3. A frame and field-magnet for generators and motors built up of two rectangular castings having pole-pieces extending inwardly from their ends, the faces of said pole-pieces being curved to afford clearance for the armature and provided with energizing-coils, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

ROBT. F. GAYLORD,
FRANK E. HARTLEY.

(No Model.)

N. TESLA.

DYNAMO ELECTRIC MACHINE OR MOTOR.

No. 390,415.

Patented Oct. 2, 1888.

Fig. 1

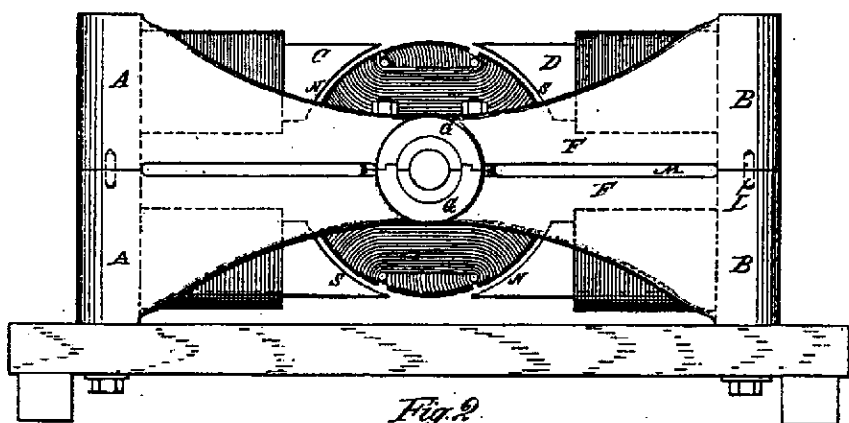


Fig. 2

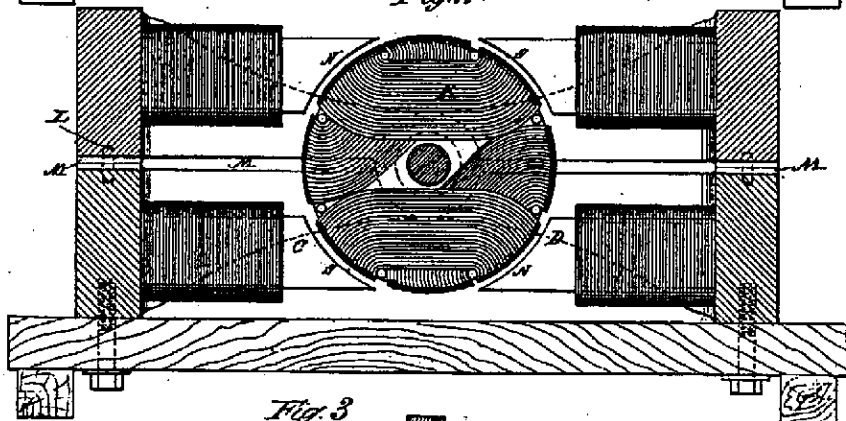
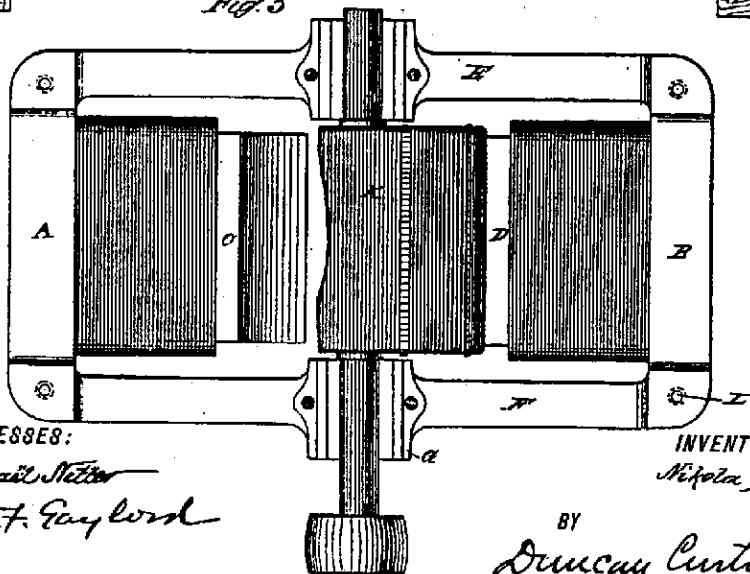


Fig. 3



WITNESSES:

Ralph H. Miller
Robert F. Gaylord

INVENTOR

Nikola Tesla

BY

Duncan, Curtis & Page
ATTORNEYS

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

DYNAMO-ELECTRIC MACHINE.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 390,721, dated October 9, 1888.

Application filed April 26, 1888. Serial No. 372,433. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, now residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Electric Generators, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawing accompanying and forming a part of the same.

My present invention relates, chiefly, to the alternating-current system invented by me and described in prior patents, notably Nos. 381,908 and 382,280, of May 1, 1888, in which the motors or transformers, or generally the converters, are operated by a progressive shifting or movement of their magnetic poles produced by the co-operative action of independent magnetizing-coils through which pass alternating currents in proper order and direction. In my said system, as I have heretofore shown, I employed a generator of alternating currents in which there were independent induced or generating coils corresponding to the energizing-coils of the converter, and the relations of the generator and converters were generally such that the speed of rotation of the magnetic poles of the converter equaled that of the armature of the generator.

To secure the greatest efficiency, it is necessary to run the machines at a high speed, and this is true not only of those generators and motors which are particularly adapted for use in my system, but of others. The practicability of running at very high speeds, however, particularly in the case of large generators, is limited by mechanical conditions, in seeking to avoid which I have devised various plans for operating the system under efficient conditions, although running the generator at a comparatively low rate of speed.

My present invention consists of another way of accomplishing this result, which in certain respects presents many advantages. According to the invention, in lieu of driving the armature of the generator at a high rate of speed, I produce a rotation of the magnetic poles of one element of the generator and drive the other at a different speed, by which similar results are obtained to those secured by a rapid rotation of one of the elements.

I shall describe this invention by reference to the diagram drawing hereto annexed.

The generator which supplies the current for operating the motors or transformers consists in this instance of a subdivided ring or annular core wound with four diametrically-opposite coils, *EE'*. Within the ring is mounted a cylindrical armature-core wound longitudinally with two independent coils, *FF'*, the ends of which lead, respectively, to two pairs of insulated contact or collecting rings, *DD' GG'*, on the armature-shaft. Collecting-brushes *d d' g g'* bear upon these rings, respectively, and convey the currents through the two independent line-circuits *MM'*. In the main line there may be included one or more motors or transformers, or both. If motors be used, they are constructed in accordance with my invention with independent coils or sets of coils *J J'*, included, respectively, in the circuits *MM'*. These energizing-coils are wound on a ring or annular field or on pole-pieces thereon, and produce by the action of the alternating currents passing through them a progressive shifting of the magnetism from pole to pole. The cylindrical armature *H* of the motor is wound with two coils at right angles, which form independent closed circuits.

If transformers be employed, I connect one set of the primary coils, as *NN'*, wound on a ring or annular core, to one circuit, as *M'*, and the other primary-coils, *N' N'*, to the circuit *M*. The secondary coils *KK'* may then be utilized for running groups of incandescent lamps *PP'*.

With the generator I employ an exciter. This consists of two poles, *AA*, of steel permanently magnetized, or of iron excited by a battery or other generator of continuous currents, and a cylindrical armature-core mounted on a shaft, *B*, and wound with two longitudinal coils, *CC*. One end of each of these coils is connected to the collecting-rings *b c*, respectively, while the other ends are both connected to a ring, *a*. Collecting-brushes *b' c'* bear on the rings *b c*, respectively, and conductors *L L'* convey the currents therefrom through the coils *E* and *E'* of the generator. *L'* is a common return-wire to brush *a'*. Two independent circuits are thus formed, one including coils *Op* of the exciter and *EE* of the generator,

the other coils C' of the exciter and E' E' of the generator. It results from this that the operation of the exciter produces a progressive movement of the magnetic poles of the annular field-core of the generator, the shifting or rotary movement of said poles being synchronous with the rotation of the exciter-armature. Considering the operative conditions of a system thus established, it will be found that when the exciter is driven so as to energize the field of the generator the armature of the latter, if left free to turn, would rotate at a speed practically the same as that of the exciter. If under such conditions the coils F F' of the generator-armature be closed upon themselves or short-circuited, no currents, at least theoretically, will be generated in the said armature-coils. In practice I have observed the presence of slight currents, the existence of which is attributable to more or less pronounced fluctuations in the intensity of the magnetic poles of the generator-ring. So, if the armature-coils F F' be closed through the motor, the latter will not be turned as long as the movement of the generator-armature is synchronous with that of the exciter or of the magnetic poles of its field. If, on the contrary, the speed of the generator-armature be in any way checked, so that the shifting or rotation of the poles of the field becomes relatively more rapid, currents will be induced in the armature-coils. This obviously follows from the passing of the lines of force across the armature-conductors. The greater the speed of rotation of the magnetic poles relatively to that of the armature the more rapidly the currents developed in the coils of the latter will follow one another, and the more rapidly the motor will revolve in response thereto, and this continues until the armature-generator is stopped entirely, as by a brake, when the motor, if properly constructed, runs at the same speed with which the magnetic poles of the generator rotate.

The effective strength of the currents developed in the armature-coils of the generator is dependent upon the strength of the currents energizing the generator and upon the number of rotations per unit of time of the magnetic poles of the generator; hence the speed of the motor-armature will depend in all cases upon the relative speeds of the armature of the generator and of its magnetic poles. For example, if the poles are turned two thousand times per unit of time and the armature is turned eight hundred, the motor will turn twelve hundred times, or nearly so. Very slight differences of speed may be indicated by a delicately-balanced motor.

Let it now be assumed that power is applied to the generator-armature to turn it in a direction opposite to that in which its magnetic poles rotate. In such case the result would be similar to that produced by a generator the armature and field-magnets of which are rotated in opposite directions, and by reason of these conditions the motor-armature will turn

at a rate of speed equal to the sum of the speeds of the armature and magnetic poles of the generator, so that a comparatively low speed of the generator-armature will produce a high speed in the motor.

It will be observed in connection with this system that on diminishing the resistance of the external circuit of the generator-armature by checking the speed of the motor or by adding translating devices in multiple arc in the secondary circuit or circuits of the transformer the strength of the current in the armature-circuit is greatly increased. This is due to two causes: first, to the great differences in the speeds of the motor and generator, and, secondly, to the fact that the apparatus follows the analogy of a transformer, for, in proportion as the resistance of the armature or secondary circuits is reduced, the strength of the currents in the field or primary circuits of the generator is increased and the currents in the armature augmented correspondingly. For similar reasons the currents in the armature-coils of the generator increase very rapidly when the speed of the armature is reduced when running in the same direction as the magnetic poles or conversely.

It will be understood from the above description that the generator-armature may be run in the direction of the shifting of the magnetic poles, but more rapidly, and that in such case the speed of the motor will be equal to the difference between the two rates.

In many applications to electrical conversion and distribution this system possesses great advantages both in economy, efficiency, and practicability.

What I claim is—

1. The combination, with an alternating-current generator having independent energizing or field and independent induced or armature coils, of an alternating-current exciter having generating or induced coils corresponding to and connected with the energizing-coils of the generator, as set forth.

2. In an alternating-current generator, the combination of the elements named and co-operatively associated in the following manner: a field-magnet wound with independent coils each connected with a source of alternating currents, whereby the magnetic poles produced by said coils will be progressively shifted or moved through the field, and an armature-core wound with independent coils, each having terminals from which currents are delivered to the independent external circuits.

3. The system of electrical distribution consisting of the combination, with an alternating-current generator having independent energizing-coils and an armature wound with independent induced coils, of an alternating-current exciter having induced coils corresponding to and connected with the energizing-coils of the generator, and one or more electrical converters having independent inducing or energizing coils connected with the corre-

sponding armature coils of the generator, as herein set forth.

4. The combination, with an alternating-current generator having a field-magnet wound
5 with independent energizing-coils and an armature adapted to be rotated within the field produced by said magnet, of an exciter

having induced or generating coils corresponding to and connected with the energizing-coils of the generator, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

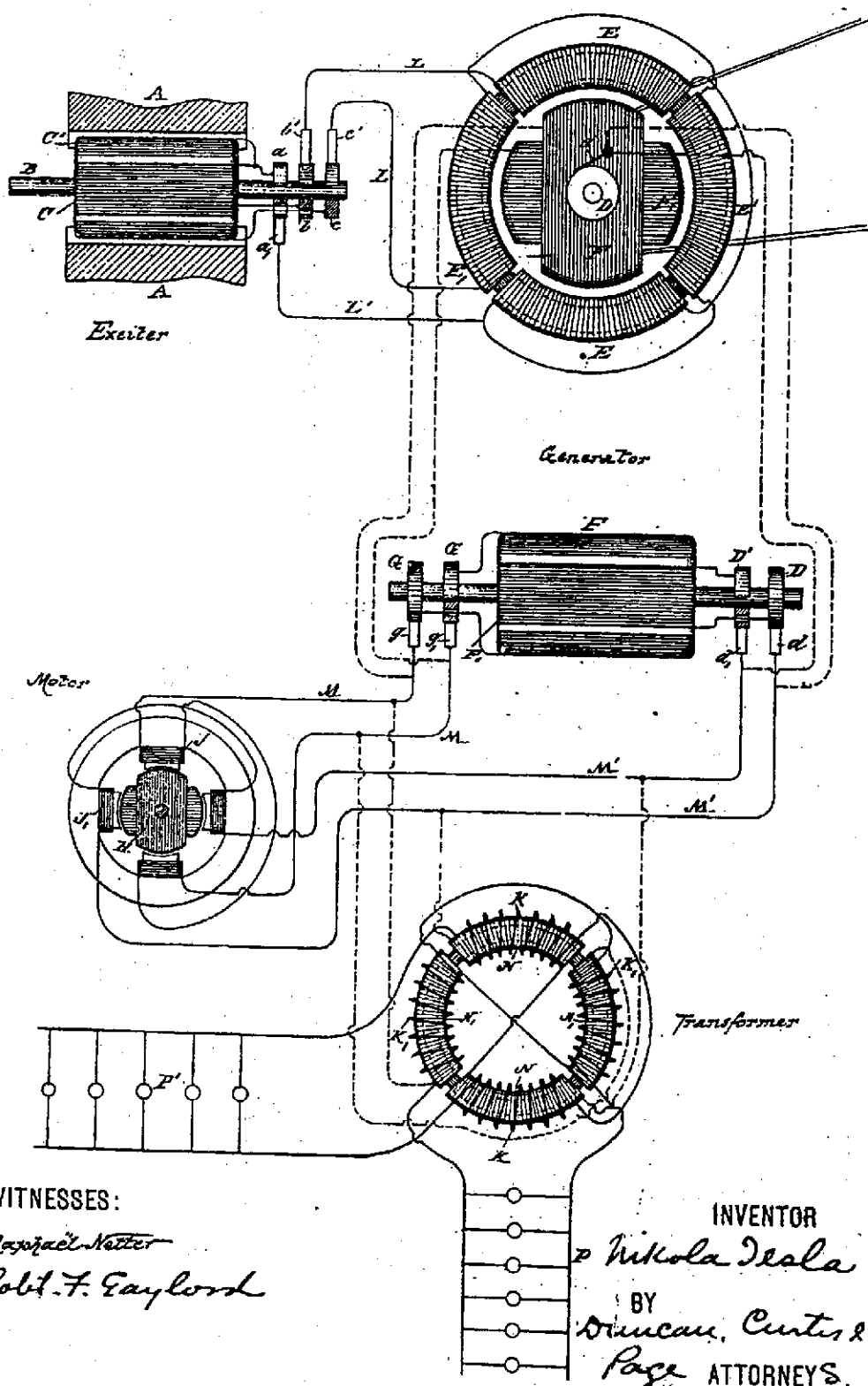
ROBT. F. GAYLORD,
PARKER W. PAGE.

(No Model.)

N. TESLA.
DYNAMO ELECTRIC MACHINE.

No. 390,721.

Patented Oct. 9, 1888.



WITNESSES:

Maximilian Natter

Robt. F. Gaylord

INVENTOR

Nikola Tesla

BY
Duncan, Curtis & Page
ATTORNEYS.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

REGULATOR FOR ALTERNATE-CURRENT MOTORS.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 390,820, dated October 9, 1888.

Application filed April 24, 1888. Serial No. 271,622. (Nonnovel.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, now residing in New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Regulators for Alternating-Current Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming part of the same.

My invention is an improvement in systems for the electric transmission of power; and it consists in a means of regulating the speed and power of the motor or motors. The system for use with which the invention is more particularly designed is one in which the motors, or what may be in certain cases their equivalents—the electrical transformers—have two or more independent energizing-circuits, which, receiving current from corresponding sources, act to set up a progressive movement or shifting of the magnetic poles of the motors; but the invention is also applicable to other purposes, as will hereinafter appear. I employ the regulator for the purpose of varying the speed of these motors.

The regulator proper consists of a form of converter or transformer with one element capable of movement with respect to the other, whereby the inductive relations may be altered, either manually or automatically, for the purpose of varying the strength of the induced current. I prefer to construct this device in such manner that the induced or secondary element may be movable with respect to the other; and the improvement, so far as relates merely to the construction of the device itself, consists, essentially, in the combination, with two opposite magnetic poles, of an armature wound with an insulated coil and mounted on a shaft, whereby it may be turned to the desired extent within the field produced by the poles. The normal position of the core of the secondary element is that in which it most completely closes the magnetic circuit between the poles of the primary element, and in this position its coil is in its most effective position for the inductive action upon it of the primary coils; but by turning the movable core to either side the induced currents delivered by

its coil become weaker until, by a movement of the said core and coil through ninety degrees, there will be no current delivered.

The construction of this device, broadly, I do not claim as of my invention; but this, together with the manner of applying and using the same, which forms the subject of my invention, I will now explain by reference to the accompanying drawings.

Figure 1 is a view in side elevation of the regulator. Fig. 2 is a broken section on line $x x$ of Fig. 1. Fig. 3 is a diagram illustrating the preferred manner of applying the regulator to ordinary forms of motors, and Fig. 4 is a similar diagram illustrating the application of the device to my improved alternating-current motors.

The regulator may be constructed in many ways to secure the desired result; but in the best form of which I am now aware it is shown in Figs. 1 and 2.

A represents a frame of iron, and I would here state that the plan which is now invariably followed of dividing up all iron cores which are subjected to the influence of alternating currents should be adopted in the construction of this device.

B B are the cores of the inducing or primary coils C C, said cores being integral with or bolted to the frame A in any well-known way.

D is a shaft mounted in the side bars, D', and on which is secured a sectional iron core, E, wound with an induced or secondary coil, F, the convolutions of which are parallel with the axis of the shaft. The ends of the core are rounded off, so as to fit closely in the space between the two poles and permit the core E to be turned. A handle, G, secured to the projecting end of the shaft D, is provided for this purpose.

Any means may be employed for maintaining the core and secondary coil in any given position to which it is turned by the handle.

The operation or effect of the device will be understood by reference to the diagrams illustrating the manner of its application.

In Fig. 3, let H represent an ordinary alternating-current generator, the field-magnets of which are excited by a suitable source of current, I. Let J designate an ordinary form of

electro-magnetic motor provided with an armature, K, commutator L, and field-magnets M. It is well known that such a motor, if its field-magnets' cores be divided up into insulated sections, may be practically operated by an alternating current; but in using my regulator with such a motor I include one element of the motor only—say the armature-coils—in the main circuit of the generator, making the connections through the brushes and the commutator in the usual way. I also include one of the elements of the regulator—say the stationary coils—in the same circuit, and in the circuit with the secondary or movable coil of the regulator I connect up the field-coils of the motor. I prefer to use flexible conductors to make the connections from the secondary coil of the regulator, as I thereby avoid the use of sliding contacts or rings without interfering with the requisite movement of the core E.

If the regulator be in its normal position, or that in which its magnetic circuit is most nearly closed, it delivers its maximum induced current, the phases of which so correspond with those of the primary current that the motor will run as though both field and armature were excited by the main current.

To vary the speed of the motor to any rate between the minimum and maximum rates, the core E and coils F are turned in either direction to an extent which produces the desired result, for in its normal position the convolutions of coil F embrace the maximum number of lines of force, all of which act with the same effect upon said coil; hence it will deliver its maximum current; but by turning the coil F out of its position of maximum effect the number of lines of force embraced by it is diminished. The inductive effect is therefore impaired, and the current delivered by coil F will continue to diminish in proportion to the angle at which the coil F is turned until, after passing through an angle of ninety degrees, the convolutions of the coil will be at right angles to those of coils C C, and the inductive effect reduced to a minimum.

Incidentally to certain constructions, other causes may influence the variation in the strength of the induced currents. For example, in the present case it will be observed that by the first movement of coil F a certain portion of its convolutions are carried beyond the line of the direct influence of the lines of force, and that the magnetic path or circuit for said lines is impaired; hence the inductive effect would be reduced. Next, that after moving through a certain angle, which is obviously determined by the relative dimensions of the bobbin or coil F, diagonally-opposite portions of the coil will be simultaneously included in the field, but in such positions that the lines which produce a current-impulse in one portion of the coil in a certain direction will produce in the diagonally-opposite por-

tion a corresponding impulse in the opposite direction; hence portions of the current will neutralize one another.

As before stated, the mechanical construction of the device may be greatly varied; but the essential conditions of the invention will be fulfilled in any apparatus in which the movement of the elements with respect to one another effects the same results by varying the inductive relations of the two elements in a manner similar to that described.

It may also be stated that the core E is not indispensable to the operation of the regulator; but its presence is obviously beneficial. This regulator, however, has another valuable property in its capability of reversing the motor, for if the coil F be turned through a half-revolution the position of its convolutions relatively to the two coils C C and the lines of force is reversed, and consequently the phases of the current will be reversed. This will produce a rotation of the motor in an opposite direction. This form of regulator is also applied with great advantage to my system of utilizing alternating currents, in which the magnetic poles of the field of a motor are progressively shifted by means of the combined effects upon the field of magnetizing-coils included in independent circuits, through which pass alternating currents in proper order and relations to each other.

In illustration, let P represent one of my generators having two independent coils, P' and P'', on the armature, and T a diagram of a motor having two independent energizing-coils or sets of coils, R R'. One of the circuits from the generator, as S' S', includes one set, R' R', of the energizing-coils of the motor, while the other circuit, as S S, includes the primary coils of the regulator. The secondary coil of the regulator includes the other coils, R R, of the motor.

While the secondary coil of the regulator is in its normal position it produces its maximum current, and the maximum rotary effect is imparted to the motor; but this effect will be diminished in proportion to the angle at which the coil F of the regulator is turned. The motor will also be reversed by reversing the position of the coil with reference to the coils C C, and thereby reversing the phases of the current produced by the generator. This changes the direction of the movement of the shifting poles which the armature follows.

One of the main advantages of this plan of regulation is its economy of power. When the induced coil is generating its maximum current, the maximum amount of energy in the primary coils is absorbed; but as the induced coil is turned from its normal position the self-induction of the primary coils reduces the expenditure of energy and saves power.

It is obvious that in practice either coils C C or coil F may be used as primary or secondary, and it is well understood that their rela-

tive proportions may be varied to produce any desired difference or similarity in the inducing and induced currents.

I am aware that it is not new to vary the secondary current of an induction-coil by moving one coil with respect to the other, and thereby varying the inductive relations normally existing between the two. This I do not claim.

10 What I claim is—

1. The combination, with a motor having independent energizing-circuits, of an alternating-current regulator, consisting, essentially, of inducing and induced coils movable with respect to one another, whereby the strength of the induced currents may be varied, the induced coils being included in and adapted to

supply the current for one of the motor-circuits, as set forth.

2. The combination, with a motor adapted to be run or operated by alternating currents and provided with independent energizing-coils, of a regulator consisting of stationary inducing-coils and an induced coil capable of being rotated, whereby it may be turned to a greater or less angle to the primary coils, or its position with respect thereto reversed, the induced coil or coils being included in and adapted to supply the current for one of the motor-circuits, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

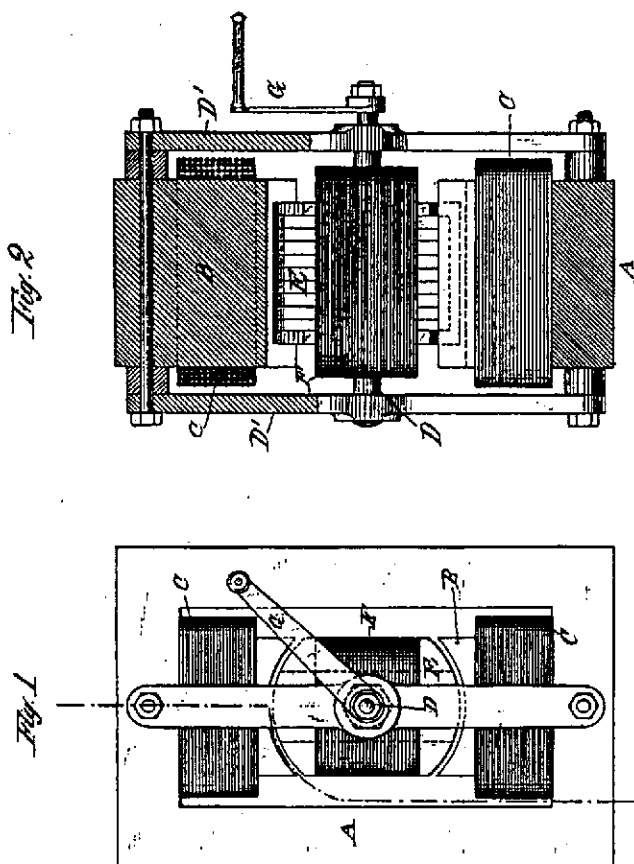
ROBT. F. GAYLORD,
FRANK B. MURPHY.

N. TESLA.

REGULATOR FOR ALTERNATE CURRENT MOTORS.

No. 390,820.

Patented Oct. 9, 1888.



WITNESSES:

James H. Noyes.
Robert F. Gaylord.

INVENTOR.

Nikola Tesla

BY

Drummond, Carter & Page.
ATTORNEYS.

N. TESLA.

REGULATOR FOR ALTERNATE CURRENT MOTORS.

No. 390,820.

Patented Oct. 9, 1888.

Fig. 3

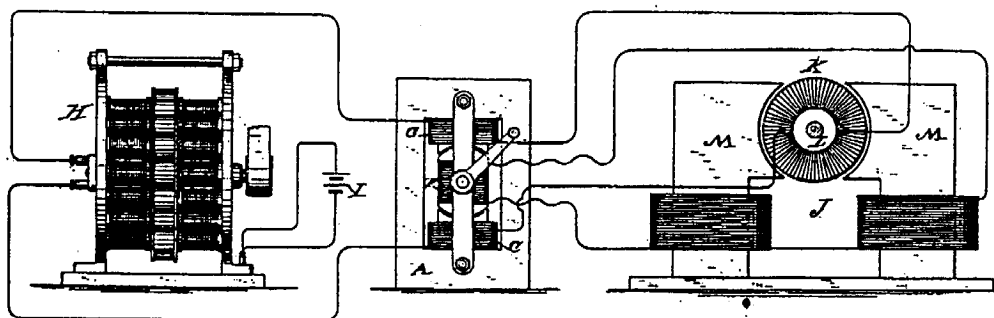
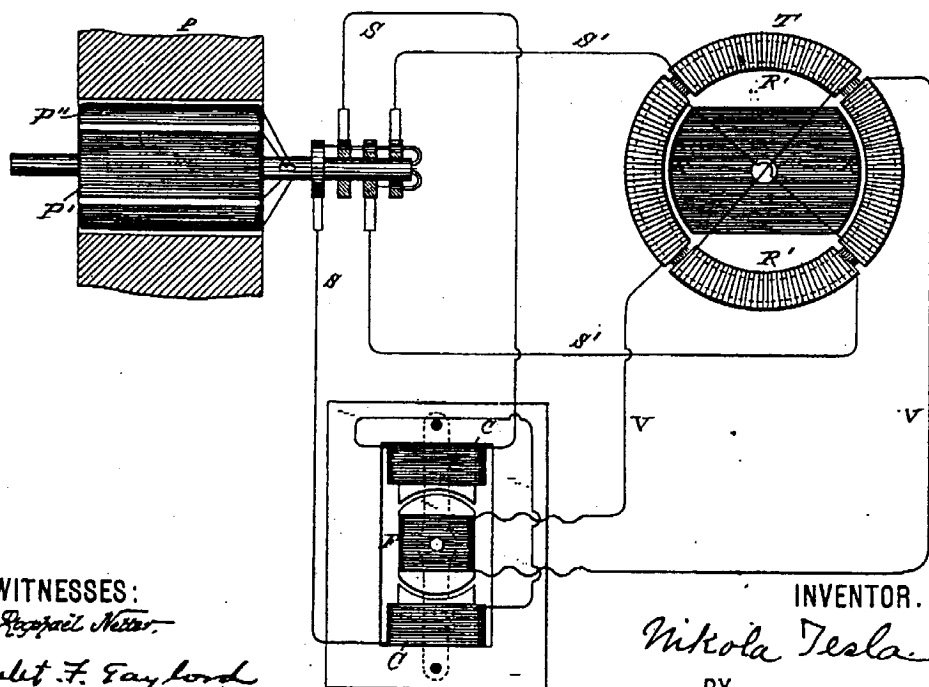


Fig. 4



WITNESSES:

*Rogers & Noyes**Robert F. Faylord*

INVENTOR.

Nikola Tesla

BY

Drumcarr, Curtis & Sage

ATTORNEYS.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF SMILJAN, LIKA, AUSTRIA-HUNGARY.

THERMO-MAGNETIC MOTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 896,121, dated January 15, 1889.

Application filed March 30, 1888. Serial No. 197,115. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, of Smiljan, Lika, Border Country of Austria-Hungary, have invented an Improvement in Thermo-Magnetic Motors, of which the following is a specification.

It is well known that heat applied to a magnetized body will lessen the magnetism, and if the temperature is raised sufficiently the magnetism will be neutralized or destroyed.

In my present invention I obtain mechanical power by a reciprocating action resulting from the joint operations of heat, magnetism, and a spring or weight or other force—that is to say, I subject a body magnetized by induction or otherwise to the action of heat until the magnetism is sufficiently neutralized to allow a weight or spring to give motion to the body and lessen the action of the heat, so that the magnetism may be sufficiently restored to move the body in the opposite direction, and again subject the same to the demagnetizing of the heat.

In carrying out my invention I am able to make use of either an electro-magnet or a permanent magnet, and I preferably direct the heat against a body that is magnetized by induction, rather than directly against a permanent magnet, thereby avoiding the loss of magnetism that might result in the permanent magnet by the action of heat. I also provide for lessening the volume of the heat or for intercepting the same during that portion of the reciprocation in which the cooling action takes place.

In the drawings I have represented by diagrams some of the numerous arrangements that may be made use of in carrying out my invention. In all of these figures the magnet-poles are marked N S, the armature A, the Bunsen burner or other source of heat H, the axis of motion M, and the spring or the equivalent thereof—namely, a weight—is marked W.

In Figure 1 the permanent magnet N is connected with a frame, F, supporting the axis M, from which the arm P hangs, and at the lower end of which the armature A is supported. The stops 2 and 3 limit the extent of motion, and the spring W tends to draw the armature A away from the magnet N. It is now to be understood that the magnetism

of N is sufficient to overcome the spring W and draw the armature A toward the magnet N. The heat acting upon the armature A neutralizes its induced magnetism sufficiently for the spring W to draw the armature A away from the magnet N and also from the heat at H. The armature now cools, and the attraction of the magnet N overcomes the spring W and draws the armature A back again above the burner H, so that the same is again heated and the operations are repeated. The reciprocating movements thus obtained are employed as a source of mechanical power in any desired manner. Usually a connecting-rod to a crank upon a fly-wheel shaft will be made use of, as indicated in Fig. 10; but I do not limit myself in this respect.

Fig. 2 represents the same parts as before described; but an electro-magnet is illustrated in place of a permanent magnet. The operations, however, are the same.

In Fig. 3 I have shown the same parts as in Figs. 1 and 2, only they are differently arranged. The armature A, instead of swinging, is stationary and held by an arm, P', and the core N S of the electro-magnet is made to swing within the helix Q, the said core being suspended by the arm P from the pivot M. A shield, R, is connected with the magnet-core and swings therewith, so that after the heat has demagnetized the armature A to such an extent that the spring W draws the core N S away from the armature A the shield R comes between the flame H and armature A, thereby intercepting the action of the heat and allowing the armature to cool, so that the magnetism, again preponderating, causes the movement of the core N S toward the armature A and the removal of the shield R from above the flame, so that the heat again acts to lessen or neutralize the magnetism. A rotary or other movement may be obtained from this reciprocation.

Fig. 4 corresponds in every respect with Fig. 3, except that a permanent horseshoe-magnet, N S, is represented as taking the place of the electro-magnet in said Fig. 3.

In Fig. 5 I have shown a helix, Q, with an armature adapted to swing toward or from the helix. In this case there may be a soft-

iron core in the helix, or the armature may assume the form of a solenoid-core, there being no permanent core within the helix.

Fig. 6 is an end view, and Fig. 7 a plan view, illustrating my improvement as applied to a swinging armature, A, and a stationary permanent magnet, N S. In this instance I apply the heat to an auxiliary armature or keeper, T, which is adjacent to and preferably in direct contact with the magnet. This armature T, in the form of a plate of sheet-iron, extends across from one pole to the other and is of sufficient section to practically form a keeper for the magnet, so that when this armature T is cool nearly all the lines of force pass over the same and very little free magnetism is exhibited. Then the armature A, which swings freely on the pivots M in front of the poles N S, is very little attracted and the spring W pulls the same away from the poles into the position indicated in the drawings. The heat is directed upon the iron plate T at some distance from the magnet, so as to allow the magnet to be kept comparatively cool. This heat is applied beneath the plate by means of the burners H, and there is a connection from the armature A or its pivot to the gas-cock G or other device for regulating the heat. The heat acting upon the middle portion of the plate T, the magnetic conductivity of the heated portion is diminished or destroyed, and a great number of the lines of force are deflected over the armature A, which is now powerfully attracted and drawn into line, or nearly so, with the poles N S. In so doing the cock G is nearly closed and the plate T cools, the lines of force are again deflected over the same, the attraction exerted upon the armature A is diminished, and the spring W pulls the same away from the magnet into the position shown by full lines, and the operations are repeated. The arrangement shown in Fig. 6 has the advantages that the magnet and armature are kept cool and the strength of the permanent magnet is better preserved, as the magnetic circuit is constantly closed.

In the plan view, Fig. 8, I have shown a permanent magnet and keeper-plate, T, similar to those in Figs. 6 and 7, with the burners H for the gas beneath the same; but the

armature is pivoted at one end to one pole of the magnet and the other end swings toward and from the other pole of the magnet. The spring W acts against a lever-arm that projects from the armature, and the supply of heat has to be partly cut off by a connection to the swinging armature, so as to lessen the heat acting upon the keeper-plate when the armature A has been attracted.

Fig. 9 is similar to Fig. 8, except that the keeper T is not made use of and the armature itself swings into and out of the range of the intense action of the heat from the burner H.

Fig. 10 is a diagram similar to Fig. 1, except that in place of using a spring and stops the armature is shown as connected by a link, 12, to the crank 13 of a fly-wheel, so that the fly-wheel will be revolved as rapidly as the armature can be heated and cooled to the necessary extent. A spring may be used in addition, as in Fig. 1.

In Fig. 11 the two armatures A A are connected by a link, so that one will be heating while the other is cooling, and the attraction exerted to move the cooled armature is availed of to draw away the heated armature instead of using a spring.

I have shown in the drawings several ways of carrying out my invention; but said invention is not limited by any particular form, arrangement, or construction of devices.

I claim as my invention—

1. The combination, with a swinging body under the influence of magnetism, of a burner or other source of heat acting to vary the magnetism, and a spring or other power to move the swinging body in the opposite direction to the action of the magnetism, substantially as set forth.

2. The combination, with two or more armatures connected to each other, of magnets to influence such armatures, and burners or other sources of heat to vary the magnetic action and cause the armatures to move, substantially as set forth.

Signed by me this 29th day of March, 1886.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

GEO. T. PINCKNEY,
WALLACE L. SERRELL.

N. TESLA.

THERMO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 396,121.

Patented Jan. 15, 1889.

Fig. 2.

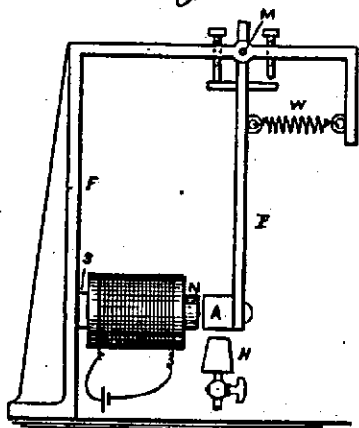


Fig. 1.

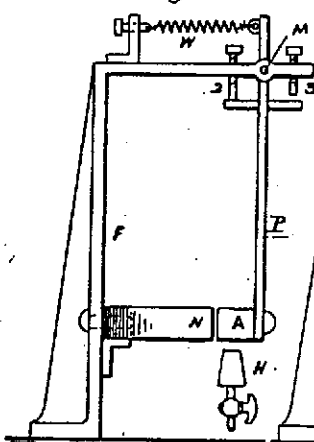


Fig. 3.

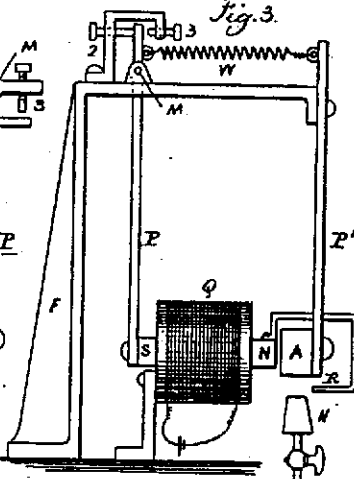


Fig. 4.

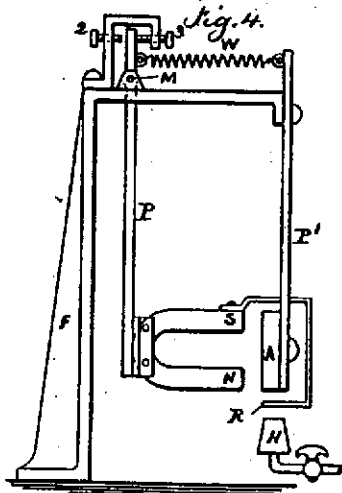


Fig. 6.

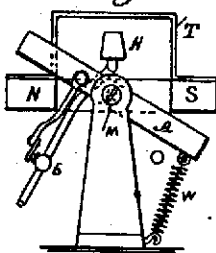


Fig. 5.

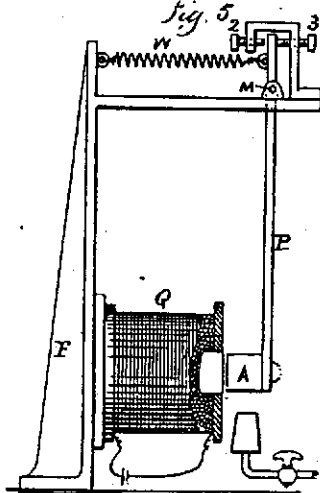


Fig. 7.

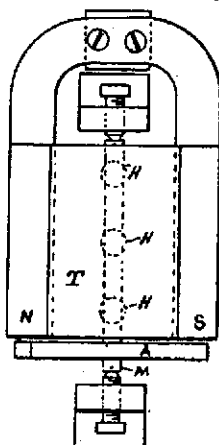


Fig. 8.

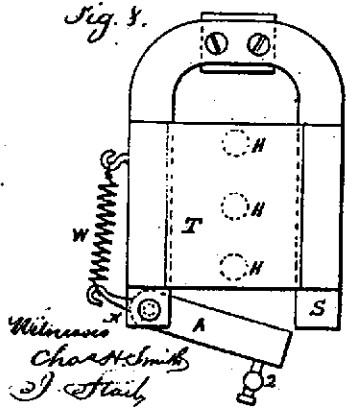
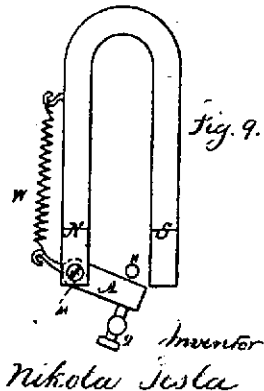


Fig. 9.



Inventor
Nikola Tesla

N. TESLA.

THERMO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 396,121.

Patented Jan. 15, 1889.

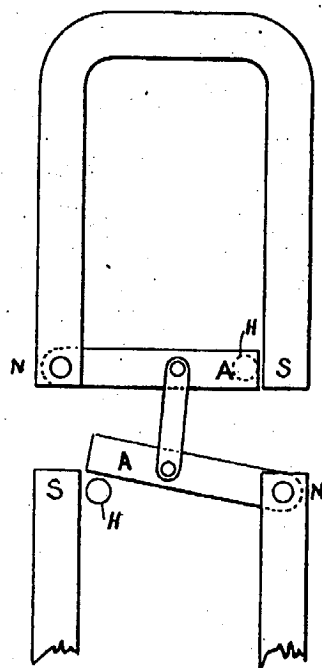
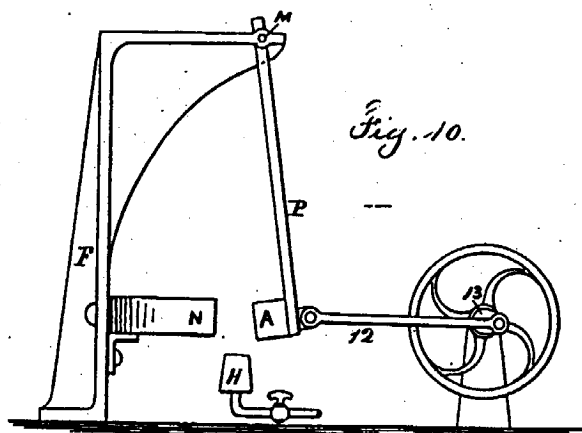


Fig. 11.

Inventor

Nikola Tesla

for Lemuel W. Serrell atty

Witnesses

Chas. H. Smith
J. Staley

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

METHOD OF OPERATING ELECTRO-MAGNETIC MOTORS.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 401,520, dated April 16, 1889.

Application filed February 18, 1889. Serial No. 300,220. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, and residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Methods of Operating Electro-Magnetic Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

As is well known, certain forms of alternating-current machines have the property, when connected in circuit with an alternating-current generator, of running as a motor in synchronism therewith; but, while the alternating current will run the motor after it has attained a rate of speed synchronous with that of the generator, it will not start it. Hence, in all instances heretofore where these "synchronizing-motors," as they are termed, have been run some means have been adopted to bring the motors up to synchronism with the generator, or approximately so, before the alternating current of the generator is applied to drive them. In some instances mechanical appliances have been utilized for this purpose. In others special and complicated forms of motor have been constructed. I have discovered a much more simple method or plan of operating synchronizing-motors, which requires practically no other apparatus than the motor itself. In other words, by a certain change in the circuit-connections of the motor I convert it at will from a double-circuit motor, or such as I have described in prior patents and applications, and which will start under the action of an alternating current into a synchronizing-motor, or one which will be run by the generator only when it has reached a certain speed of rotation synchronous with that of the generator. In this manner I am enabled to very greatly extend the applications of my system and to secure all the advantages of both forms of alternating-current motor.

The expression "synchronous with that of the generator," is used herein in its ordinary acceptation—that is to say, a motor is said to synchronize with the generator when it preserves a certain relative speed determined by its number of poles and the number of alter-

nations produced per revolution of the generator. Its actual speed, therefore, may be faster or slower than that of the generator; but it is said to be synchronous so long as it preserves the same relative speed.

In carrying out my invention I construct a motor which has a strong tendency to synchronism with the generator. The construction which I prefer for this is that in which the armature is provided with polar projections. The field-magnets are wound with two sets of coils, the terminals of which are connected to a switch mechanism, by means of which the line-current may be carried directly through the said coils or indirectly through paths by which its phases are modified. To start such a motor, the switch is turned onto a set of contacts which includes in one motor-circuit a dead resistance, in the other an inductive resistance, and, the two circuits being in derivation, it is obvious that the difference in phase of the current in such circuits will set up a rotation of the motor. When the speed of the motor has thus been brought to the desired rate, the switch is shifted to throw the main current directly through the motor-circuits, and although the currents in both circuits will now be of the same phase the motor will continue to revolve, becoming a true synchronous motor. To secure greater efficiency, I wind the armature or its polar projections with coils closed on themselves. There are various modifications and important features of this method or plan; but the main principle of the invention will be understood from the foregoing.

In the drawings, to which I now refer, I have illustrated by the diagrams the general features of construction and operation which distinguish my invention, Figure 1 being drawn to illustrate the details of the plan above set forth, and Figs. 2 and 3 modifications of the same.

Referring to Fig. 1, let A designate the field-magnets of a motor, the polar projections of which are wound with coils B C included in independent circuits, and D the armature with polar projections wound with coils E closed upon themselves, the motor in these respects being similar in construction to those described in my patent, No. 382,270, dated May 1, 1888, but having, by reason of the

polar projections on the armature-core or other similar and well-known features, the properties of a synchronizing-motor.

L L' represent the conductors of a line from an alternating-current generator G.

Near the motor is placed a switch the action of which is that of the one shown in the drawings, which is constructed as follows: F F' are two conducting plates or arms, pivoted at their ends and connected by an insulating cross-bar, H, so as to be shifted in parallelism. In the path of the bars F F' is the contact 2, which forms one terminal of the circuit through coils C, and the contact 4, which is one terminal of the circuit through coils B. The opposite end of the wire of coils C is connected to the wire L or bar F', and the corresponding end of coils B is connected to wire L' and bar F; hence if the bars be shifted so as to bear on contacts 2 and 4 both sets of coils B C will be included in the circuit L L' in multiple arc or derivation. In the path of the levers F F' are two other contact-terminals, 1 and 3. The contact 1 is connected to contact 2 through an artificial resistance, I, and contact 3 with contact 4 through a self-induction coil, J, so that when the switch-levers are shifted onto the points 1 and 3 the circuits of coils B and C will be connected in multiple arc or derivation to the circuit L L', and will include the resistance and self-induction coil, respectively. A third position of the switch is that in which the levers F and F' are shifted out of contact with both sets of points. In this case the motor is entirely out of circuit.

The purpose and manner of operating the motor by these devices are as follows: The normal position of the switch, the motor being out of circuit, is off the contact-points. Assuming the generator to be running, and that it is desired to start the motor, the switch is shifted until its levers rest upon points 1 and 3. The two motor-circuits are thus connected with the generator-circuit; but by reason of the presence of the resistance I in one and the self-induction coil J in the other the coincidence of the phases of the current is disturbed sufficiently to produce a progression of the poles, which starts the motor in rotation. When the speed of the motor has run up to synchronism with the generator, or approximately so, the switch is shifted over onto the points 2 and 4, thus cutting out the coils I and J, so that the currents in both circuits have the same phase; but the motor now runs as a synchronous motor, which is well known to be a very desirable and efficient means of converting and transmitting power.

It will be understood that when brought up to speed the motor will run with only one of the circuits B or C connected with the main or generator circuit, or the two circuits may be connected in series. This latter plan is preferable when a current having a high number of alternations per unit of time is employed to drive the motor. In such case the

starting of the motor is more difficult and the dead and inductive resistances must take up a considerable proportion of the electro-motive force of the circuits. Generally I so adjust the conditions that the electro-motive force used in each of the motor-circuits is that which is required to operate the motor when its circuits are in series. The plan which I follow in this case is illustrated in Fig. 2. In this diagram the motor has twelve poles and the armature has polar projections D wound with closed coils E. The switch used is of substantially the same construction as that shown in the previous figure. There are, however, five contacts, which I have designated by the figures 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9. The motor-circuits B C, which include alternate field-coils, are connected to the terminals in the following order: One end of circuit C is connected to contact 9 and to contact 5 through a dead resistance, I. One terminal of circuit B is connected to contact 7 and to contact 6 through a self-induction coil, J. The opposite terminals of both circuits are connected to contact 8.

One of the levers, as F, of the switch is made with an extension, f, or otherwise, so as to cover both contacts 5 and 6 when shifted into the position to start the motor. It will be observed that when in this position and with lever F' on contact 8 the current divides between the two circuits B C, which from their difference in electrical character produce a progression of the poles that starts the motor in rotation. When the motor has attained the proper speed, the switch is shifted so that the levers cover the contacts 7 and 9, thereby connecting circuits B and C in series. I have found that by this disposition the motor is maintained in rotation in synchronism with the generator. This principle of operation, which consists in converting by a change of connections or otherwise a double-circuit motor or one operating by a progressive shifting of the poles into an ordinary synchronizing-motor may be carried out in many other ways. For instance, instead of using the switch shown in the previous figures, I may use a temporary ground-circuit between the generator and motor, in order to start the motor, in substantially the manner indicated in Fig. 3. Let G in this figure represent an ordinary alternating-current generator with, say, two poles, M M', and an armature wound with two coils, N N', at right angles and connected in series. The motor has, for example, four poles wound with coils B C, which are connected in series and an armature with polar projections D wound with closed coils E E. From the common joint or union between the two circuits of both the generator and the motor an earth-connection is established, while the terminals or ends of the said circuits are connected to the line. Assuming that the motor is a synchronizing-motor or one that has the capability of running in synchronism with the generator, but not of start-

ing, it may be started by the above-described apparatus by closing the ground-connection from both generator and motor. The system thus becomes one with a two-circuit generator and motor, the ground forming a common return for the currents in the two circuits L and L'. When by this arrangement of circuits the motor is brought to speed, the ground-connection is broken between the motor or generator, or both, and ground, switches P P' being employed for this purpose. The motor then runs as a synchronizing-motor.

In describing those features which constitute my invention I have omitted illustrations of the appliances used in conjunction with the electrical devices of similar systems—such, for instance, as driving-belts, fixed and loose pulleys for the motor, and the like; but these are matters well understood.

In describing my invention by reference to specific constructions I do not wish to be understood as limiting myself to the constructions shown; and in explanation of my intent in this respect I would say that I may in such forms of apparatus as I have shown in Figs. 1 and 2 include the dead resistance and self-induction coil in either circuit, or use only a dead resistance or a self-induction coil, as in the various ways shown in my application, No. 293,052, filed December 8, 1888. I may also use any form of switch, whether manual or automatic, that will by its manipulation or operation effect the required change of connections, and in order to secure the necessary difference of phase in the two motor-circuits on starting I may employ any of the known means for this purpose.

I believe that I am the first to operate electro-magnetic motors by alternating currents in any of the ways herein suggested or described—that is to say, by producing a progressive movement or rotation of their poles or points of greatest magnetic attraction by the alternating currents until they have reached a given speed, and then by the same currents producing a simple alternation of their poles, or, in other words, by a change in the order or character of the circuit-connections to convert a motor operating on one principle to one operating on another, for the purpose described.

I do not claim herein of itself the method of or apparatus for operating a motor which forms a part of this invention and which involves the principle of varying or modifying the currents passing through the energizing-circuits, so as to produce between such currents a difference of phase, as these matters are described and claimed by me in other applications, but with the object of securing, broadly, the method as a whole which I have herein set forth.

What I claim is—

1. The method of operating an alternating-current motor herein described by first progressively shifting or rotating its poles or points of greatest attraction and then, when the motor has attained a given speed, alternating the said poles, as described.

2. The method of operating an electro-magnetic motor herein described, which consists in passing through independent energizing-circuits of the motor alternating currents differing in phase and then, when the motor has attained a given speed, alternating currents coinciding in phase, as described.

3. The method of operating an electro-magnetic motor herein described, which consists in starting the motor by passing alternating currents differing in phase through independent energizing-circuits and then, when the motor has attained a given speed, joining the energizing-circuits in series and passing an alternating current through the same.

4. The method of operating a synchronizing-motor, which consists in passing an alternating current through independent energizing-circuits of the motor and introducing into such circuits a resistance and self-induction coil, whereby a difference of phase between the currents in the circuits will be obtained, and then, when the speed of the motor synchronizes with that of the generator, withdrawing the resistance and self-induction coil, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

GEO. M. MONRO,
WM. H. LEMON.

(No Model.)

N. TESLA.

METHOD OF OPERATING ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTORS.

No. 401,520.

Patented Apr. 16, 1889.

Fig. 1

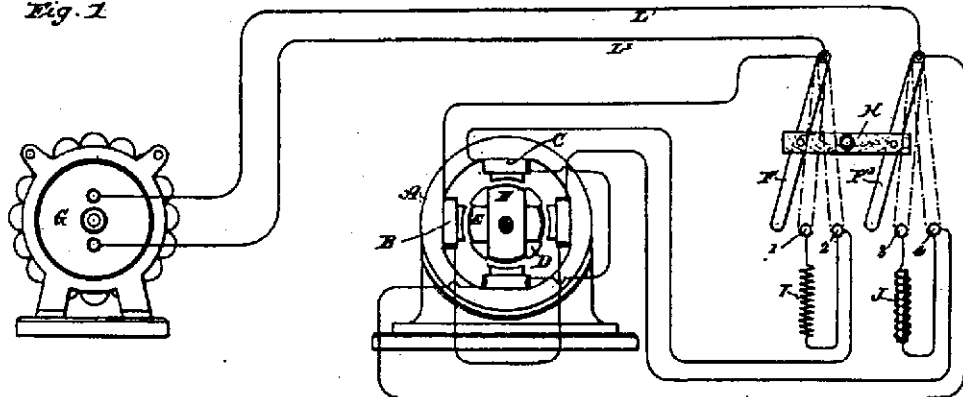


Fig. 2

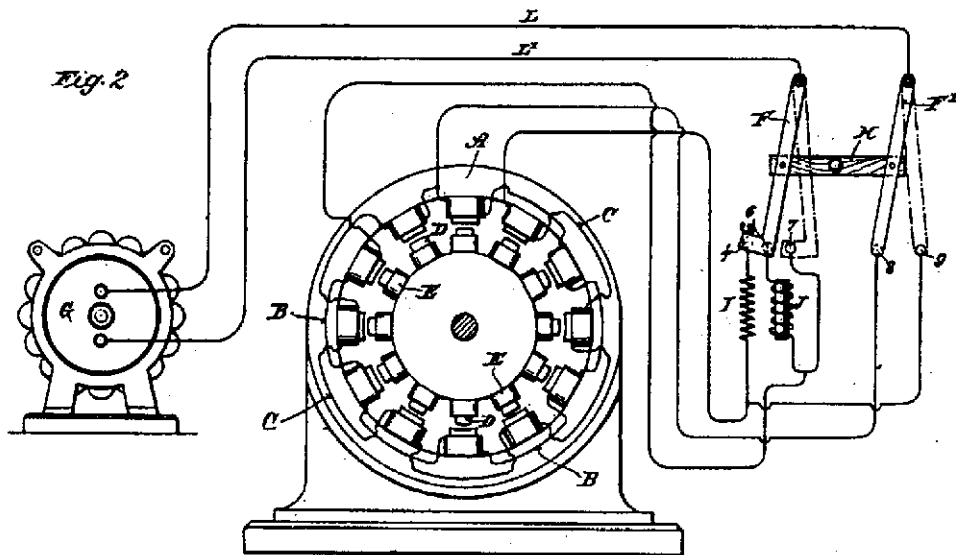
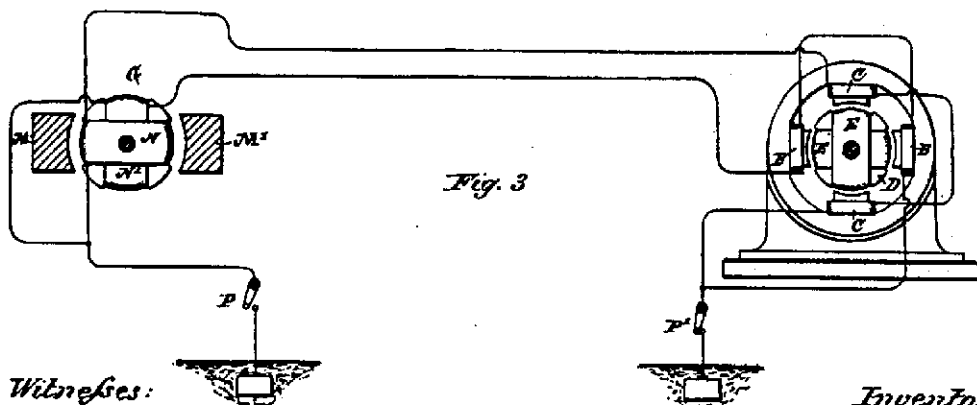


Fig. 3



Witnesses:

Rapier & Nether
Circuit Hopkinson

Inventor,

Nikola Tesla

by

Duncan, Curtis & Page

Attorneys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

ELECTRO-MAGNETIC MOTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 405,858, dated June 25, 1889.

Application filed January 8, 1889. Serial No. 295,745. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, a subject of the Emperor of Austria, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Electro-Magnetic Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

In order to define more clearly the relations which the motor forming the subject of my present application bears to others of the class to which it pertains, I will recapitulate briefly the forms of alternating-current motors invented by me and described more in detail in my prior patents and applications. Of these there are two principal types or forms: first, those containing two or more energizing-circuits through which are caused to pass alternating currents differing from one another in phase to an extent sufficient to produce a continuous progression or shifting of the poles or points of greatest magnetic effect, in obedience to which the movable element of the motor is maintained in rotation; second, those containing poles or parts of different magnetic susceptibility, which under the energizing influence of the same current or two currents coinciding in phase will exhibit differences in their magnetic periods or phases. In the first class of motors the torque is due to the magnetism established in different portions of the motor by currents from the same or from independent sources, and exhibiting time differences in phase. In the second class the torque results from the energizing effects of a current upon parts of the motor which differ in magnetic susceptibility—in other words, parts which respond to the same relative degree to the action of a current, not simultaneously, but after different intervals of time. In my present invention, however, the torque, instead of being solely the result of a time difference in the magnetic periods or phases of the poles or attractive parts to whatever cause due, is produced by an angular displacement of the parts which, though movable with respect to

one another, are magnetized simultaneously, or approximately so, by the same currents. This principle of operation I have embodied practically in a motor in which I obtain the necessary angular displacement between the points of greatest magnetic attraction in the two elements of the motor—the armature and field—by the direction of the lamination of the magnetic cores of said elements, and the best means of accomplishing this result of which I am at present aware I have shown in the accompanying drawings.

Figure 1 is a side view of the motor with a portion of its armature-core exposed. Fig. 2 is an end or edge view of the same. Fig. 3 is a central cross-section of the same, the armature being shown mainly in elevation.

Let A A designate two plates built up of thin sections or laminæ of soft iron insulated more or less from one another and held together by bolts a or any other suitable means and secured to a base B. The inner faces of these plates contain recesses or grooves in which a coil or coils D are secured obliquely to the direction of the laminations. Within the coils D is a disk E, preferably composed of a spirally-wound iron wire or ribbon or a series of concentric rings and mounted on a shaft F, having bearings in the plates A A. Such a device when acted upon by an alternating current is capable of rotation and constitutes a motor, the operation of which I explain in the following manner: A current or current-pulse traversing the coils D tends to magnetize the cores A A and E, all of which are within the influence of the magnetic field of the coils. The poles thus established would naturally lie in the same line at right angles to the coils D, but in the plates A they are deflected by reason of the direction of the laminations and appear at or near the extremities of said plates. In the disk, however, where these conditions are not present, the poles or points of greatest attraction are on a line at right angles to the plane of the coils; hence there will be a torque established by this angular displacement of the poles or magnetic lines, which starts the disk in rotation, the magnetic lines of the armature and field tending toward a position of paral-

ielism. This rotation is continued and maintained by the reversals of the current in coils D D, which change alternately the polarity of the field-cores A A. This rotary tendency or effect will be greatly increased by winding the disk with conductors G, closed upon themselves and having a radial direction, whereby the magnetic intensity of the poles of the disk will be greatly increased by the energizing effect of the currents induced in the coils G by the alternating currents in coils D. The plan of winding and the principle of operation have been fully explained in my patent, No. 382,279, of May 1, 1888.

The cores of the disk and field may or may not be of different magnetic susceptibility—that is to say, they may both be of the same kind of iron, so as to be magnetized at approximately the same instant by the coils D; or one may be of soft iron and the other of hard, in order that a certain time may elapse between the periods of their magnetization. In either case rotation will be produced; but unless the disk is provided with the closed energizing-coils it is desirable that the above-described difference of magnetic susceptibility be utilized to assist in its rotation.

The cores of the field and armature may be made in various ways, as will be well understood, it being only requisite that the laminations in each be in such direction as to secure the necessary angular displacement of the points of greatest attraction. Moreover, since the disk may be considered as made up of an infinite number of radial arms, it is obvious that what is true of a disk holds, under well-understood conditions, for many other forms of armature, and my invention in this respect is in no sense limited to the specific form of armature shown.

It will be understood that the specific ways of carrying out this invention are almost without number, and that, therefore, I do not limit myself to the precise form of motor which I have herein shown.

I believe that I am the first to produce rotation of an armature, at least such as could be utilized for any general or practicable purposes, by means of an alternating current passing through a single coil or several coils acting as one, and which have a direct magnetizing effect upon the cores of both armature and field, and this I claim in its broadest sense.

I further believe that I am the first to in-

part directly, by means of an alternating current, magnetism to the cores of the two elements of a motor, and by the direction of the lamination of one or both of the same to produce an angular displacement of the poles or lines of magnetic force of the cores, respectively.

What I therefore claim is—

1. An electro-magnetic motor consisting of a field-magnet, a rotary armature, and a single coil adapted to be connected to a source of alternating currents and to impart magnetism to both the armature and the field-magnet with angular displacement of the maximum points, as set forth.

2. In an electro-magnetic motor, the combination, with a coil adapted to be connected with a source of alternating currents, of a field-magnet and rotary armature the cores of which are in such relation to the coil as to be energized thereby and subdivided or laminated in such manner as to produce an angular displacement of their poles or the magnetic lines therein, as set forth.

3. In an electro-magnetic motor, the combination, with a coil adapted to be connected with a source of alternating currents, of field-magnets with laminations lying obliquely to the plane of said coil and a circular or disk armature mounted to rotate between the field-magnets, both field and armature being under the magnetizing influence of the coil, as set forth.

4. In an electro-magnetic motor, the combination, with a coil adapted to be connected with a source of alternating currents, of field-magnets with laminations lying obliquely to the plane of the coil and a circular or disk armature with spiral or concentric laminations mounted between the field-magnets, both field and armature being under the magnetizing influence of the coil, as set forth.

5. In an electro-magnetic motor, the combination, with a coil adapted to be connected to a source of alternating currents, of a field-magnet and a rotary armature with closed coils thereon, both the field and the armature being under the magnetizing influence of said coil and laminated to produce an angular displacement of the poles of the two cores.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

EDWARD T. EVANS,
GEORGE N. MONRO.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

METHOD OF ELECTRICAL POWER TRANSMISSION.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 405,859, dated June 25, 1889.

Application filed March 14, 1889. Serial No. 303,251. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Methods of Electrical Power Transmission, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawing accompanying and forming a part of the same.

This application is for a specific method of transmitting power electrically, shown and described in, and covered broadly by the claims of, an application filed by me February 18, 1889, No. 300,220.

As is well known, certain forms of alternating-current machines have the property, when connected in circuit with an alternating-current generator, of running as a motor in synchronism therewith; but, while the alternating current will run the motor after it has attained a rate of speed synchronous with that of the generator, it will not start it; hence, in all instances heretofore where these "synchronizing motors," as they are termed, have been run, some means have been employed to bring the motors up to synchronism with the generator, or approximately so, before the alternating current of the generator is applied to drive them. In some instances mechanical appliances have been utilized for this purpose. In others special and complicated forms of motor have been constructed.

My present invention is an improvement in methods of operating these motors and involves a new and improved plan of bringing the motor up to the proper rate of speed, that it may be run in synchronism with the generator.

The expression "synchronism with the generator" is used herein in its ordinary acceptation—that is to say, a motor is said to synchronize with the generator when it preserves a certain relative speed determined by its number of poles and the number of alternations produced per revolution of the generator. Its actual speed, therefore, may be faster or slower than that of the generator, but it is said to be synchronous so long as it preserves the same relative speed.

In carrying out my present invention I construct a generator with two coils or sets of coils and a motor with corresponding energizing coils or sets of coils. By means of two line-wires one terminal of each generator-coil or set of coils is connected to one terminal of its corresponding motor-coil or set of coils, while the opposite terminals of the generator-coils are joined together and likewise those of the motor.

To start the motor I establish temporarily an electrical connection between the points of connection between the coils in the generator and those in the motor, so that the system becomes an ordinary double-circuit system identical with that described in my patent, No. 390,413, of October 2, 1888, except that the generator and motor are constructed in any well-known way with a strong tendency to synchronize. When by this plan of connection the motor has attained the desired speed, the earth-connection is severed, by which means the system becomes an ordinary single-circuit synchronizing system.

In the drawing I have illustrated this method by a diagram.

Let G represent an ordinary alternating-current generator having four field-poles A, permanently or artificially magnetized, and an armature wound with two coils C connected together in series.

Let M represent an alternating-current motor with, say, four poles D, the coils on which are connected in pairs and the pairs connected in series. The motor-armature should have polar projections and closed coils E.

From the common joint or union between the two coils or sets of coils of both the generator and motor an earth-connection F is established, while the terminals or ends of the said coils or circuits which they form are connected to the line-conductors H H.

Assuming that the motor is a synchronizing motor, or one that has the capability of running in synchronism with the generator, but not of starting, it may be started by the above-described plan by closing the ground-connection from both generator and motor. The system thus becomes one with a two-circuit generator and motor, the ground forming a common return for the currents in the two

wires H H. When by this arrangement of circuits the motor is brought to speed, the ground-connection is broken between the generator or motor or both and ground, switches K K being employed for this purpose. The motor then runs as a synchronizing motor.

This system is capable of various useful applications which it is not necessary to describe in detail; but it will be enough to say that the convertibility of the system from double circuit to single circuit is a feature in itself of great value and utility.

I do not wish to be understood as confining myself to the precise arrangement or order of connections herein set forth, as these may be obviously varied in many respects.

What I claim is—

1. The method of operating synchronizing

motors herein described, which consists in electrically connecting intermediate points of the inducing-circuit of the generator and the energizing-circuit of the motor until the motor has reached a desired speed and then interrupting such connection, as set forth.

2. The method herein described of starting or operating synchronizing motors, which consists in electrically connecting intermediate points of the inducing-circuit of the generator and the energizing-circuit of the motor to earth until the motor has reached the desired speed and then interrupting either or both of the ground-connections, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

EDWARD T. EVANS,
E. C. UPSTILL.

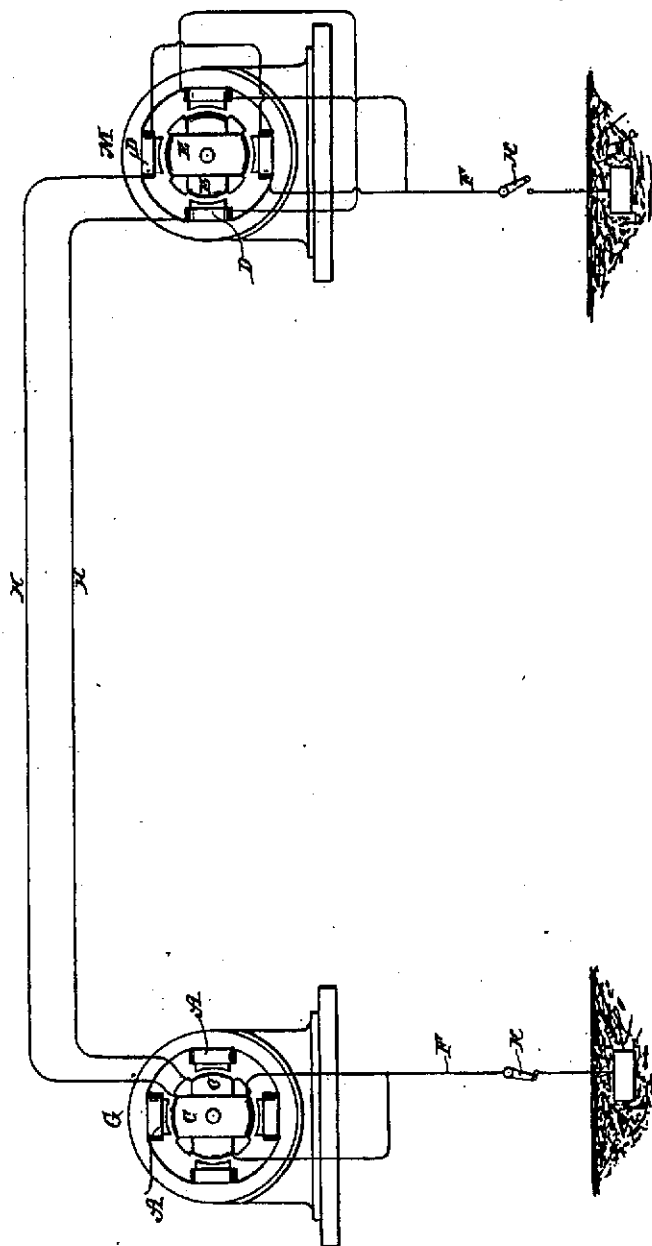
(No Model.)

N. TESLA.

METHOD OF ELECTRICAL POWER TRANSMISSION.

No. 405,859.

Patented June 25, 1889.



Witnesses:

Raphael M. Mott

Robt. F. Gaylord

Inventor

Nikola Tesla

By

Duncan, Curtis & Page.

Attorney.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR OF TWO-THIRDS TO CHARLES F. PECK, OF ENGLEWOOD, NEW JERSEY, AND ALFRED S. BROWN, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

DYNAMO-ELECTRIC MACHINE.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 406,968, dated July 16, 1889.

Application filed March 23, 1889. Serial No. 304,498. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, a subject of the Emperor of Austria, and a resident of New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Dynamo or Magneto Electric Machines, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the accompanying drawings.

This invention relates to that class of electrical generators known as "unipolar," in which a disk or cylindrical conductor is mounted between magnetic poles adapted to produce an approximately-uniform field. In the first-named or disk armature machines the currents induced in the rotating conductor flow from the center to periphery, or conversely, according to the direction of rotation or the lines of force as determined by the signs of the magnetic poles, and these currents are taken off usually by connections or brushes applied to the disk at points on its periphery and near its center. In the case of the cylindrical armature-machine the currents developed in the cylinder are taken off by brushes applied to the sides of the cylinder at its ends.

In order to develop economically an electro-motive force available for practicable purposes, it is necessary either to rotate the conductor at a very high rate of speed or to use a disk of large diameter or cylinder of great length; but in either case it becomes difficult to secure and maintain a good electrical connection between the collecting-brushes and the conductor, owing to the high peripheral speed.

It has been proposed to couple two or more disks together in series with the object of obtaining a higher electro-motive force; but with the connections heretofore used and using other conditions of speed and dimension of disk necessary to securing good practicable results this difficulty is still felt to be a serious obstacle to the use of this kind of generator. These objections I have sought to avoid; and for this purpose I construct a machine with two fields, each having a rotary conductor

mounted between its poles, but the same principle is involved in the case of both forms of machine above described, and as I prefer to use the disk form I shall confine the description herein to that machine. The disks are formed with flanges, after the manner of pulleys, and are connected together by flexible conducting bands or belts.

I prefer to construct the machine in such manner that the direction of magnetism or order of the poles in one field of force is opposite to that in the other, so that rotation of the disks in the same direction develops a current in one from center to circumference and in the other from circumference to center. Contacts applied therefore to the shafts upon which the disks are mounted form the terminals of a circuit the electro-motive force in which is the sum of the electro-motive forces of the two disks.

I would call attention to the obvious fact that if the direction of magnetism in both fields be the same the same result as above will be obtained by driving the disks in opposite directions and crossing the connecting-belts. In this way the difficulty of securing and maintaining good contact with the peripheries of the disks is avoided and a cheap and durable machine made which is useful for many purposes—such as for an exciter for alternating-current generators, for a motor, and for any other purpose for which dynamo-machines are used.

The specific construction of the machine which I have just generally described I have illustrated in the accompanying drawings, in which—

Figure 1 is a side view, partly in section, of my improved machine. Fig. 2 is a vertical section of the same at right angles to the shafts.

In order to form a frame with two fields of force, I cast a support A with two pole-pieces B B' integral with it. To this I join by bolts E a casting D, with two similar and corresponding pole-pieces C C'. The pole-pieces B B' are wound or connected to produce a field of force of given polarity, and the pole-pieces C C' are wound or connected to produce a

field of opposite polarity. The driving-shafts F G pass through the poles and are journaled in insulating-bearings in the casting A D, as shown.

5 H K are the disks or generating-conductors. They are composed of copper, brass, or iron and are keyed or secured to their respective shafts. They are provided with broad peripheral flanges J. It is of course obvious that
10 the disks may be insulated from their shafts, if so desired. A flexible metallic belt L is passed over the flanges of the two disks, and, if desired, may be used to drive one of the disks. I prefer, however, to use this belt
15 merely as a conductor, and for this purpose may use sheet steel, copper, or other suitable metal. Each shaft is provided with a driving-pulley M, by which power is imparted from a counter-shaft.

20 N N are the terminals. For sake of clearness they are shown as provided with springs P, that bear upon the ends of the shafts. This machine, if self-exciting, would have copper bands around its poles, or conductors of any
25 kind—such as the wires shown in the drawings—may be used.

I do not limit my invention to the special construction herein shown. For example, it is not necessary that the parts be constructed

in one machine or that the materials and proportions herein given be strictly followed. Furthermore, it is evident that the conducting belt or band may be composed of several smaller bands and that the principle of connection herein described may be applied to
35 more than two machines.

What I claim is—

1. An electrical generator consisting of the combination, with two rotary conductors mounted in unipolar fields, of a flexible conductor or belt passing around the peripheries
40 of said conductors, as herein set forth.

2. The combination, with two rotary conducting-disks having peripheral flanges and mounted in unipolar fields, of a flexible conducting belt or band passing around the
45 flanges of both disks, as set forth.

3. The combination of independent sets of field-magnets adapted to maintain unipolar fields, conducting-disks mounted to rotate in
50 said fields, independent driving mechanism for each disk, and a flexible conducting belt or band passing around the peripheries of the disks, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

PARKER W. PAGE,
ROBT. F. GAYLORD.

(No Model.)

N. TESLA.
DYNAMO ELECTRIC MACHINE.

No. 406,968.

Patented July 16, 1889.

Fig. 1

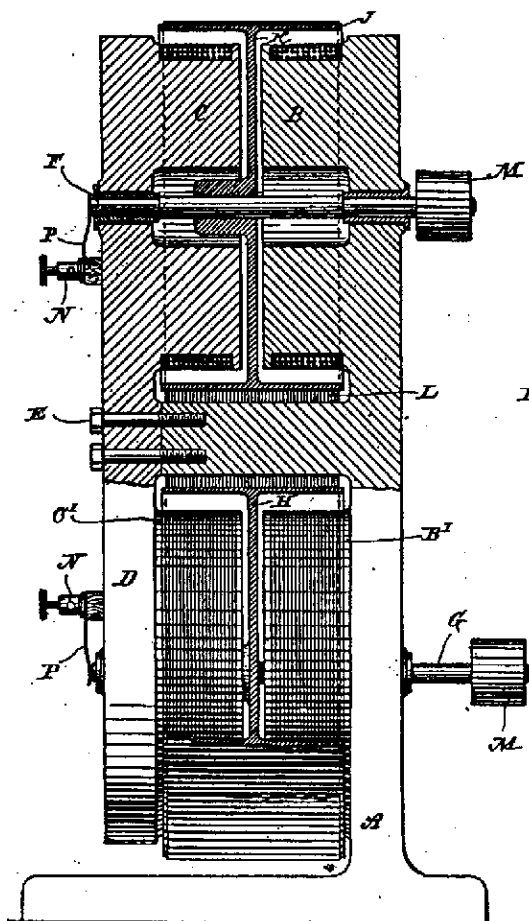
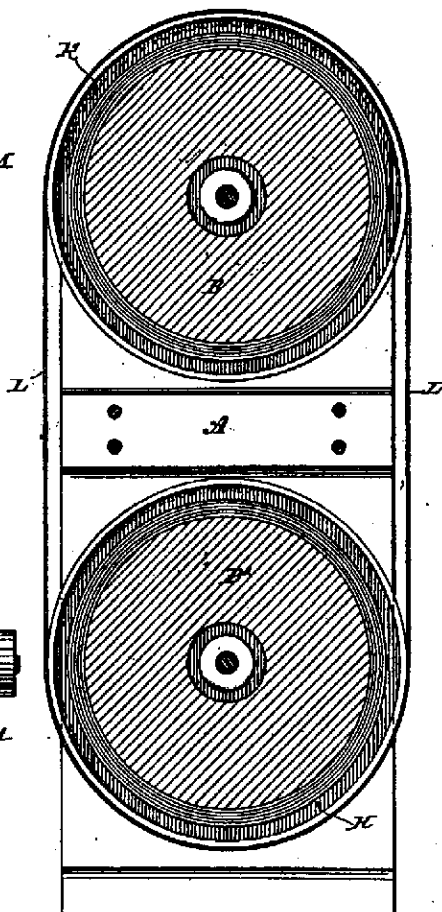


Fig. 2



Witnesses:
Robt. F. Gaylord
Ernest Hopkinson

Inventor
Nikola Tesla
by
Duncan, Curtis & Page.
Attorneys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR OF TWO-THIRDS TO ALFRED S. BROWN, OF SAME PLACE, AND CHARLES F. PECK, OF ENGLEWOOD, NEW JERSEY.

METHOD OF OBTAINING DIRECT FROM ALTERNATING CURRENTS.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 413,353, dated October 22, 1889.

Application filed June 12, 1889. Serial No. 314,060. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, temporarily residing in New York city, in the State of New York, have invented a certain new and useful Improvement in Methods of Obtaining Direct from Alternating Currents, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

In nearly all the more important industrial applications of electricity the current is produced by dynamo-electric machines driven by power, in the coils of which the currents developed are primarily in reverse directions or alternating; but as very many electrical devices and systems require direct currents, it has been usual to correct the current alternations by means of a commutator, instead of taking them off directly from the generating-coils.

The superiority of alternating-current machines in all cases where their currents can be used to advantage renders their employment very desirable, as they may be much more economically constructed and operated; and the object of this my present invention is to provide means for directing or converting at will at one or more points in a circuit alternating into direct currents.

Stated as broadly as I am able to express it, my invention consists in obtaining direct from alternating currents, or in directing the waves of an alternating current so as to produce direct or substantially direct currents by developing or producing in the branches of a circuit including a source of alternating currents, either permanently or periodically, and by electric, electro-magnetic, or magnetic agencies, manifestations of energy, or what may be termed active resistances of opposite electrical character, whereby the currents or current-waves of opposite sign will be diverted through different circuits, those of one sign passing over one branch and those of opposite sign over another.

I may consider herein only the case of a circuit divided into two paths, inasmuch as any further subdivision involves merely an

extension of the general principle. Selecting, then, any circuit through which is flowing an alternating current, I divide such circuit at any desired point into two branches or paths. In one of these paths I insert some device to create an electro-motive force counter to the waves or impulses of current of one sign and a similar device in the other branch which opposes the waves of opposite sign. Assume, for example, that these devices are batteries, primary or secondary, or continuous-current dynamo-machines. The waves or impulses of opposite direction composing the main current have a natural tendency to divide between the two branches; but by reason of the opposite electrical character or effect of the two branches one will offer an easy passage to a current of a certain direction, while the other will offer a relatively high resistance to the passage of the same current. The result of this disposition is, that the waves of current of one sign will, partly or wholly, pass over one of the paths or branches, while those of the opposite sign pass over the other. There may thus be obtained from an alternating current two or more direct currents without the employment of any commutator such as it has been heretofore regarded as necessary to use. The current in either branch may be used in the same way and for the same purposes as any other direct current—that is, it may be made to charge secondary batteries, energize electro-magnets, or for any other analogous purpose.

In the drawings I have illustrated some of the various ways in which I may carry out this invention.

The several figures are diagrammatic in character, and will be described in detail in their order.

Figure 1 represents a plan of directing the alternating currents by means of devices purely electrical in character. Figs. 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7 are diagrams illustrative of other ways of carrying out the invention, which will be hereinafter more particularly described.

In Fig. 1, A designates a generator of alternating currents, and B B the main or line circuit therefrom. At any given point in

this circuit at or near which it is desired to obtain direct currents I divide the circuit B into two paths or branches C D. In each of these branches I place an electrical generator, which for the present we will assume produces direct or continuous currents. The direction of the current thus produced is opposite in one branch to that of the current in the other branch, or, considering the two branches as forming a closed circuit, the generators E F are connected up in series therein, one generator in each part or half of the circuit. The electro-motive force of the current sources E and F may be equal to or higher or lower than the electro-motive forces in the branches C D or between the points X and Y of the circuit B B. If equal, it is evident that current-waves of one sign will be opposed in one branch and assisted in the other to such an extent that all the waves of one sign will pass over one branch and those of opposite sign over the other. If, on the other hand, the electro-motive force of the sources E F be lower than that between X and Y, the currents in both branches will be alternating, but the waves of one sign will preponderate. One of the generators or sources of current E or F may be dispensed with; but it is preferable to employ both, if they offer an appreciable resistance, as the two branches will be thereby better balanced. The translating or other devices to be acted upon by the current are designated by the letters G, and they are inserted in the branches C D in any desired manner; but in order to better preserve an even balance between the branches due regard should be had to the number and character of the devices, as will be well understood.

Figs. 2, 3, 4, and 5 illustrate what may be termed "electro-magnetic" devices for accomplishing a similar result—that is to say, instead of producing directly by a generator an electro-motive force in each branch of the circuit, I may establish a field or fields of force and lead the branches through the same in such manner that an active opposition of opposite effect or direction will be developed therein by the passage or tendency to pass of the alternations of current. In Fig. 2, for example, A is the generator of alternating currents, B B the line-circuit, and C D the branches over which the alternating currents are directed. In each branch I include the secondary of a transformer or induction-coil, which, since they correspond in their functions to the batteries of the previous figure, I have designated by the letters E F. The primaries H H' of the induction-coils or transformers are connected either in parallel or series with a source of direct or continuous currents I, and the number of convolutions is so calculated for the strength of the current from I that the cores J J' will be saturated. The connections are such that the conditions in the two transformers are of opposite character—that is to say, the arrangement is such

that a current wave or impulse corresponding in direction with that of the direct current in one primary, as H, is of opposite direction to that in the other primary H'; hence it results that while one secondary offers a resistance or opposition to the passage through it of a wave of one sign the other secondary similarly opposes a wave of opposite sign. In consequence the waves of one sign will, to a greater or less extent, pass by way of one branch, while those of opposite sign in like manner pass over the other branch.

In lieu of saturating the primaries by a source of continuous current, I may include the primaries in the branches C D, respectively, and periodically short-circuit by any suitable mechanical devices—such as an ordinary revolving commutator—their secondaries. It will be understood of course that the rotation and action of the commutator must be in synchronism or in proper accord with the periods of the alternations in order to secure the desired results. Such a disposition I have represented diagrammatically in Fig. 3. Corresponding to the previous figures, A is the generator of alternating currents, B B the line, and C D the two branches for the direct currents. In branch C are included two primary coils E E', and in branch D are two similar primaries F F'. The corresponding secondaries for these coils and which are on the same subdivided cores J or J' are in circuits the terminals of which connect to opposite segments K K' and L L', respectively, of a commutator. Brushes b b bear upon the commutator and alternately short-circuit the plates K and K' and L and L' through a connection c. It is obvious that either the magnets and commutator or the brushes may revolve.

The operation will be understood from a consideration of the effects of closing or short-circuiting the secondaries. For example, if at the instant when a given wave of current passes one set of secondaries be short-circuited, nearly all the current flows through the corresponding primaries; but the secondaries of the other branch being open-circuited the self-induction in the primaries is highest, and hence little or no current will pass through that branch. If, as the current alternates, the secondaries of the two branches are alternately short-circuited, the result will be that the currents of one sign pass over one branch and those of the opposite sign over the other. The disadvantages of this arrangement, which would seem to result from the employment of sliding contacts, are in reality very slight, inasmuch as the electro-motive force of the secondaries may be made exceedingly low, so that sparking at the brushes is avoided.

Fig. 4 is a diagram, partly in section, of another plan of carrying out the invention. The circuit B in this case is divided, as before, and each branch includes the coils of both the field and revolving armatures of two induction devices. The armatures O P are prefer-

ably mounted on the same shaft, and are adjusted relatively to one another in such manner that when the self-induction in one branch, as C, is maximum in the other branch D it is minimum. The armatures are rotated in synchronism with the alternations from the source A. The winding or position of the armature-coils is such that a current in a given direction passed through both armatures would establish in one poles similar to those in the adjacent poles of the field and in the other poles unlike the adjacent field-poles, as indicated by *n n s s* in the drawings. If the like poles are presented, as shown in circuit D, the condition is that of a closed secondary upon a primary, or the position of least inductive resistance; hence a given alternation of current will pass mainly through D. A half-revolution of the armatures produces an opposite effect, and the succeeding current impulse passes through C. Using this figure as an illustration, it is evident that the fields N M may be permanent magnets or independently excited and the armatures O P driven, as in the present case, so as to produce alternate currents, which will set up alternately impulses of opposite direction in the two branches D C, which in such case would include the armature-circuits and translating devices only.

In Fig. 5 a plan alternative with that shown in Fig. 3 is illustrated. In the previous case illustrated each branch C and D contained one or more primary coils, the secondaries of which were periodically short-circuited in synchronism with the alternations of current from the main source A, and for this purpose a commutator was employed. The latter may, however, be dispensed with and an armature with a closed coil substituted.

Referring to Fig. 5, in one of the branches, as C, are two coils M', wound on laminated cores, and in the other branches D are similar coils N'. A subdivided or laminated armature O', carrying a closed coil R', is rotatably supported between the coils M' N', as shown. In the position shown—that is, with the coil R' parallel with the convolutions of the primaries N' M'—practically the whole current will pass through branch D, because the self-induction in coils M' M' is maximum. If, therefore, the armature and coil be rotated at a proper speed relatively to the periods or alternations of the source A, the same results are obtained as in the case of Fig. 3.

Fig. 6 is an instance of what may be called, in distinction to the others, a "magnetic" means of securing the results arrived at in this invention. V and W are two strong permanent magnets provided with armatures V' W', respectively. The armatures are made of thin laminae of soft iron or steel, and the amount of magnetic metal which they contain is so calculated that they will be fully or nearly saturated by the magnets. Around the armatures are coils E F, contained, respectively, in the circuits C and D. The

connections and electrical conditions in this case are similar to those in Fig. 2, except that the current source I of Fig. 2 is dispensed with and the saturation of the core of coils E F obtained from the permanent magnets.

In the illustrations heretofore given I have in each instance shown the two branches or paths containing the translating or induction devices as in derivation one to the other; but this is not always necessary. For example, in Fig. 7, A is an alternating-current generator; B B, the line wires or circuit. At any given point in the circuit I form two paths, as D D', and at another point two paths, as C C'. Either pair or group of paths is similar to the previous dispositions with the electrical source or induction device in one branch only, while the two groups taken together form the obvious equivalent of the cases in which an induction device or generator is included in both branches. In one of the paths, as D, are included the devices to be operated by the current. In the other branch, as D', is an induction device that opposes the current impulses of one direction and directs them through the branch D. So, also, in branch C are translating devices G, and in branch C' an induction device or its equivalent that diverts through C impulses of opposite direction to those diverted by the device in branch D'. I have also shown a special form of induction device for this purpose. J J' are the cores, formed with pole-pieces, upon which are wound the coils M N. Between these pole-pieces are mounted at right angles to one another the magnetic armatures O P, preferably mounted on the same shaft and designed to be rotated in synchronism with the alternations of current. When one of the armatures is in line with the poles or in the position occupied by armature P, the magnetic circuit of the induction device is practically closed; hence there will be the greatest opposition to the passage of a current through coils N N. The alternation will therefore pass by way of branch D. At the same time, the magnetic circuit of the other induction device being broken by the position of the armature O, there will be less opposition to the current in coils M, which will shunt the current from branch C. A reversal of the current being attended by a shifting of the armatures, the opposite effect is produced.

There are many other modifications of the means or methods of carrying out my invention; but I have not deemed it necessary herein to specifically refer to more than those described, as they involve the chief modifications of the plan. In all of these it will be observed that there is developed in one or all of the branches of a circuit from a source of alternating currents an active (as distinguished from a dead) resistance or opposition to the currents of one sign, for the purpose of diverting the currents of that sign through the other or another path, but per-

mitting the currents of opposite sign to pass without substantial opposition.

Whether the division of the currents or waves of current of opposite sign be effected with absolute precision or not is immaterial to my invention, since it will be sufficient if the waves are only partially diverted or directed, for in such case the preponderating influence in each branch of the circuit of the waves of one sign secures the same practical results in many if not all respects as though the current were direct and continuous.

An alternating and direct current have been combined so that the waves of one direction or sign were partially or wholly overcome by the direct current; but by this plan only one set of alternations are utilized, whereas by my system the entire current is rendered available. By obvious applications of this discovery I am enabled to produce a self-exciting alternating dynamo, or to operate direct-current meters on alternating-current circuit, or to run various devices—such as are lamps—by direct currents in the same circuit with incandescent lamps or other devices run by alternating currents.

It will be observed that if an intermittent counter or opposing force be developed in the branches of the circuit and of higher electromotive force than that of the generator an alternating current will result in each branch, with the waves of one sign preponderating, while a constantly or uniformly acting opposition in the branches of higher electromotive force than the generator would produce a pulsating current, which conditions would

be under some circumstances the equivalent to those I have previously described.

What I claim as my invention is—

1. The method herein set forth of obtaining direct from alternating currents, which consists in developing or producing in one branch of a circuit from an alternating-current source an active resistance to the current impulses of one direction, whereby the said currents or waves of current will be diverted or directed through another branch.

2. The method of obtaining direct from alternating currents, which consists in dividing the path of an alternating current into branches, and developing in one of said branches, either permanently or periodically, an electrical force or active resistance counter to or opposing the currents or current-waves of one sign, and in the other branch a force counter to or opposing the currents or current-waves of opposite sign, as set forth.

3. The method of obtaining direct from alternating currents, which consists in dividing the path of an alternating current into branches, establishing fields of force and leading the said branches through the said fields of force in such relation to the lines of force therein that the impulses of current of one direction will be opposed in one branch and those of opposite direction in the other, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

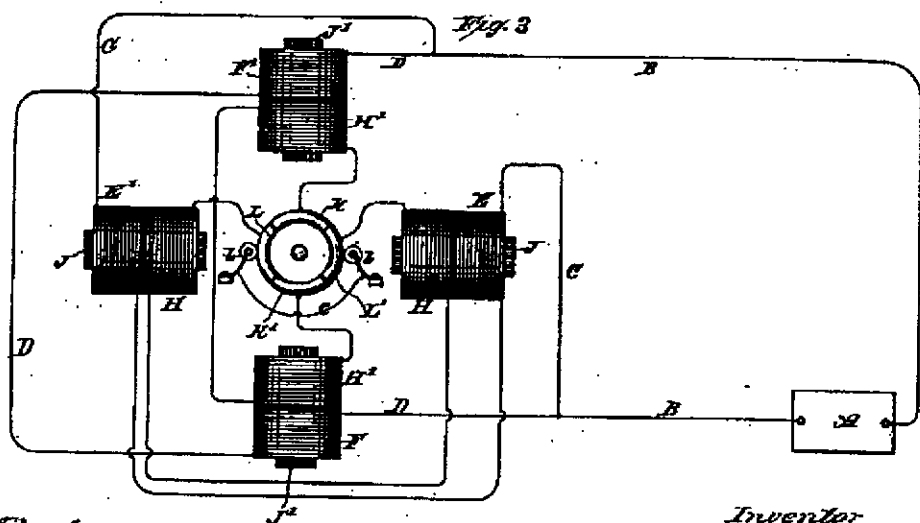
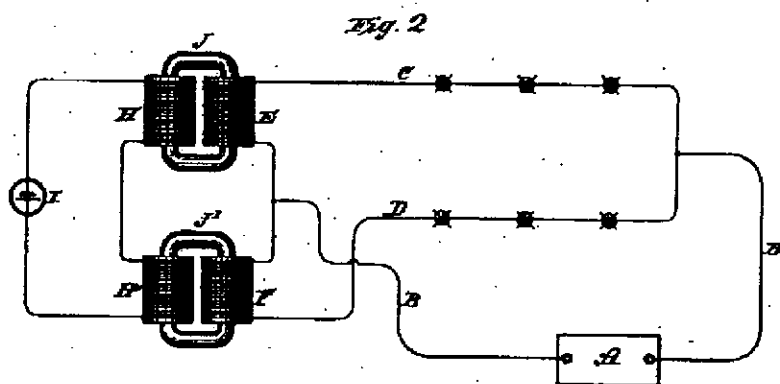
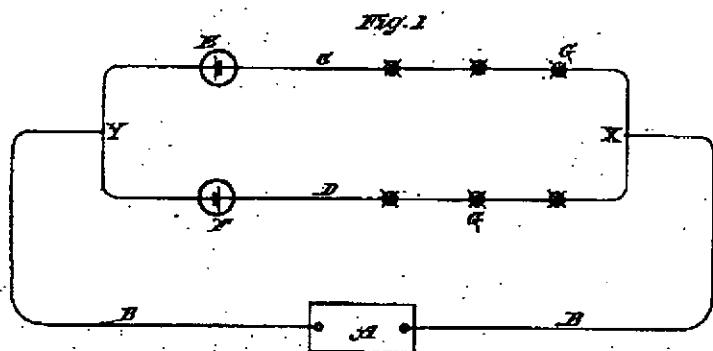
ROBT. F. GAYLORD,
F. B. MURPHY.

N. TESLA.

METHOD OF OBTAINING DIRECT FROM ALTERNATING CURRENTS.

No. 413,353.

Patented Oct. 22, 1889.



Witness:
 Raphael Ketner
 Robert F. Gaylord

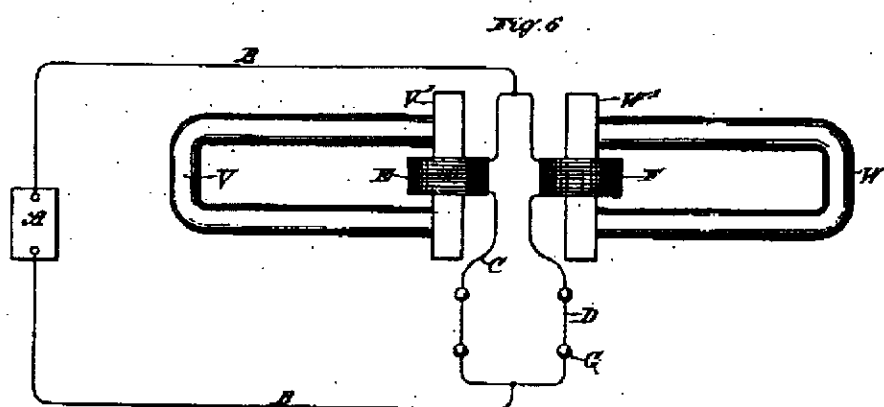
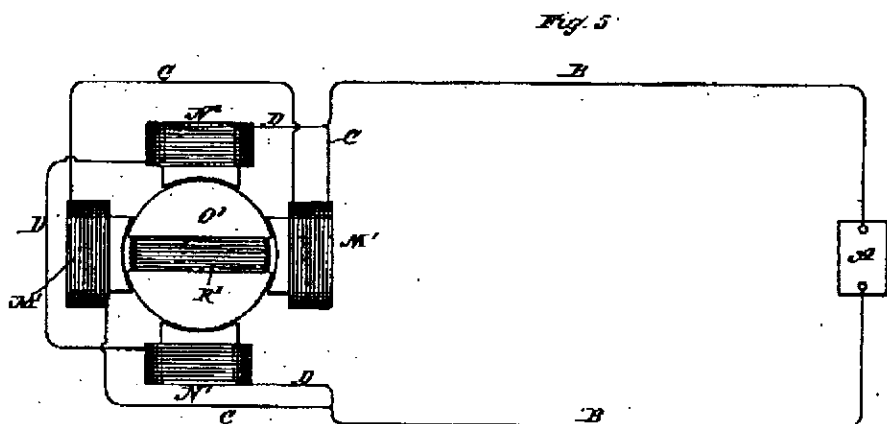
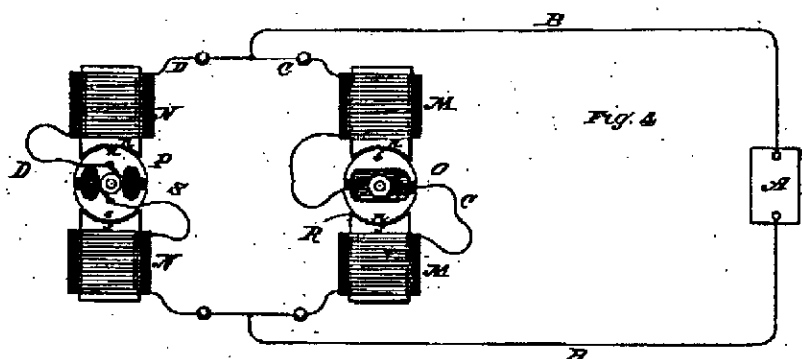
Inventor
 Nikola Tesla
 By
 Duncan, Curtis & Sage
 Attorneys.

N. TESLA.

METHOD OF OBTAINING DIRECT FROM ALTERNATING CURRENTS.

No. 413,353.

Patented Oct. 22, 1889.



Witnesses:

Harold H. H. H.
Frank H. H.

Inventor

Nikola Tesla

By

Duncan, Curtis & Page
Attorneys.

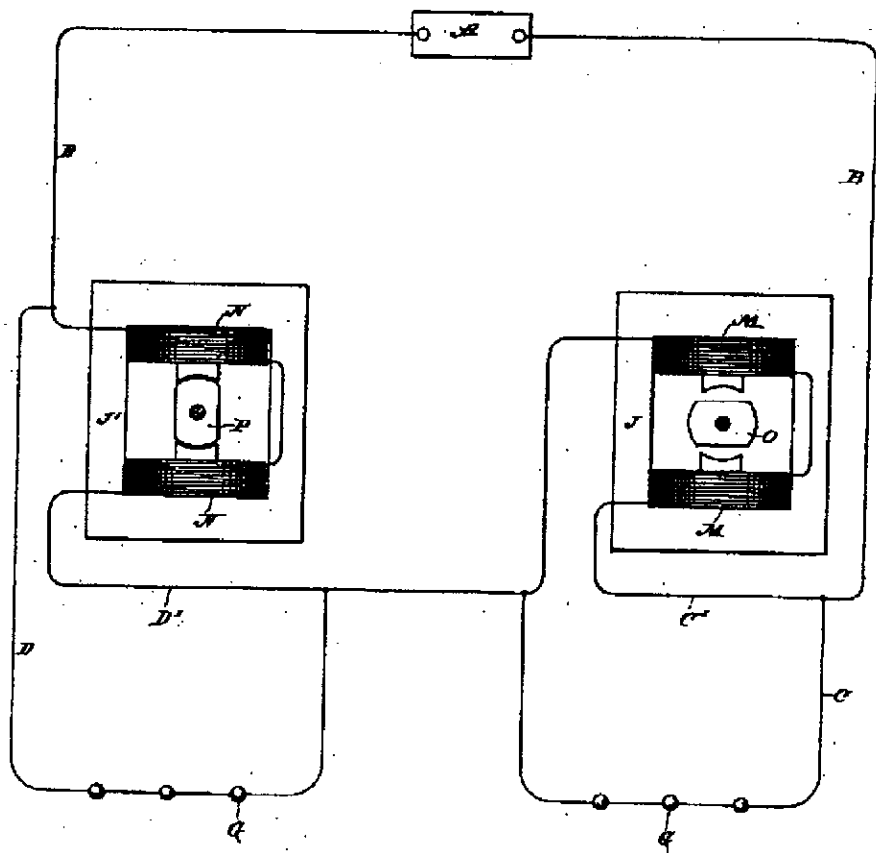
N. TESLA.

METHOD OF OBTAINING DIRECT FROM ALTERNATING CURRENTS.

No. 413,353.

Patented Oct. 22, 1889.

Fig. 7



Witnesses:

Karlail Nator
Frankl Harting

Inventor

Nikola Tesla

By

Duncan, Curtis & Page
Attorneys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

ELECTRO-MAGNETIC MOTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 418,191, dated December 3, 1889.

Application filed May 20, 1889. Serial No. 311,413. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Electro-Magnetic Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

This invention pertains to that class of electro-magnetic motors invented by me in which two or more independent energizing-circuits are employed, and through which alternating currents differing in phase are passed to produce the operation or rotation of the motor.

One of the general ways which I have followed in carrying out this invention is to produce practically independent currents differing primarily in phase and pass these through the motor-circuits. Another way is to produce a single alternating current, to divide it between the motor-circuits, and to effect artificially a lag in one of the said circuits or branches, as by giving to the circuits different self-inductive capacity, and in other ways. In the former case, in which the necessary difference of phase is primarily effected in the generation of currents, I have, in some instances, passed the currents through the energizing-coils of both elements of the motor—the field and armature; but I have made the discovery that a new and useful result is or may be obtained by doing this under the conditions hereinafter specified in the case of motors in which the lag, as above stated, is artificially secured. In this my present invention resides.

In illustration of the nature of this invention I shall refer to the accompanying drawings, in which—

Figures 1 to 6, inclusive, are diagrams of different ways in which the invention is or may be carried out; and Fig. 7, a side view of a form of motor which I have used for this purpose.

The diagrams in detail will be described separately.

A B in Fig. 1 indicate the two energizing-circuits of a motor; and C D two circuits on the armature. Circuit or coil A is connected

in series with circuit or coil C, and the two circuits B D are similarly connected. Between coils A and C is a contact-ring *e*, forming one terminal of the latter, and a brush *a*, forming one terminal of the former. A ring *d* and brush *c* similarly connect coils B and D. The opposite terminals of the field-coils connect to one binding-post *h* of the motor, and those of the armature-coils are similarly connected to the opposite binding-post *i* through a contact-ring *f* and brush *g*. Thus each motor-circuit while in derivation to the other includes one armature and one field-coil. These circuits are of different self-induction, and may be made so in various ways. For the sake of clearness I have shown in one of these circuits an artificial resistance R and in the other a self-induction coil S. When an alternating current is passed through this motor it divides between its two energizing-circuits. The higher self-induction of one circuit produces a greater retardation or lag in the current therein than in the other. The difference of phase between the two currents effects the rotation or shifting of the points of maximum magnetic effect that secures the rotation of the armature. In certain respects this plan of including both armature and field coils in circuit is a marked improvement. Such a motor has a good torque at starting; yet it has also considerable tendency to synchronism, owing to the fact that when properly constructed the maximum magnetic effects in both armature and field coincide—a condition which in the usual construction of these motors with closed armature-coils is not readily attained. The motor thus constructed exhibits, too, a better regulation of current from no load to load, and there is less difference between the apparent and real energy expended in running it. The true synchronous speed of this form of motor is that of the generator when both are alike—that is to say, if the number of the coils on the armature and on the field is x , the motor will run normally at the same speed as a generator driving it if the number of field-magnets or poles of the same be also x .

Fig. 2 shows a somewhat modified arrangement of circuits. There is in this case but one armature-coil E, the winding of which main-

tains effects corresponding to the resultant poles produced by the two field-circuits.

Fig. 3 represents a disposition in which both armature and field are wound with two sets of coils, all in multiple arc to the line or main circuit. The armature-coils are wound to correspond with the field-coils with respect to their self-induction. A modification of this plan is shown in Fig. 4—that is to say, the two field-coils and two armature-coils are in derivation to themselves and in series with one another. The armature-coils in this case, as in the previous figure, are wound for different self-induction to correspond with the field-coils.

Another modification is shown in Fig. 5. In this case only one armature-coil, as D, is included in the line-circuit, while the other, as C, is short-circuited.

In such a disposition as that shown in Fig. 2, or where only one armature-coil is employed, the torque on the start is somewhat reduced, while the tendency to synchronism is somewhat increased. In such a disposition, as shown in Fig. 5, the opposite conditions would exist. In both instances, however, there is the advantage of dispensing with one contact-ring.

In Fig. 5 the two field-coils and the armature-coil D are in multiple arc. In Fig. 6 this disposition is modified, coil D being shown in series with the two field-coils.

Fig. 7 is an outline of the general form of motor in which I have embodied this improve-

ment. The circuit-connections between the armature and field coils are made, as indicated in the previous figures, through brushes and rings, which are not shown.

In the above description I have made use of the terms "armature" and "field;" but it will be understood that these are in this case convertible terms, for what is true of the field is equally so of the armature, except that one is stationary, the other capable of rotation.

I do not claim in this application the method or means of operating a double-circuit motor by making its circuits of different self-induction or in any way retarding the phases of current in one circuit more than in another, having made these features subject of other applications; but

What I claim is—

1. In an alternating-current motor, the combination, with field-circuits of different self-inductive capacity, of corresponding armature-circuits electrically connected therewith, as set forth.

2. In an alternating-current motor, the combination, with independent field-coils of different self-induction, of independent armature-coils, one or more in circuit with the field-coils and the others short-circuited, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

ROBT. F. GAYLORD,
FRANK E. HARTLEY.

N. TESLA.
ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 416,191.

Patented Dec. 3, 1889.

Fig. 1

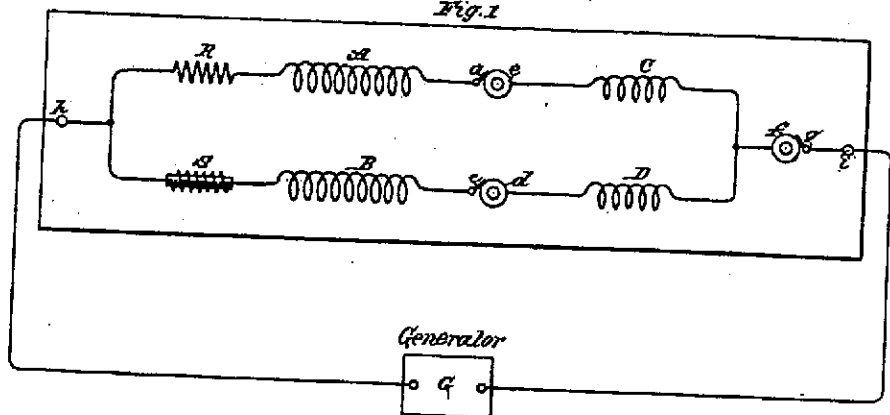


Fig. 2

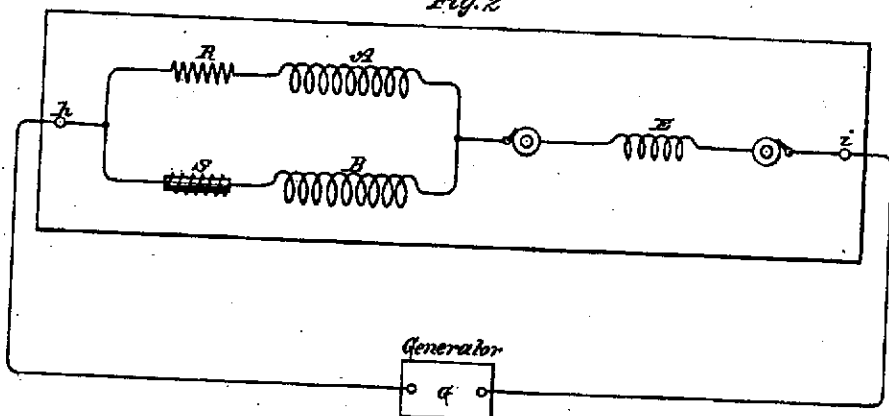
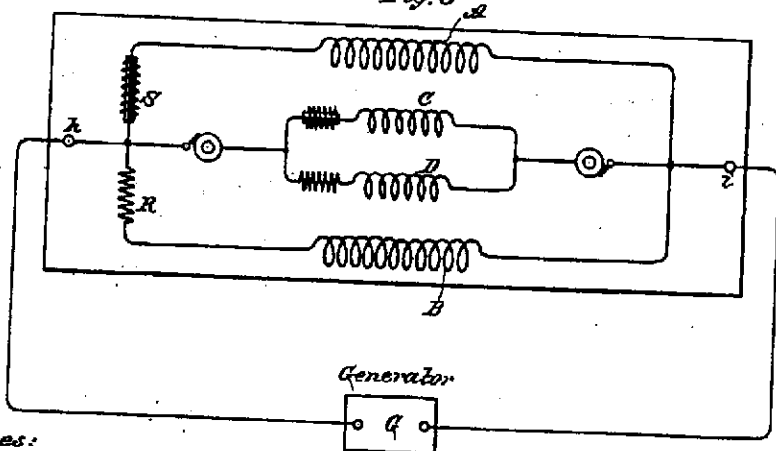


Fig. 3



Witnesses:

Gaaphael Netter

Robert F. Gaylord

Inventor

Nikola Tesla

By

Duncan, Curtis & Page,

Attorneys.

N. TESLA.
ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 416,191.

Patented Dec. 3, 1889.

Fig. 4

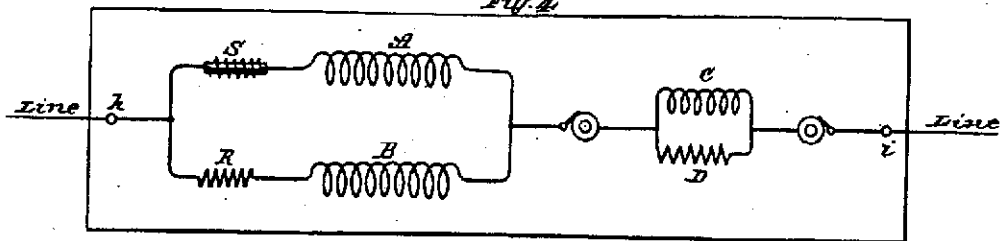


Fig. 5

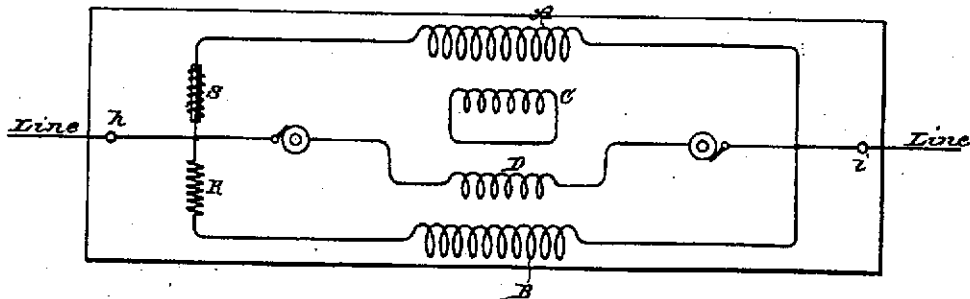


Fig. 6

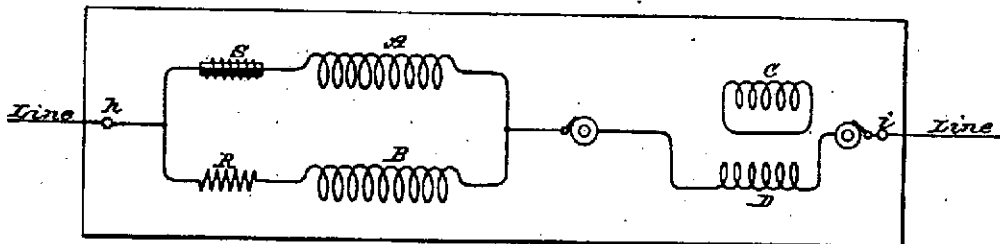
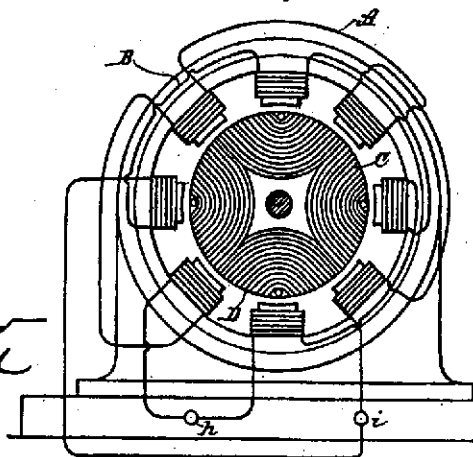


Fig. 7



Witnesses:
Hartwell Nettler
Robt. F. Gaylord

Inventor
Nikola Tesla
By Duncan,
Curtis & Page,
Attorneys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

METHOD OF OPERATING ELECTRO-MAGNETIC MOTORS.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 416,192, dated December 3, 1889.

Application filed May 20, 1889. Serial No. 311,414. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, and a resident of New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Methods of Operating Electro-Magnetic Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

In a patent granted to me April 16, 1889, No. 401,520, I have shown and described a method of starting and operating synchronizing motors which involved the transformation of the motor from a torque to a synchronizing motor. This I have heretofore done by a change of the circuit-connections, whereby on the start the poles or resultant attraction of the field-magnets of the motor were shifted or rotated by the action of the current until the motor reached synchronous speed, after which the poles were merely alternated. The present application is based upon another way of accomplishing this result, the main features being as follows: If an alternating current be passed through the field-coils only of a motor having two energizing-circuits of different self-induction and the armature-coils be short-circuited, the motor will have a strong torque, but little or no tendency to synchronism with the generator; but if the same current which energizes the field be passed also through the armature-coils the tendency to remain in synchronism is very considerably increased. This is due to the fact that the maximum magnetic effects produced in the field and armature more nearly coincide. This principle discovered by me I have utilized in the operation of motors. In other words, I construct a motor having independent field-circuits of different self-induction, which are joined in derivation to a source of alternating currents. The armature I wind with one or more coils, which are connected with the field-coils through contact rings and brushes, and around the armature-coils I arrange a shunt with means for opening or closing the same. In starting this motor I close the shunt around the armature-coils, which will therefore be in closed circuit. When the current is directed through the motor, it divides between the two circuits,

(it is not necessary to consider any case where there are more than two circuits used,) which, by reason of their different self-induction, secure a difference of phase between the two currents in the two branches that produces a shifting or rotation of the poles. By the alternations of current other currents are induced in the closed—or short-circuited—armature-coils and the motor has a strong torque. When the desired speed is reached, the shunt around the armature-coils is opened and the current directed through both armature and field coils. Under these conditions the motor has a strong tendency to synchronism.

In the drawings hereto annexed I have illustrated several modifications of the plan above set forth for operating motors. The figures are diagrams, and will be explained in their order.

Figure 1: A and B designate the field-coils of the motor. As the circuits including these coils are of different self-induction, I have represented this by a resistance-coil R in circuit with A, and a self-induction coil S in circuit with B. The same result may of course be secured by the winding of the coils. C is the armature-circuit, the terminals of which are rings *a b*. Brushes *c d* bear on these rings and connect with the line and field circuits. D is the shunt or short circuit around the armature. E is the switch therein. The operation of these devices I have stated above.

It will be observed that in such a disposition as is illustrated in Fig. 1, the field-circuits A and B being of different self-induction, there will always be a greater lag of the current in one than the other, and that, generally, the armature phases will not correspond with either, but with the resultant of both. It is therefore important to observe the proper rule in winding the armature. For instance, if the motor have eight poles—four in each circuit—there will be four resultant poles, and hence the armature-winding should be such as to produce four poles, in order to constitute a true synchronizing motor.

Fig 2: This diagram differs from the previous one only in respect to the order of connections. In the present case the armature-coil, instead of being in series with the field-

coils, is in multiple arc therewith. The armature-winding may be similar to that of the field—that is to say, the armature may have two or more coils wound or adapted for different self-induction and adapted, preferably, to produce the same difference of phase as the field-coils. On starting the motor the shunt is closed around both coils. This is shown in Fig. 3, in which the armature-coils are F G. To indicate their different electrical character, I have shown in circuit with them, respectively, the resistance R' and the self-induction coil S'. The two armature coils are in series with the field-coils and the same disposition of the shunt or short circuit D is used. It is of advantage in the operation of motors of this kind to construct or wind the armature in such manner that when short-circuited on the start it will have a tendency to reach a higher speed than that which synchronizes with the generator. For example, a given motor having, say, eight poles should run, with the armature-coil short-circuited, at two thousand revolutions per minute to bring it up to synchronism. It will generally happen, however, that this speed is not reached, owing to the fact that the armature and field currents do not properly correspond, so that when the current is passed through the armature (the motor not being quite up to synchronism) there is a liability that it would not "hold on," as it is termed. I therefore prefer to so wind or construct the motor that on the start, when the armature-coils are short-circuited, the motor will tend to reach a speed higher than the synchronous—as, for instance, double the latter. In such case the difficulty above alluded to is not felt, for the motor will always hold up to synchronism if the synchronous speed—in the case supposed of two thousand revolutions—is reached or passed. This may be accomplished in various ways; but for all practical purposes the following will suffice: I wind on the armature two sets of coils. On the start I short-circuit one only, thereby producing a number of poles on the armature, which will tend to run the speed up above the synchronous limit. When such limit is reached or passed, the current is directed through the other coil, which, by increasing the number of armature-poles, tends to maintain synchronism. In Fig. 4 such a disposition is shown. The motor having, say, eight poles contains two field-circuits A and B, of different self-induction. The armature has two coils F and G. The former is closed upon itself, the latter connected with the field and line through contact-rings a b, brushes c d, and a switch E. On the start the coil F alone is active and the motor tends to run at a speed above the synchronous; but when the coil G is connected to the circuit the number of armature-poles is increased, while the motor is made a true synchronous motor. This disposition has the advantage that the closed armature-circuit imparts to the motor torque when the speed falls off, but

at the same time the conditions are such that the motor comes out of synchronism more readily. To increase the tendency to synchronism, two circuits may be used on the armature, one of which is short-circuited on the start and both connected with the external circuit after the synchronous speed is reached or passed. This disposition is shown in Fig. 5. There are three contact-rings a b e and three brushes c d f, which connect the armature-circuits with the external circuit. On starting, the switch H is turned to complete the connection between one binding-post P and the field-coils. This short-circuits one of the armature-coils, as G. The other coil F is out of circuit and open. When the motor is up to speed, the switch H is turned back, so that the connection from binding-post P to the field-coils is through the coil G, and switch K is closed, thereby including coil F in multiple arc with the field-coils. Both armature-coils are thus active.

From the above-described instances it is evident that many other dispositions for carrying out the invention are possible.

I do not claim herein the method and means described and shown for operating a motor by producing artificially a difference of current phase in its independent energizing-circuits; nor do I claim, broadly, a motor having independent energizing-circuits of different self-induction and armature-circuits connected therewith, as these features are made subjects of other applications which I have filed.

What I claim is—

1. The method herein described of operating alternating-current motors having independent energizing-circuits, which consists in short-circuiting the armature circuit or circuits until the motor has reached or passed a synchronizing speed and then connecting said armature-circuits with the external circuit, as set forth.

2. The method of operating alternating-current motors having field-coils of different self-induction, which consists in directing alternating currents from an external source through the field-circuits only until the motor has reached a given speed and then directing said currents through both the field-circuits and one or more of the armature-circuits, as set forth.

3. The method of operating alternating-current motors having field-coils of different self-induction, which consists in directing alternating currents from an external source through the field-circuits and short-circuiting a part of the armature-circuits, and then when the motor has attained a given speed directing the alternating currents through both the field and one or more of the armature-circuits, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

ROBT. F. GAYLORD,
FRANK E. HARTLEY.

N. TESLA.

METHOD OF OPERATING ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTORS.

No. 416,192.

Patented Dec. 3, 1889.

Fig. 1

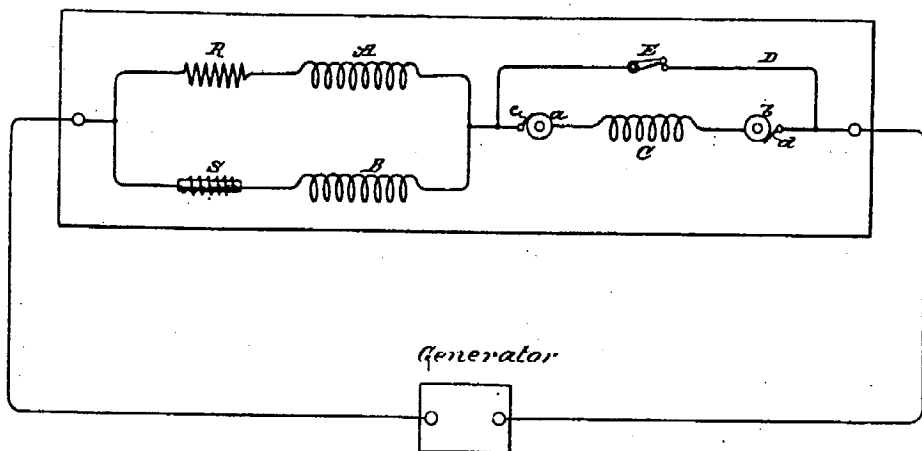


Fig. 2

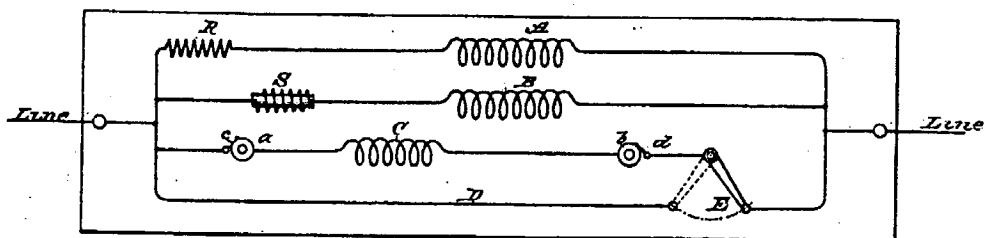
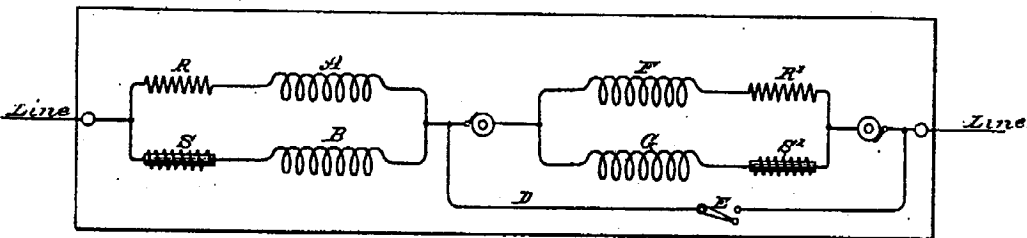


Fig. 3



Witnesses:

Rapfael Netter
Robt. F. Fay lord

Inventor

Nikola Tesla

By
Duncan, Curtis & Page
Attorneys.

N. TESLA.

METHOD OF OPERATING ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTORS.

No. 416,192.

Patented Dec. 3, 1889.

Fig. 4.

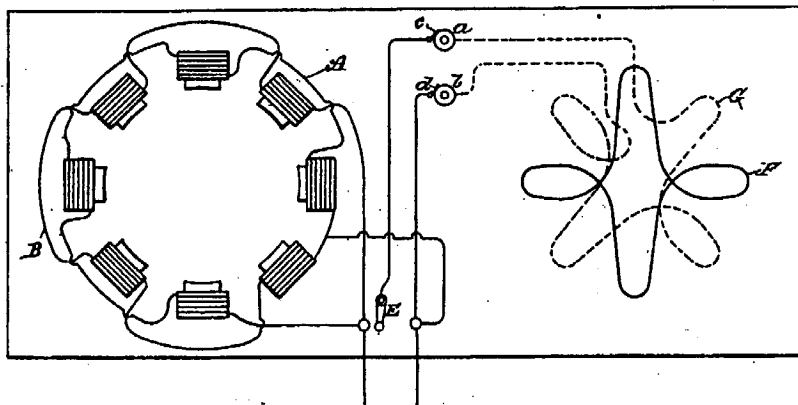
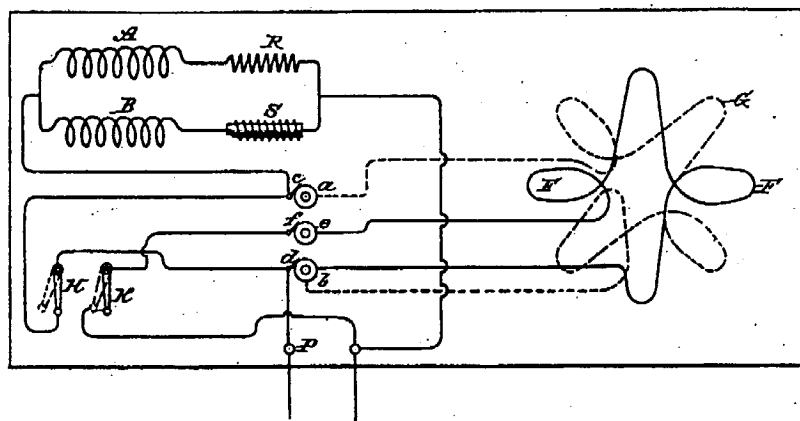


Fig. 5.



Witnesses:

Rapfael Nitter
Frank & Hartley

Inventor

Nikola Tesla

By
Duncan, Curtis & Page
Attorneys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

ELECTRO-MAGNETIC MOTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 416,193, dated December 3, 1889.

Application filed May 20, 1889. Serial No. 311,415. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Electro-Magnetic Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the accompanying drawings.

This invention relates to alternating-current motors of the general description invented by me, and in which two or more energizing-circuits are employed, through which alternating currents differing in phase are passed, with the result of producing a progressive shifting or rotation of the poles or points of maximum attractive effect.

In prior patents and applications I have shown and described various forms of motors of this kind. Among them are motors in which both energizing-circuits are electrically alike—that is to say, both have the same or approximately the same electrical resistance and self-induction—in the operation of which the alternating currents used are primarily of different phase. In others the difference of phase is artificially produced—as, for instance, in cases where the motor-circuits are of different resistance and self-induction, so that the same current divided between them will be retarded in one to a greater extent than in the other, and the requisite phase difference secured in this way. To this latter class generally my present invention relates.

The lag or rotation of the phases of an alternating current is directly proportional to the self-induction and inversely proportional to the resistance of the circuit through which the current flows. Hence, in order to secure the proper difference of phase between the two motor-circuits, it is desirable to make the self-induction in one much higher and the resistance much lower than the self-induction and resistance, respectively, in the other. At the same time the magnetic quantities of the two poles or sets of poles which the two circuits produce should be approximately equal. These requirements, which I have found to exist in motors of this kind, have led me to

the invention of a motor having the following general characteristics: The coils which are included in that energizing-circuit which is to have the higher self-induction I make of coarse wire, or a conductor of relatively low resistance, and I use the greatest possible length or number of turns. In the other set of coils I use a comparatively few turns of finer wire or a wire of higher resistance. Furthermore, in order to approximate the magnetic quantities of the poles excited by these coils, I use in the self-induction circuit cores much longer than those in the other or resistance circuit. I have shown in the drawings a motor embodying these features.

Figure 1 is a part-sectional view of the motor at right angles to the shaft. Fig. 2 is a diagram of the field-circuits.

In Fig. 2, let A represent the coils in one motor-circuit, and B those in the other. The circuit A is to have the higher self-induction. I therefore use a long length or a large number of turns of coarse wire in forming the coils of this circuit. For the circuit B, I use a smaller conductor, or a conductor of a higher resistance than copper, such as German silver or iron, and wind the coils with fewer turns. In applying these coils to a motor I build up a field-magnet of plates C, of iron or steel, secured together in the usual manner by bolts D. Each plate is formed with four (more or less) long cores E, around which is a space to receive the coil and an equal number of short projections F to receive the coils of the resistance-circuit. The plates are generally annular in shape, having an open space in the center for receiving the armature G, which I prefer to wind with closed coils. An alternating current divided between the two circuits is retarded as to its phases in the circuit A to a much greater extent than in the circuit B. By reason of the relative sizes and disposition of the cores and coils the magnetic effect of the poles E and F upon the armature closely approximate. These conditions are well understood and readily secured by one skilled in the art.

An important result secured by the construction herein shown of the motor is, that these coils which are designed to have the

higher self-induction are almost completely surrounded by iron, by which the retardation is considerably increased.

I do not claim herein, broadly, the method
5 and means of securing rotation by artificially producing a greater lag of the current in one motor-circuit than in the other, nor the use of poles or cores of different magnetic susceptibility, as these are features which I have
10 specially claimed in other applications filed by me.

What I claim is—

1. An alternating-current motor having
15 two or more energizing-circuits, the coils of one circuit being composed of conductors of large size or low resistance and those of the other of fewer turns of wire of smaller size or higher resistance, as set forth.

2. In an alternating-current motor, the com-
20 bination, with long and short field-cores, of energizing-coils included in independent circuits, the coils on the longer cores containing

an excess of copper or conductor over that in the others, as set forth.

3. The combination, with a field-magnet 25 composed of magnetic plates having an open center and pole-pieces or cores of different length, of coils surrounding said cores and included in independent circuits, the coils on the longer cores containing an excess of cop- 30 per over that in the others, as set forth.

4. The combination, with a field-magnet . composed of magnetic plates having an open center and pole-pieces or cores of different 35 length, of coils surrounding said cores and included in independent circuits, the coils on the longer cores containing an excess of copper over that in the others and being set in recesses in the iron core formed by the plates, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

ROBT. F. GAYLORD,
FRANK E. HARTLEY.

(No Model.)

N. TESLA.
ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 416,193.

Patented Dec. 3, 1889.

Fig. 1

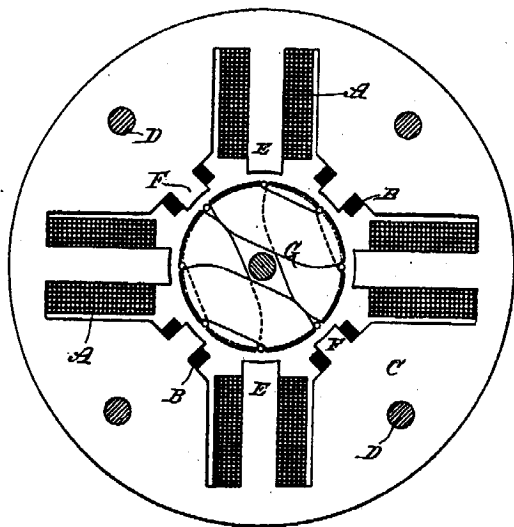
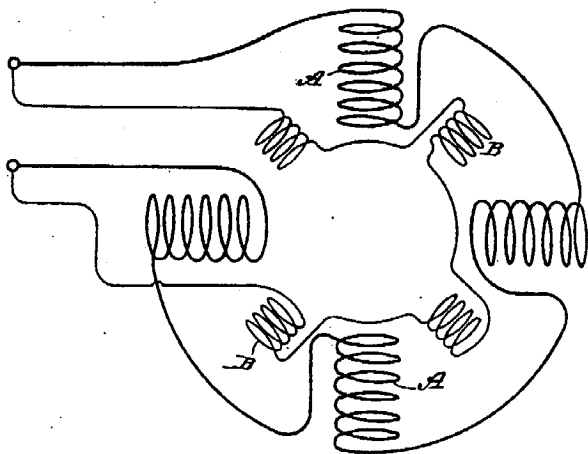


Fig. 2



Witnesses:

Raphael Netter
Robt. F. Gaylord

Inventor

Nikola Tesla

By

Duncan, Curtis & Page
Attorneys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

ELECTRIC MOTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 416,194, dated December 3, 1889.

Application filed May 20, 1889. Serial No. 311,418. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, residing at New York, in the country and State of New York, have invented certain now and useful Improvements in Electro-Magnetic Motors, of which the following is a specification.

10 This invention relates to the alternating-current electro-magnetic motors invented by me, in which a progressive shifting or rotation of the poles or points of maximum magnetic effect is produced by the action of the alternating currents. These motors I have constructed in a great variety of ways. As instances, I have built motors with two or more energizing-circuits, which I connected up with corresponding circuits of a generator so that the motor will be energized by alternating currents differing primarily in phase. I have also built motors with independent energizing-circuits of different electrical character or self-induction, through which I have passed an alternating current the phases of which were artificially distorted by the greater retarding effect of one circuit over another. I have also constructed other forms of motor operating by magnetic or electric lag, which it is not necessary to describe herein in detail, although my present invention is applicable thereto. In such motors I use an armature wound with a coil or coils, which is sometimes connected with the external circuit and sometimes closed upon itself, and to both forms the present invention applies. In these motors the total energy supplied to effect their operation is equal to the sum of the energies expended in the armature and the field. The power developed, however, is proportionate to the product of these quantities. This product will be greatest when these quantities are equal; hence in constructing a motor I determine the mass of the armature and field cores and the windings of both and adapt the two so as to equalize as nearly as possible the magnetic quantities of both. In motors which have closed armature-coils this is only approximately possible, as the energy manifested in the armature is the result of inductive action

from the other element; but in motors in which the coils of both armature and field are connected with the external circuit the result can be much more perfectly obtained.

In further explanation of my object let it be assumed that the energy as represented in the magnetism in the field of a given motor is ninety and that of the armature ten. The sum of these quantities, which represents the total energy expended in driving the motor, is one hundred; but, assuming that the motor be so constructed that the energy in the field is represented by fifty and that in the armature by fifty, the sum is still one hundred; but while in the first instance the product is nine hundred, in the second it is two thousand five hundred, and as the energy developed is in proportion to these products it is clear that those motors are the most efficient—other things being equal—in which the magnetic energies developed in the armature and field are equal. These results I obtain by using the same amount of copper or ampere turns in both elements when the cores of both are equal, or approximately so, and the same current energizes both; or in cases where the currents in one element are induced to those of the other I use in the induced coils an excess of copper over that in the primary element or conductor.

While I know of no way of illustrating this invention by a drawing such as will meet the formal requirements of an application for patent, I have appended for convenience a conventional figure of a motor such as I employ. I would state, however, that I believe that with the problem before him which I have herein stated, and the solution which I have proposed, any one skilled in the art will be able to carry out and apply this invention without difficulty.

Generally speaking, if the mass of the cores of armature and field be equal, the amount of copper or ampere turns of the energizing-coils on both should also be equal; but these conditions will be modified in well-understood ways in different forms of machine. It will be understood that these results are most advantageous when existing under the conditions presented when the motor is running

with its normal load, and in carrying out the invention this fact should be taken into consideration.

Referring to the drawing, A is the field-magnet, B the armature, C the field-coils, and D the armature-coils, of the motor.

The motors described in this application, except as to the features specifically pointed out in the claims, are described and claimed in prior patents granted to and applications filed by me, and are not herein claimed.

What I claim is—

1. An electro-magnetic motor having field and armature magnets of equal strength or magnetic quantity when energized by a given current, as set forth. 15

2. In an alternating-current motor, the combination, with field and armature cores of equal mass, of energizing-coils containing equal amounts of copper, as herein set forth. 20

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

ROBT. F. GAYLORD,

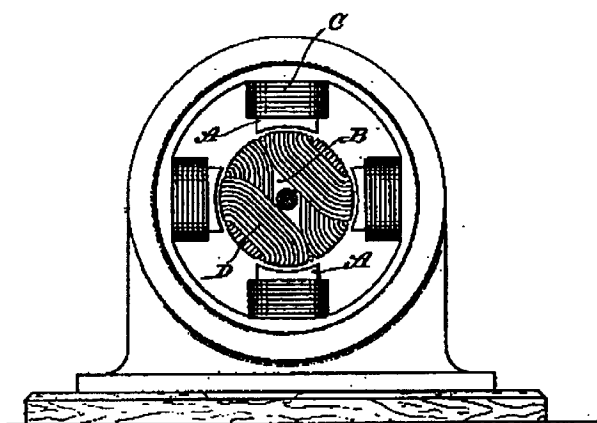
FRANK E. HARTLEY.

(No Model.)

N. TESLA.
ELECTRIC MOTOR.

No. 416,194.

Patented Dec. 3, 1889.



Witnesses:

Rapracl Weller

Robert F. Gaylord

Inventor

Nikola Tesla

By

Drummond, Curtis & Page
Attorneys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

ELECTRO-MAGNETIC MOTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 416,195, dated December 3, 1889.

Application filed May 20, 1889. Serial No. 311,419. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Electro-Magnetic Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

This invention relates to that form of alternating-current motor invented by me, in which there are two or more energizing-circuits through which alternating currents differing in phase are caused to pass. I have in prior patents and applications shown various forms or types of this motor—first, motors having two or more energizing-circuits of the same electrical character, and in the operation of which the currents used differ primarily in phase; second, motors with a plurality of energizing-circuits of different electrical character, in or by means of which the difference of phase is produced artificially, and, third, motors with a plurality of energizing-circuits, the currents in one being induced from currents in another. I shall hereinafter show the application of my present invention to these several types. Considering the structural and operative conditions of any one of them—as, for example, that first-named—the armature which is mounted to rotate in obedience to the co-operative influence or action of the energizing-circuits has coils wound upon it which are closed upon themselves and in which currents are induced by the energizing-currents with the object and result of energizing the armature-core; but under any such conditions as must exist in these motors it is obvious that a certain time must elapse between the manifestations of an energizing-current impulse in the field-coils, and the corresponding magnetic state or phase in the armature established by the current induced thereby; consequently a given magnetic influence or effect in the field which is the direct result of a primary-current impulse will have become more or less weakened or lost before the corresponding effect in the armature indirectly produced has reached its maximum. This is a condition unfavorable

to efficient working in certain cases—as, for instance, when the progress of the resultant poles or points of maximum attraction is very great, or when a very high number of alternations is employed—for it is apparent that a stronger tendency to rotation will be maintained if the maximum magnetic attractions or conditions in both armature and field coincide, the energy developed by a motor being measured by the product of the magnetic quantities of the armature and field.

The object, therefore, in this invention is to so construct or organize these motors that the maxima of the magnetic effects of the two elements—the armature and field—shall more nearly coincide. This I accomplish in various ways, which I may best explain by reference to the drawings, in which various plans for accomplishing the desired results are illustrated.

Figure 1: This is a diagrammatic illustration of a motor system such as I have described in my prior patents, and in which the alternating currents proceed from independent sources and differ primarily in phase.

A designates the field-magnet or magnetic frame of the motor; B B, oppositely-located pole-pieces adapted to receive the coils of one energizing-circuit; and C C, similar pole-pieces for the coils of the other energizing-circuit. These circuits are designated, respectively, by D E, the conductor D' forming a common return to the generator G. Between these poles is mounted an armature—for example, a ring or annular armature, wound with a series of coils F, forming a closed circuit or circuits. The action or operation of a motor thus constructed is now well understood. It will be observed, however, that the magnetism of poles B, for example, established by a current-impulse in the coils thereon, precedes the magnetic effect set up in the armature by the induced current in coils F. Consequently the mutual attraction between the armature and field-poles is considerably reduced. The same conditions will be found to exist if, instead of assuming the poles B or C as acting independently, we regard the ideal resultant of both acting together, which is the real condition. To remedy this, I construct the motor-

field with secondary poles $B' C'$, which are situated between the others. These pole-pieces I wind with coils $D' E'$, the former in derivation to the coils D , the latter to coils E .

5 The main or primary coils D and E are wound for a different self-induction from that of the coils D' and E' , the relations being so fixed that if the currents in D and E differ, for example, by a quarter-phase, the currents in
10 each secondary coil, as $D' E'$, will differ from those in its appropriate primary D or E by, say, forty-five degrees, or one-eighth of a period.

I explain the action of this motor as follows: Assuming that an impulse or alternation in circuit or branch E is just beginning while in the branch D it is just falling from maximum, the conditions of a quarter-phase difference. The ideal resultant of the attractive forces of the two sets of poles $B C$ therefore may be considered as progressing from poles B to poles C while the impulse in E is rising to maximum and that in D is falling to zero or minimum. The polarity set up
25 in the armature, however, lags behind the manifestations of field magnetism, and hence the maximum points of attraction in armature and field, instead of coinciding, are angularly displaced. This effect is counteracted
30 by the supplemental poles $B' C'$. The magnetic phases of these poles succeed those of poles $B C$ by the same, or nearly the same, period of time as elapses between the effect of the poles $B C$ and the corresponding induced effect in the armature; hence the magnetic conditions of poles $B' C'$ and of the armature more nearly coincide and a better
35 result is obtained. As poles $B' C'$ act in conjunction with the poles in the armature established by poles $B C$, so in turn poles $B C$ act similarly with the poles set up by $B' C'$, respectively. Under such conditions the retardation of the magnetic effect of the armature and that of the secondary poles will bring
40 the maximum of the two more nearly into coincidence and a correspondingly stronger torque or magnetic attraction secured.

In such a disposition as is shown in Fig. 1 it will be observed that as the adjacent pole-pieces of either circuit are of like polarity they will have a certain weakening effect upon one another. I therefore prefer to remove the secondary poles from the direct influence of the others. This I may do by constructing a motor with two independent sets
50 of fields, and with either one or two armatures electrically connected, or by using two armatures and one field. These modifications will be illustrated hereinafter.

Fig. 2 is a diagrammatic illustration of a motor and system in which the difference of phase is artificially produced. There are two coils $D D$ in one branch and two coils $E E$ in the other branch of the main circuit from the generator G . These two circuits or branches are of different self-induction, one, as D , being higher than the other. For con-

venience I have indicated this by making coils D much larger than coils E . By reason of this difference in the electrical character
70 of the two circuits the phases of current in one are retarded to a greater extent than the other. Let this difference be thirty degrees. A motor thus constructed will rotate under the action of an alternating current; but as
75 happens in the case previously described the corresponding magnetic effects of the armature and field do not coincide owing to the time that elapses between a given magnetic effect in the armature and the condition of
80 the field that produces it. I therefore employ the secondary or supplemental poles $B' C'$. There being thirty degrees difference of phase between the currents in coils $D E$, the magnetic effects of poles $B' C'$ should corre-
85 spond to that produced by a current differing from the current in coils D or E by fifteen degrees. This I may accomplish by winding each supplemental pole $B' C'$ with two coils $H H'$. The coils H are included in a derived cir-
90 cuit having the same self-induction as circuit D , and coils H' in a circuit having the same self-induction as circuit E , so that if these circuits differ by thirty degrees the magnetism of poles $B' C'$ will correspond to that produced
95 by a current differing from that in either D or E by fifteen degrees. This is true in all other cases. For example, if in Fig. 1 the coils $D' E'$ be replaced by the coils $H H'$ included in derived circuits, the magnetism of
100 the poles $B' C'$ will correspond in effect or phase, if it may be so termed, to that produced by a current differing from that in either circuit D or E by forty-five degrees, or one-eighth of a period.

This invention as applied to a derived-circuit motor is illustrated in Figs. 3 and 4. The former is an end view of the motor with the armature in section and a diagram of connections, and Fig. 4 a vertical section through
110 the field. These figures are also drawn to show one of the dispositions of two fields that may be adopted in carrying out the invention. The poles $B B C C$ are in one field, the remaining poles in the other. The former are
115 wound with primary coils $I J$ and secondary coils $I' J'$, the latter with coils $K L$. The primary coils $I J$ are in derived circuits, between which, by reason of their different self-induction, there is a difference of phase, say, of
120 thirty degrees. The coils $I' K$ are in circuit with one another, as also are coils $J' L$, and there should be a difference of phase between the currents in coils K and L and their corresponding primaries of, say, fifteen degrees.
125 If the poles $B C$ are at right angles, the armature-coils should be connected directly across, or a single armature-core wound from end to end may be used; but if the poles $B C$ be in line there should be an angular displacement
130 of the armature-coils, as will be well understood.

The operation will be understood from the foregoing. The maximum magnetic condition

of a pair of poles, as B' B', coincides closely with the maximum effect in the armature, which lags behind the corresponding condition in poles B B.

5 There are many other ways of carrying out this invention, but they all involve the same broad principle of construction and operation.

In using expressions herein to indicate a coincidence of the magnetic phases or effects
10 in one set of field-magnets with those set up in the armature by the other I refer only to approximate results; but this of course will be understood.

What I claim is—

15 1. In an alternating-current motor, the combination, with an armature wound with closed

coils, of main and supplemental field magnets or poles, one set of which is adapted to exhibit their maximum magnetic effect simultaneously with that set up in the armature 20 by the action of the other, as set forth.

2. In an electro-magnetic motor, the combination, with an armature, of a plurality of field or energizing coils included, respectively, in main circuits adapted to produce a given 25 difference of phase and supplemental or secondary circuits adapted to produce an intermediate difference of phase, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

R. J. STONEY, Jr.,

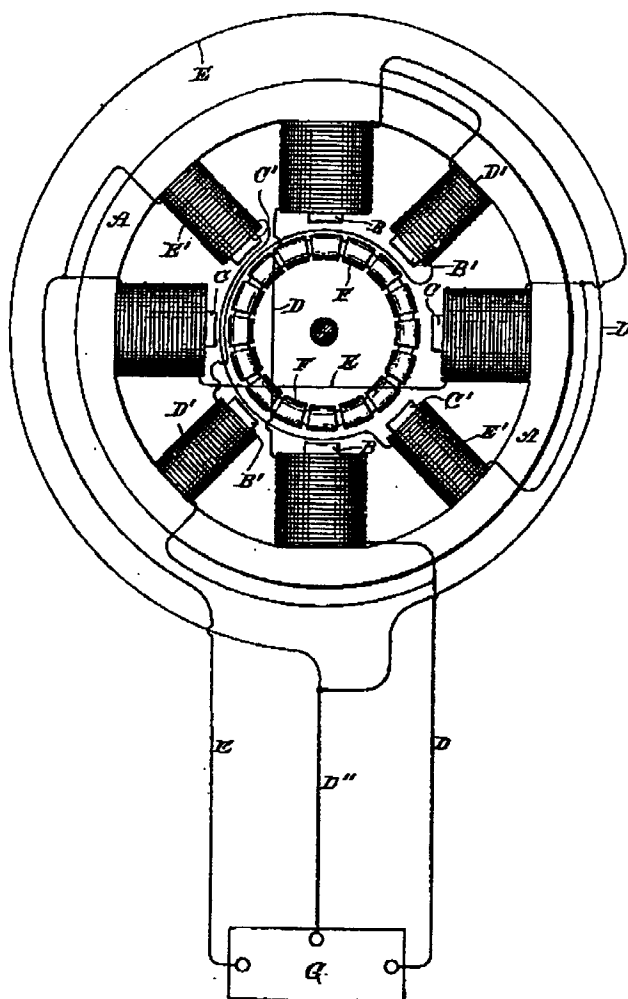
JOHN GILLESPIE.

N. TESLA.
ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 416,195.

Patented Dec. 3, 1889.

Fig. 1



Witnesses:
Raphael Netter
Robert F. Gaylord

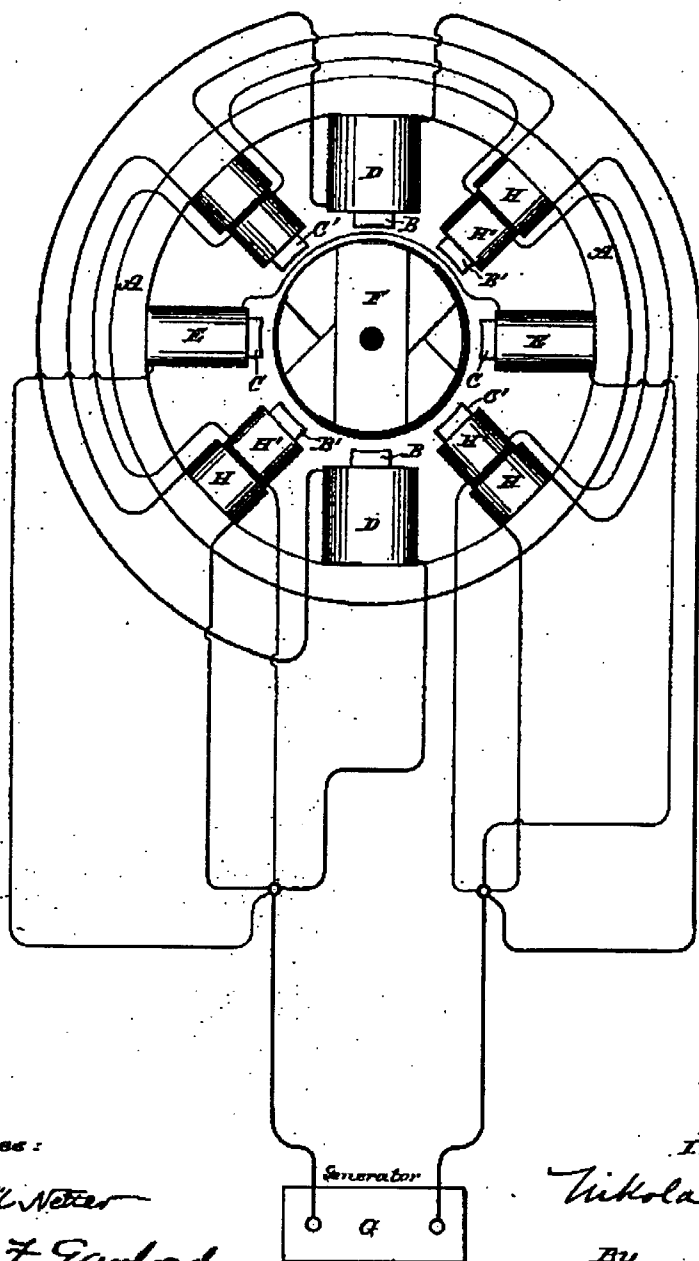
Inventor
Nikola Tesla
By
Duncan, Curtis & Page
Attorneys.

N. TESLA.
ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 416,195.

Patented Dec. 3, 1889.

Fig. 2



Witnesses:

Raphael Netter

Robert F. Gaylord

Inventor

Nikola Tesla

By

Duncan, Curtis & Lag.

Attorneys.

N. TESLA.
ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 416,195.

Patented Dec. 3, 1889.

Fig. 3

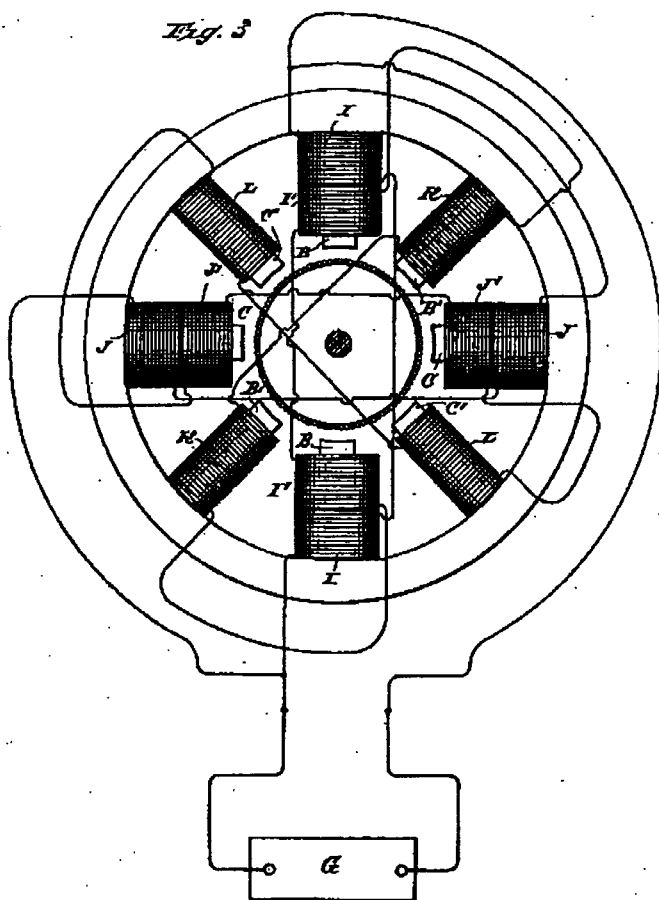
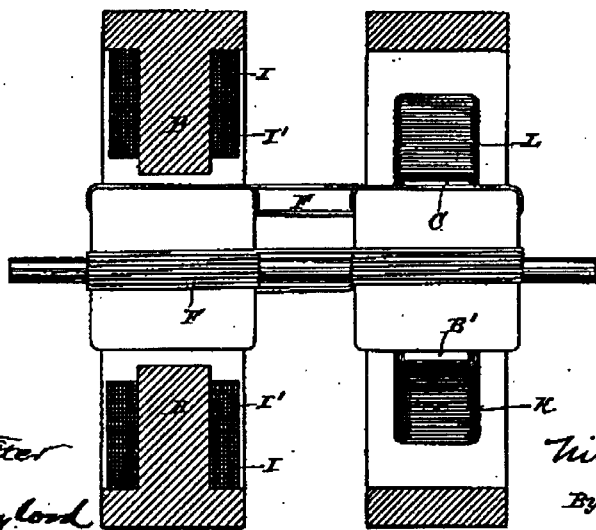


Fig. 4



Witnesses:
Garfield Miller
Robt. F. Gaylord

Inventor
Nikola Tesla
By
Duncan, Austin & Sage
Attorneys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

ALBERT SCHMID, OF ALLEGHENY, AND NIKOLA TESLA, OF PITTSBURG,
ASSIGNORS TO THE WESTINGHOUSE ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF PITTSBURG, PENNSYLVANIA.

ARMATURE FOR ELECTRIC MACHINES.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 417,794, dated December 24, 1889.

Application filed June 28, 1889. Serial No. 815,937. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that we, ALBERT SCHMID and NIKOLA TESLA, citizens, respectively, of the Republic of Switzerland and Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, now residing in Allegheny and Pittsburg, both in the county of Allegheny and State of Pennsylvania, have invented a certain new and useful Improvement in Armatures for Electric Machines, (Case No. 310,) of which the following is a specification.

The invention relates to the construction of armatures for electric generators and motors, and the object is to provide an electrically-efficient armature, the construction of which is simple and economical, and in which the coils of insulated conducting wire or ribbon may be conveniently wound or formed into bobbins so located with reference to the body of the armature as to afford as good results as possible.

For certain purposes it is desirable to construct the armatures of electric generators and motors with their cores of magnetizable material projecting through the coils into close proximity to the field-magnet poles. When armatures are constructed in this manner, some means are necessary for holding the coils in position and preventing them from being thrown out by centrifugal force.

This invention aims to provide such means in an armature having polar projections, and also to form an armature in such manner as to expose a large area of core-surface to the field-magnet poles.

The invention consists, in general terms, in forming an armature-core which is preferably built up of laminæ of magnetizable material insulated from each other, with diverging slots or openings for receiving the armature wire or ribbon, which slots are connected with the exterior of the armature by openings through which the wire may be laid in the slots, and in placing the wire in such slots in the proper manner.

We are aware of the United States Patents No. 327,797, granted to Immisch; and No. 292,077, granted to Wenstrom, and the British

patent of Coerper, No. 9,013 of 1887, and do not claim the constructions shown and described therein.

The invention will be described more particularly in connection with the accompanying drawings, in which—

Figure 1 is an end view, partly in section, of an armature embodying the features of the invention, and Fig. 2 is a plan of the armature.

Referring to the figures, F F indicate field-magnet poles, and A represents the body or core of an armature composed, in this instance, of laminæ of magnetizable material built up in any suitable manner, the laminæ being preferably separated by intervening strata of insulating material. The individual plates or laminæ are constructed with radial openings *c*, extending a short distance from the surface, and with slots or openings *b*, which extend in different directions from the openings *c*. The slots diverge from each other at such angles as to cause the two slots upon the opposite sides of each web *e* thus formed to lie in the same chord of the circle of the armature. The plates may also be stamped or formed with openings *G* to remove the unnecessary metal. After the plates are formed they are laid up in the proper manner to form the entire armature-core, the slots *b* being placed opposite each other to form continuous openings through the entire length of the armature. These openings may be lined by pockets *h* of insulating material—such, for instance, as vulcanized fiber—and the wires are then wound into the slots from the openings *c* and around the respective webs *e*. Winding-clips *k* may be placed at the respective ends of the armature opposite each web *e* to hold the wires in the proper positions as they are wound in the slots and down upon the armature ends.

The wires having been wound into their proper positions, they may be held more securely in position by means of blocks *K* of non-magnetic material, placed at intervals or extending through the entire slots or openings *c* and projecting into the slots *b*.

An armature constructed in the manner

described is found to be very efficient in its operations and at the same time simple in its construction.

The connections between the armature-coils and the conductors or collecting-plates may be made in any usual well-known manner, according to the purposes desired to be served.

We claim as our invention—

1. A core for electrical machines, composed of plates of magnetizable material separated by insulation, said plates having diverging slots for receiving the armature-conductors and an opening to the exterior of the plate at the origin of the diverging slots.

2. A core-plate for electrical machines, stamped with diverging slots at intervals near its periphery and an opening to the periphery at the angle formed by each two diverging slots.

3. A core for electrical machines, composed of plates of magnetizable material separated by insulation, said plates having diverging slots for receiving the armature-conductors and an opening to the exterior of the plate at the origin of the diverging slots, the width of such openings being approximately equal to the width of the slot.

4. An armature-core for electric machines, consisting of plates of magnetizable material separated by insulation, having radial openings at intervals, slots diverging from said openings for receiving armature-coils, and winding blocks or clips at the ends of the core.

5. An armature-core for electrical apparatus, composed of plates of magnetizable ma-

terial separated by insulation and having radial openings at intervals, slots extending in opposite directions from said openings for receiving wires, and insulating-linings for said slots.

6. An armature for electric machines, consisting of a laminated core formed with diverging slots for receiving the wires, said slots leaving intervening webs, and coils of wire wound in said slots.

7. An armature for electric machines, consisting of a laminated core formed with diverging slots for receiving the wires, said slots leaving intervening webs, coils of wire wound in said slots, and non-magnetizable material closing the openings of the adjacent slots outside the wires, substantially as described.

8. An armature for electric machines, consisting of a core having its outer surface continuous except for narrow longitudinal openings at intervals and having slots diverging from said openings, armature-coils wound in said slots, and blocks or strips of non-magnetizable material closing the openings and forming with the metal of the armature a practically continuous surface.

In testimony whereof we have hereunto subscribed our names this 25th day of June, A. D. 1889.

ALBERT SCHMID.
NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

W. D. UPTGRAFF,
CHARLES A. TERRY.

(No Model.)

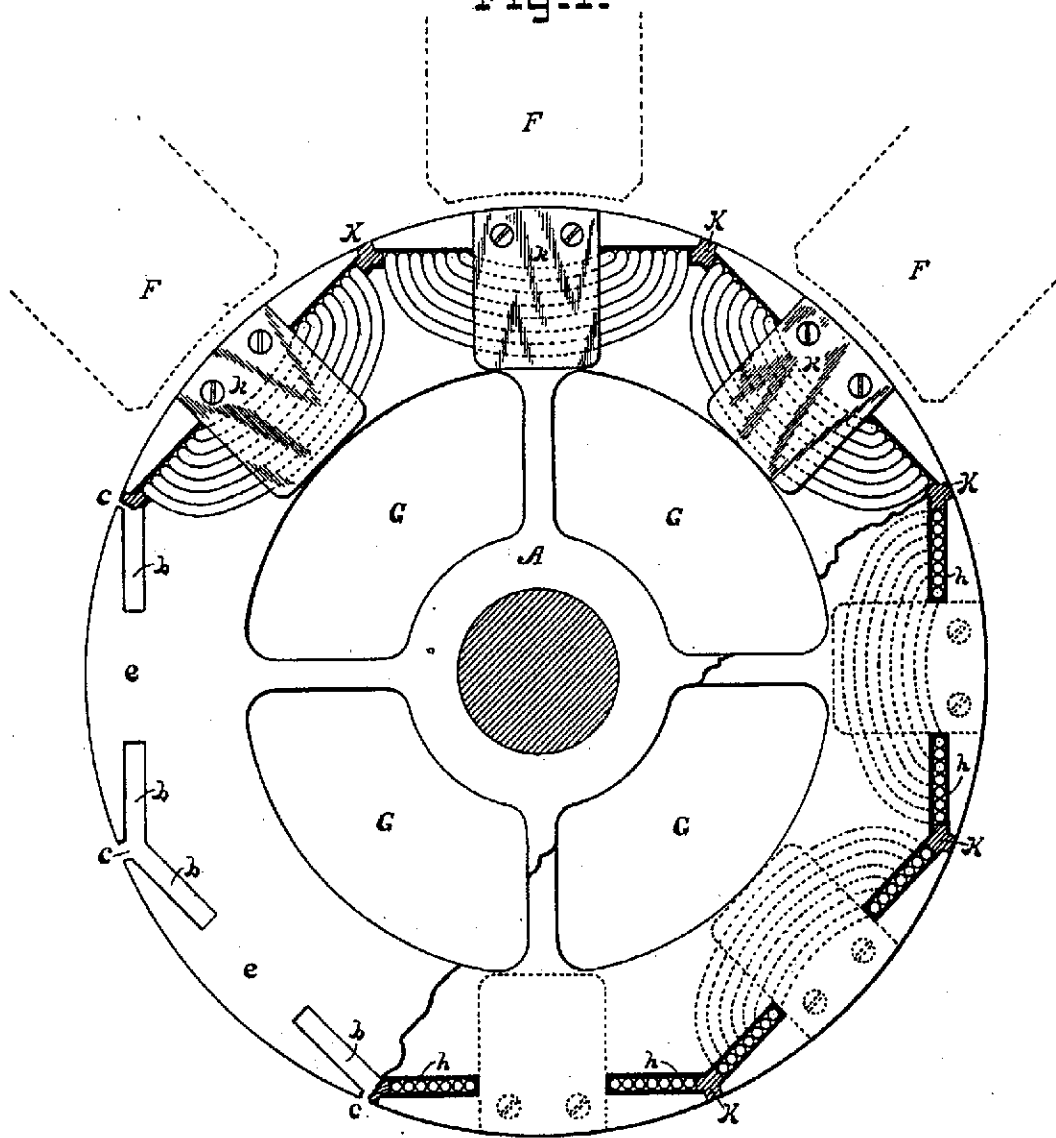
2 Sheets—Sheet 1.

A. SCHMID & N. TESLA.
ARMATURE FOR ELECTRIC MACHINES.

No. 417,794.

Patented Dec. 24, 1889.

Fig-1.



WITNESSES:

George Brown, Jr.
J. W. Smith.

INVENTORS

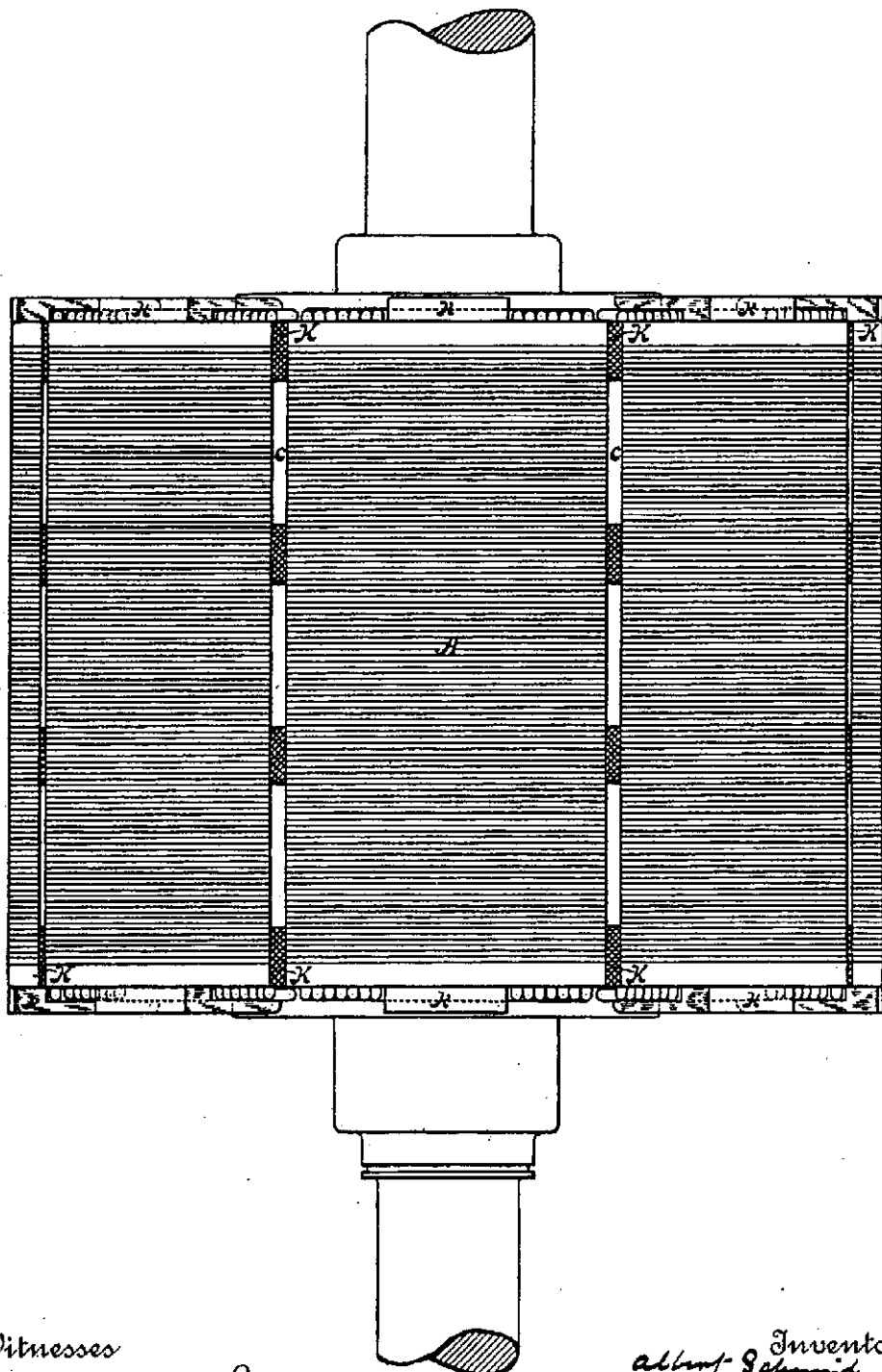
Albert Schmidt,
Nikola Tesla.

Charles A. Terry
Att'y.

No. 417,794.

Patented Dec. 24, 1889.

Fig. 2.



2. Witnesses

George Brown Jr.

J. Wm. Smith

By His Attorney

Inventor
Albert S. Schmidt
Nikola Tesla

Charles A. Terry

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

ELECTRO-MAGNETIC MOTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 418,248, dated December 31, 1889.

Application filed May 20, 1889. Serial No. 311,420. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria-Hungary, formerly of Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, but now residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Methods of Operating Electro-Magnetic Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawing accompanying and forming a part of the same.

In a patent granted to me April 16, 1889, No. 401,520, I have shown and described a method of operating alternating-current motors by first shifting or rotating their magnetic poles until they had reached or passed a synchronous speed and then alternating the poles, or, in other words, by transforming the motor by a change of circuit-connections from one operated by the action of two or more independent energizing-currents to a motor operated by a single current or several acting as one.

The present invention is a specific way of carrying out the same invention; and it consists in the following method: On the start, I progressively shift the magnetic poles of one element or field of the motor by alternating currents differing in phase as passed through independent energizing-circuits and short-circuit the coils of the other element. When the motor thus started reaches or passes the limit of speed synchronous with the generator, I connect up the coils previously short-circuited with a source of direct current and by a change of the circuit-connections produce a simple alternation of the poles. The motor then continues to run in synchronism with the generator. There are many specifically-different ways in which this may be carried out; but I have selected one for illustrating the principle. This is illustrated in the annexed drawing, which is a side view of a motor with a diagram of the circuits and devices used in the system.

The motor shown is one of the ordinary forms, with field-cores either laminated or solid and with a cylindrical laminated armature wound, for example, with the coils A B at right angles. The shaft of the armature carries three collecting or contact rings C D

E. (Shown, for better illustration, as of different diameters.)

One end of coil A connects to one ring, as C, and one end of coil B connects with ring D. The remaining ends are connected to ring E. Collecting springs or brushes F G H bear upon the rings and lead to the contacts of a switch, to be hereinafter described. The field-coils have their terminals in binding-posts K K, and may be either closed upon themselves or connected with a source of direct current L by means of a switch M. The main or controlling switch has five contacts a b c d e and two levers f g, pivoted and connected by an insulating cross-bar h, so as to move in parallelism. These levers are connected to the line-wires from a source of alternating currents N. Contact a is connected to brush G and coil B through a dead-resistance R and wire P. Contact b is connected with brush F and coil A through a self-induction-coil S and wire O. Contacts c and e are connected to brushes G F, respectively, through the wires P O, and contact d is directly connected with brush H. The lever f has a widened end, which may span the contacts a b. When in such position and with lever g on contact d, the alternating currents divide between the two motor-coils, and by reason of their different self-induction a difference of current-phase is obtained that starts the motor in rotation. In starting, as I have above stated, the field-coils are short-circuited.

When the motor has attained the desired speed, the switch is shifted to the position shown in dotted lines—that is to say, with the levers f g resting on points c e. This connects up the two armature-coils in series, and the motor will then run as a synchronous motor. The field-coils are thrown into circuit with the direct-current source when the main switch is shifted.

What I claim herein as my invention is—

1. The method of operating electro-magnetic motors, which consists in first progressively shifting or rotating the magnetic poles of one element until it has reached a synchronous speed and then alternating said poles and passing a direct current through the coils of the other element, as herein set forth.

2. The method of operating electro-mag-

netic motors, which consists in short-circuiting the coils of one element, as the field-magnet, and passing through the energizing-coils of the other element, as the armature, alternating currents differing in phase, and then, when the motor has attained a given speed, passing through the field-coils a direct cur-

rent and through the armature-coils alternating currents coinciding in phase.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

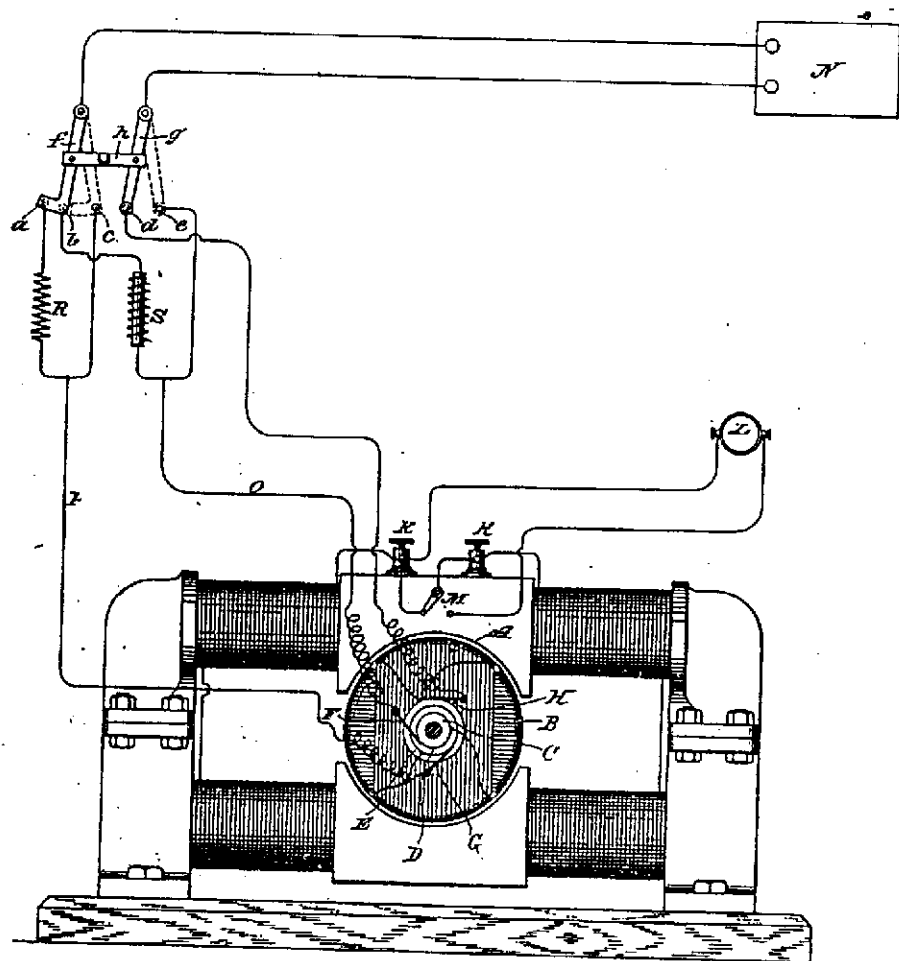
R. J. STONEY, Jr.,
E. P. COFFIN.

(No Model.)

N. TESLA.
ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 418,248.

Patented Dec. 31, 1889.



Witnesses:
Happail Netzer
Robt. F. Gaylord

Inventor
Nikola Tesla
By
Duncan, Curtis & Page
Attorneys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

ELECTRO-MAGNETIC MOTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 424,036, dated March 25, 1890.

Application filed May 20, 1889. Serial No. 311,416. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria-Hungary, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Electro-Magnetic Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

I have invented and elsewhere described an electro-magnetic motor operated or adapted to be operated by an alternating electric current, and which is now commonly designated, whether correctly or not, a "magnetic-lag" motor. The main distinguishing features of this motor are the following: An armature is mounted within the magnetizing influence of a certain number of field magnets or poles of different magnetic susceptibility—that is to say, poles of unequal length, mass, or composition—and wound with coils adapted in the operation of the motor to be connected to a source of alternating currents. When an alternating current is passed through the coils of such a motor, the field magnets or poles do not appear to manifest their attractive effect upon the armature simultaneously, the magnetic attraction of some appearing to lag behind that of others, with the result of producing a torque and rotation of the motor. Generally I have made such motors with closed armature-coils.

I have invented another form of motor, which, for similar reasons, may be called a "magnetic-lag" motor; but in operation it differs from that which I have above described in that the attractive effects or phases of the poles, while lagging behind the phases of current which produce them, are manifested simultaneously and not successively.

To carry out this invention I employ a motor embodying the principle of construction of a motor described and claimed in an application filed by me January 8, 1889, No. 295,745, to the extent that both the armature and field receive their magnetism from a single energizing-coil or a plurality of coils acting as one.

A motor which embodies my invention, with certain modifications thereof, is illustrated in the accompanying drawings.

Figure 1 is a side view of the motor in elevation. Fig. 2 is a part-sectional view at right angles to Fig. 1. Fig. 3 is an end view in elevation and part section of a modification, and Fig. 4 is a similar view of another modification.

In Figs. 1 and 2, A designates a base or stand, and B B the supporting-frame of the motor. Bolted to the said supporting-frame are two magnetic cores or pole-pieces C C', of iron or soft steel. These may be subdivided or laminated, in which case hard iron or steel plates or bars should be used, or they should be wound with closed coils. D is a circular disk-armature built up of sections or plates of iron and mounted in the frame between the pole-pieces C C', which latter are preferably curved to conform to the circular shape thereof. I may wind this disk with a number of closed coils E. F F are the main energizing-coils, supported in any convenient manner by the supporting-frame, or otherwise, but so as to include within their magnetizing influence both the pole-pieces C C' and the armature D. The pole-pieces C C' project out beyond the coils F F on opposite sides, as indicated in the drawings. If an alternating current be passed through the coils F F, rotation of the armature will be produced, and this rotation I explain by the following apparent action or mode of operation: An impulse of current in the coils F F establishes two polarities in the motor. The protruding end of pole-piece C, for instance, will be of one sign, and the corresponding end of pole-piece C' will be of the opposite sign. The armature also exhibits two poles at right angles to the coils F F, like poles to those in the pole-pieces being on the same side of the coils. While the current is flowing there is no appreciable tendency to rotation developed; but after each current impulse ceases or begins to fall the magnetism in the armature and in the ends of the pole-pieces C C' lags or continues to manifest itself, which produces a rotation of the armature by the repellent force between the more closely approximating points of maximum magnetic effect. This effect is continued by the reversal of current, the polarities of field and armature being simply reversed. One or both of the elements—the armature or field—may be wound with closed

induced coils to intensify this effect, although in the drawings I have shown but one of the fields, each element of the motor really constitutes a field, wound with the closed coils, the currents being induced mainly in those convolutions or coils which are parallel to the coils F F. A modified form of this motor is shown in Fig. 3. In this form G is one of two standards that support the bearings for the armature-shaft. H H are uprights or sides of a frame, preferably magnetic, the ends C C' of which are bent, substantially as shown, to conform to the shape of the armature D and form field-magnet poles. The construction of the armature may be the same as in the previous figure, or it may be simply a magnetic disk or cylinder, as shown, and a coil or coils F F are secured in position to surround both the armature and the poles C C'. The armature is detachable from its shaft, the latter being passed through the armature after it has been inserted in position. The operation of this form of motor is the same in principle as that previously described and needs no further explanation.

One of the most important features in alternating-current motors is that they should be adapted to and capable of running efficiently in the alternating systems in present use, in which almost without exception the generators yield a very high number of alternations. Such a motor I have designed by a development of the principle of the motor shown in Fig. 3, making a multipolar motor, which is illustrated in Fig. 4. In the construction of this motor I employ an annular magnetic frame J, with inwardly-extending ribs or projections K, the ends of which all bend or turn in one direction and are generally shaped to conform to the curved surface of the armature. Coils F F are wound from one part K to the one next adjacent, the ends or loops of each coil or group of wires being carried over toward the shaft, so as to form U-shaped groups of convolutions at each end of the armature. The pole-pieces C C', being substantially concentric with the armature, form ledges, along which the coils are laid and should project to some extent beyond the coils, as shown. The cylindrical or drum armature D is of the same construction as in the other motors described, and is mounted to rotate within the annular frame J and between the U-shaped ends or bends of the coils F. The coils F are connected in multiple or in series with a source of alternating currents, and are so wound that with a current or current impulse of given direction they will make the alternate pole-pieces C of one polarity and the other pole-pieces C' of the opposite polarity. The principle of the operation of this motor is the same as the other herein described, for, considering any two pole-pieces C C', a current impulse passing in the coil which bridges them or is wound over both tends to establish polarities in their

ends of opposite sign and to set up in the armature-core between them a polarity of the same sign as that of the nearest pole-piece C. Upon the fall or cessation of the current impulse that established these polarities the magnetism which lags behind the current phase, and which continues to manifest itself in the polar projections C C' and the armature, produces by repulsion a rotation of the armature. The effect is continued by each reversal of the current. What occurs in the case of one pair of pole-pieces occurs simultaneously in all, so that the tendency to rotation of the armature is measured by the sum of all the forces exerted by the pole-pieces, as above described. In this motor also the magnetic lag or effect is intensified by winding one or both cores with closed induced coils. The armature-core is shown as thus wound. When closed coils are used, the cores should be laminated.

It is evident that a pulsatory as well as an alternating current might be used to drive or operate the motors herein described; but I prefer to use alternating currents.

It will be understood that the degree of subdivision, the mass of the iron in the cores, their size, and the number of alternations in the current employed to run the motor must be taken into consideration in order to properly construct this motor. In other words, in all such motors the proper relations between the number of alternations and the mass, size, or quality of the iron must be preserved in order to secure the best results. These are matters, however, that are well understood by those skilled in the art.

What I claim is—

1. In an alternating-current motor, the combination, with the armature and field-cores, of stationary energizing-coils enveloping the said cores and adapted to produce polarities or poles in both, the field-cores extending out from the coils and constructed so as to exhibit the magnetic effect imparted to them after the fall or cessation of current impulse producing such effect, as set forth.

2. In an alternating-current motor, the combination, with an armature-core circular in configuration, of a supporting-frame, field-cores extending therefrom over portions of the periphery of the armature, and energizing-coils surrounding said armature and parts of the field-cores, as set forth.

3. The combination, with the rotatably-mounted armature, of the circular frame J, the ribs K, with polar extensions extending over portions of the armature, and the energizing-coils F, wound over portions of the pole-pieces and carried in loops over the ends of the armature, as herein set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

R. J. STONEY, Jr.,
E. P. COFFIN.

N. TESLA.
ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 424,036.

Patented Mar. 25, 1890.

Fig. 1

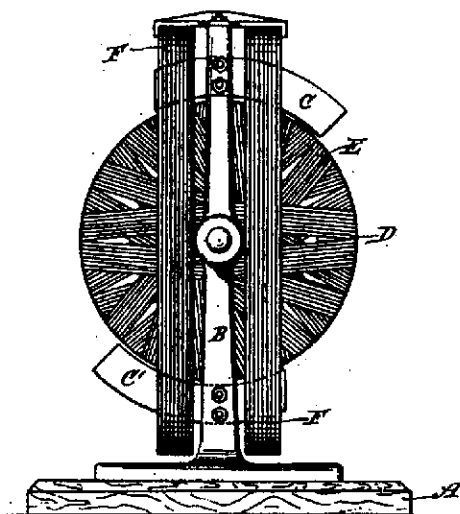
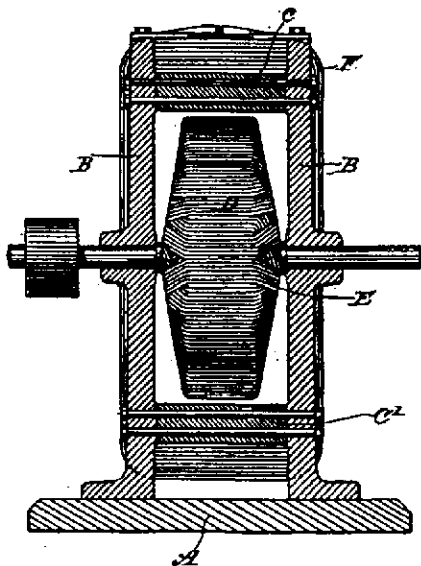


Fig. 2



Witnesses:

Raphael Mott
Frank E. Hartley

Inventor

Nikola Tesla

By

Duncan, Curtis & Age

Attorneys.

N. TESLA.
ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 424,036.

Patented Mar. 25, 1890.

Fig. 8

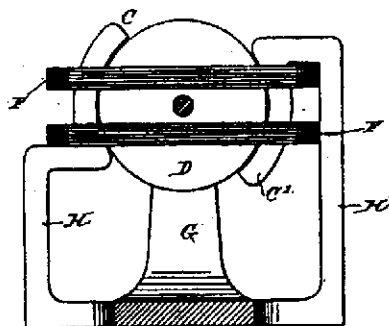
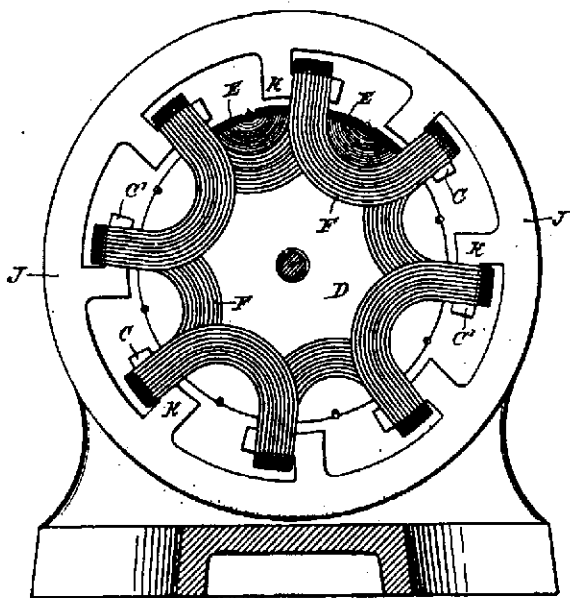


Fig. 4



Witnesses:

Raphael Netter
Frank Hartley

Inventor

Nikola Tesla

By

Duncan, Curtis & Page

Attorneys.

(No Model.)

N. TESLA.
PYROMAGNETO ELECTRIC GENERATOR.

No. 428,057.

Patented May 13, 1890.

Fig. 1

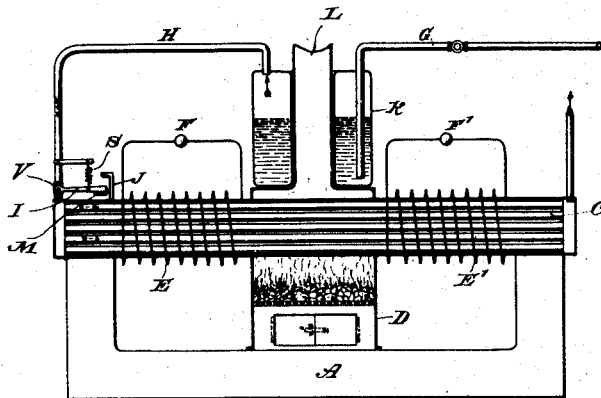
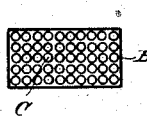


Fig. 2



Witnesses
Raphael Netter
William H. Shipley

Inventor
Nikola Tesla
By
Duncan, Curtis & Page
Attorneys

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR OF ONE-HALF TO CHARLES F. PECK, OF ENGLEWOOD, NEW JERSEY.

PYROMAGNETO-ELECTRIC GENERATOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 428,057, dated May 13, 1890.

Original application filed May 26, 1887, Serial No. 239,481. Divided and this application filed May 25, 1889. Serial No. 312,069. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria-Hungary, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Electrical Generators, of which the following is a specification.

This application is a division of an application filed by me May 26, 1887, Serial No. 239,481.

This invention is an improved form of electrical generator based upon the following well-known laws: First, that electricity or electrical energy is developed in any conducting-body by subjecting such body to a varying magnetic influence, and, second, that the magnetic properties of iron or other magnetic substance may be partially or entirely destroyed or caused to disappear by raising it to a certain temperature, but restored and caused to reappear by again lowering its temperature to a certain degree. These laws may be applied in the production of electrical currents in many ways, the principle of which is in all cases the same—viz., to subject a conductor to a varying magnetic influence, producing such variations by the application of heat, or, more strictly speaking, by the application or action of a varying temperature upon the source of the magnetism. This principle of operation may be illustrated by a simple experiment: Place end to end, and preferably in actual contact, a permanently-magnetized steel bar and a strip or bar of soft iron. Around the end of the iron bar or plate wind a coil of insulated wire. Then apply to the iron between the coil and the steel bar a flame or other source of heat which will be capable of raising that portion of the iron to an orange-red, or a temperature of about 600° centigrade. When this condition is reached, the iron somewhat suddenly loses its magnetic properties, if it be very thin, and the same effects produced as though the iron had been moved away from the magnet or the heated section had been removed. This change of condition, however, is accompanied by a shifting of the magnetic lines, or, in other words, by a variation in the magnetic influence to which

the coil is exposed, and a current in the coil is the result. Then remove the flame or in any other way reduce the temperature of the iron. The lowering of its temperature is accompanied by a return of its magnetic properties, and another change of magnetic conditions occurs, accompanied by a current in an opposite direction in the coil. The same operation may be repeated indefinitely, the effect upon the coil being similar to that which would follow from moving the magnetized bar to and from the end of the iron bar or plate.

The device forming the subject of my present invention is an improved means of obtaining this result, the features of novelty in which the invention resides being, first, the employment of an artificial cooling device, and, second, inclosing the source of heat and that portion of the magnetic circuit exposed to the heat and artificially cooling the said heated part. These improvements are applicable generally to the generators constructed on the plan above described—that is to say, I may use an artificial cooling device in conjunction with a variable or varied or uniform source of heat. I prefer, however, to employ a uniform heat.

In the drawings I have illustrated a device constructed in accordance with my invention.

Figure 1 is a central vertical longitudinal section of the complete apparatus. Fig. 2 is a cross-section of the magnetic armature-core of the generator.

Let A represent a magnetized core or permanent magnet the poles of which are bridged by an armature-core composed of a casing or shell B inclosing a number of hollow iron tubes C. Around this core are wound the conductors E E', to form the coils in which the currents are developed. In the circuits of these coils are translating devices, as F F'.

D is a furnace or closed fire-box, through which the central portion of the core B extends. Above the fire is a boiler K, containing water. The flue L from the fire-box may extend up through the boiler.

G is a water-supply pipe, and H is the steam-exhaust pipe, which communicates with all

the tubes C in the armature B, so that steam escaping from the boiler will pass through said tubes.

In the steam-exhaust pipe H is a valve V, 5 to which is connected the lever I, by the movement of which the said valve is opened or closed. In such a case as this the heat of the fire may be utilized for other purposes after as much of it as may be needed has been ap- 10 plied to heating the core B. There are special advantages in the employment of a cooling device, in that the metal of the core B is not so quickly oxidized. Moreover, the difference between the temperature of the ap- 15 plied heat and of the steam, air, or whatever gas or fluid be applied as the cooling medium, may be increased or decreased at will, whereby the rapidity of the magnetic changes or fluctuations may be regulated.

20 In so far as my present invention, broadly, is concerned, the specific construction of the apparatus is largely immaterial. I do not, however, claim in this application, broadly, the application of a variable heat to vary the 25 magnetic conditions of a field of force in which an induced conductor is contained.

What I claim is—

1. In an electrical generator, the combination, with a magnetized core or body and a conductor within the field of force produced 30 thereby, of an inclosed source of heat applied to a portion of said core, and an artificial cooling device for reducing the temperature of the heated portion thereof, as set forth.

2. The combination, with a magnetized core 35 or body and a conductor under the influence thereof, of an inclosed source of heat applied to a portion of said core, means for bringing a cooling gas or fluid in contact with the heated portion of the core, and means for con- 40 trolling the admission of the same.

3. The combination, with a magnetized core containing passages or channels, and coils wound thereon, of means for applying heat to a portion of the core, and a connection with 45 a boiler for admitting steam into the channels, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

R. J. STONEY, Jr.,
E. P. COFFIN.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

ALTERNATING-CURRENT ELECTRO-MAGNETIC MOTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 433,700, dated August 5, 1890.

Application filed March 26, 1890. Serial No. 345,988. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria-Hungary, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Alternating-Current Electro-Magnetic Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

This invention is an improvement in that class of electro-magnetic motors in which the rotation is produced by the progressive movement or effect of the maximum magnetic points or poles produced by the conjoint action or effect of two energizing-circuits through which are passed alternating currents, or currents of rapidly-varying strength of a kindred nature.

The improvements subject of this application are more particularly applicable to that class of motor in which two or more sets of energizing-magnets are employed, and in which by artificial means a certain interval of time is made to elapse between the respective maximum or minimum periods or phases of their magnetic attraction or effect. This interval or difference in phase between the two sets of magnets, when artificially produced, is limited in extent. It is desirable, however, for the economical working of such motors that the strength or attraction of one set of magnets should be maximum at the time when that of the other set is minimum and conversely; but these conditions have not heretofore been realized except in cases where the two currents have been obtained from independent sources in the same or different machines.

The object of the present invention is to establish conditions more nearly approaching the theoretical requirements of perfect working, or, in other words, to produce artificially a difference of magnetic phase by means of a current from a single primary source sufficient in extent to meet the requirements of practical and economical working.

In carrying out my invention I employ a motor with two sets of energizing or field

magnets, each wound with coils connected with a source of alternating or rapidly-varying currents, but forming two separate paths or circuits. The magnets of one set I protect to a certain extent from the energizing action of the current by means of a magnetic shield or screen interposed between the magnet and its energizing-coil. This shield is properly adapted to the conditions of particular cases, so as to shield or protect the main core from magnetization until it has become itself saturated and no longer capable of containing all the lines of force produced by the current. By this means it will be seen that the energizing action begins in the protected set of magnets a certain arbitrarily-determined period of time later than in the other, and that by this means alone or in conjunction with other means or devices heretofore employed a practically-economical difference of magnetic phase may readily be secured.

The nature and operation of the invention will be more fully explained by reference to the accompanying drawings.

Figure 1 is a view of a motor, partly in section, with a diagram illustrating the invention. Fig. 2 is a similar view of a modification of the same.

In Fig. 1, which exhibits the simplest form of the invention, A A is the field-magnet of a motor, having, say, eight poles or inwardly-projecting cores B and C. The cores B form one set of magnets and are energized by coils D. The cores C, forming the other set, are energized by coils E, and the coils are connected, preferably, in series with one another, in two derived or branched circuits F G, respectively, from a suitable source of current. Each coil E is surrounded by a magnetic shield H, which is preferably composed of an annealed, insulated, or oxidized iron wire wrapped or wound on the coils in the manner indicated, so as to form a closed magnetic circuit around the coils and between the same and the magnetic cores C. Between the pole pieces or cores B C is mounted the armature K, which, as is usual in this type of machines, is wound with coils L closed upon themselves. The operation resulting from this disposition is as follows: If a current impulse be di-

rected through the two circuits of the motor, it will quickly energize the cores B, but not so the cores C, for the reason that in passing through the coils E there is encountered the influence of the closed magnetic circuits formed by the shields H. The first effect is to effectively retard the current impulse in circuit G, while at the same time the proportion of current which does pass does not magnetize the cores C, which are shielded or screened by the shields H. As the increasing electro-motive force then urges more current through the coils E, the iron wire H becomes magnetically saturated and incapable of carrying all the lines of force, and hence ceases to protect the cores C, which become magnetized, developing their maximum effect after an interval of time subsequent to the similar manifestation of strength in the other set of magnets, the extent of which is arbitrarily determined by the thickness of the shield H, and other well-understood conditions.

From the above it will be seen that the apparatus or device acts in two ways. First, by retarding the current, and, second, by retarding the magnetization of one set of the cores, from which its effectiveness will readily appear.

Many modifications of the principle of this invention are possible. One useful and efficient application of the invention is shown in Fig. 2. In said figure a motor is shown similar in all respects to that above described, except that the iron wire H, which is wrapped around the coils E, is in this case connected in series with the coils D. The iron-wire coils H, are connected and wound, so as to have little or no self-induction, and being added to the resistance of the circuit F the

action of the current in that circuit will be accelerated, while in the other circuit G it will be retarded. The shield H may be made in many forms, as will be understood, and used in different ways, as appears from the foregoing description. I do not, however, limit myself to any specific form or arrangement; but

What I claim is—

1. In an alternating-current motor having two energizing-circuits, the combination, with the magnetic cores and coils of one of the circuits, of interposed magnetic shields or screens for retarding the magnetization of said cores, as set forth.

2. In an alternating-current motor having two energizing-circuits, the combination, with the magnetic cores and the coils of one of the circuits wound thereon, of magnetic shields or coils wound around said coils at right angles to their convolutions, as set forth.

3. In an alternating-current motor having two energizing-circuits, the combination, with the magnetic cores and the coils of one of the circuits which energize the said cores, of magnetic shields forming closed magnetic circuits around the coils and interposed between the coils and cores, as set forth.

4. In an alternating-current motor having two energizing-circuits derived from the same source, the combination, with the cores and the coils of one of the circuits that energizes the same, of insulated iron-wire coils wound on the said energizing-coils at right angles to their convolutions and connected up in series with the coils of the other energizing-circuit, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

ROBT. F. GAYLORD,
PARKER W. PAGE.

(No Model.)

N. TESLA.

ALTERNATING CURRENT ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 433,700.

Patented Aug. 5, 1890.

Fig. 1

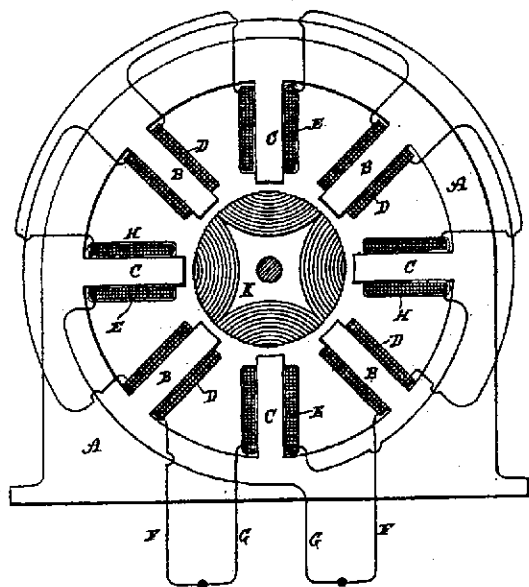
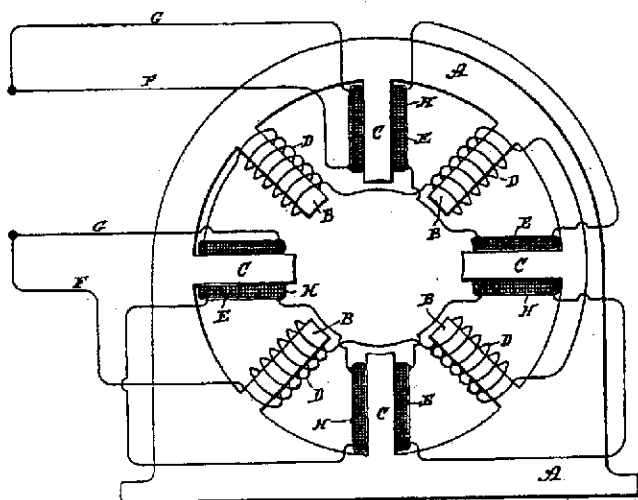


Fig. 2



Witnesses:

Raphael Netter
Ernest Hopkinson

Inventor

Nikola Tesla
by
Duncan, Curtis & Page
Attorneys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

ALTERNATING-CURRENT MOTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 433,701, dated August 5, 1890.

Application filed March 26, 1890. Serial No. 345,389. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria-Hungary, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Alternating-Current Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

This invention relates to that class of alternating-current motors in which the field-magnets are energized by coils connected up in two circuits derived from the same source and having different degrees of self-induction, whereby the currents in one circuit or branch are retarded more than in the other, with the result of producing a progressive advance or rotation of the points of maximum magnetic effect in the field that maintains the armature in rotation. In motors of this kind I have employed, among other means, a self-induction coil in one circuit and a dead-resistance in the other, or I have secured the same result by the special character of the winding of the two circuits, and in still another instance I have so constructed the motor that the retarded-current coils were nearly inclosed by iron, whereby the self-induction of such coils was very greatly increased.

The invention on subject of this application is an improvement on this last-named plan.

In carrying out the invention I construct a field-magnet having two sets of poles or inwardly-projecting cores and placed side by side, so as practically to form two fields of force and alternately disposed—that is to say, with the poles of one set or field opposite the spaces between the other. I then connect the free ends of one set of poles by means of laminated-iron bands or bridge-pieces of considerably smaller cross-section than the cores themselves, whereby the cores will all form parts of complete magnetic circuits. When the coils on each set of magnets are connected in multiple circuits or branches from a source of alternating currents, electro-motive force is set up in or impressed upon each circuit simultaneously; but the coils on

the magnetically bridged or shunted cores will have, by reason of the closed magnetic circuits, a high self-induction, which retards the current, permitting at the beginning of each impulse but little current to pass. On the other hand, no such opposition being encountered in the other set of coils, the current passes freely through them, magnetizing the poles on which they are wound. As soon, however, as the laminated bridges become saturated and incapable of carrying all the lines of force, which the rising electro-motive force, and consequently increased current, produce, free poles are developed at the ends of the cores, which, acting in conjunction with the others, produce rotation of the armature.

The construction in detail by which this invention is illustrated is shown in the accompanying drawings.

Figure 1 is a view in side elevation of a motor embodying the invention. Fig. 2 is a vertical cross-section of the same.

A is the frame of the motor, which is preferably built up of sheets of iron punched out to the desired shape and bolted together with insulation of a proper character between the sheets. When complete, the frame makes a field-magnet with inwardly-projecting pole-pieces B and C. To adapt them to the requirements of this particular case these pole-pieces are out of line with one another, those marked B surrounding one end of the armature and the others, as C, the opposite end, and they are disposed alternately—that is to say, the pole-pieces of one set occur in line with the spaces between those of the other sets.

The armature D is of cylindrical form, and is also laminated in the usual way and is wound longitudinally with coils closed upon themselves. The pole-pieces C are connected or shunted by bridge-pieces E. These may be made independently and attached to the pole-pieces, or they may be parts of the forms or blanks stamped or punched out of sheet-iron. Their size or mass is determined by various conditions, such as the strength of the current to be employed, the mass or size of the cores to which they are applied, and other well-understood conditions.

Coils F surround the pole-pieces B, and other coils G are wound on the pole-pieces C.

These coils are connected in series in two circuits, which are branches of a circuit from a generator of alternating currents, and they may be so wound, or the respective circuits in which they are included may be so arranged, that the circuit of coils G will have independently of the particular construction herein described a higher self-induction than the other circuit or branch.

The function of the shunts or bridges E is that they shall form with the cores C a closed magnetic circuit for a current up to a predetermined strength, so that when saturated by such current and unable to carry more lines of force than such a current produces they will to no further appreciable extent interfere with the development by a stronger current of free magnetic poles at the ends of the cores C.

In such a motor the current is so retarded in the coils G and the manifestation of the free magnetism in the poles C is delayed beyond the period of maximum magnetic effect in poles B that a strong torque is produced and the motor operates with approximately the power developed in a motor of this kind energized by independently-generated currents differing by a full-quarter phase.

What I claim in this application is—

1. In an alternating-current motor having two sets or series of pole-pieces, the combination, with one of such sets or series, of mag-

netic shunts or bridges connecting their free ends, as herein set forth.

2. In an alternating-current motor having two sets or series of pole-pieces energized by coils in independent circuits from the same source, the combination, with one of the sets or series of pole-pieces, of magnetic shunts or bridges connecting their free ends, as described.

3. In an alternating-current motor having a laminated or subdivided field-magnet provided with two sets or series of cores or pole-pieces, the combination, with such pole-pieces, of energizing-coils connected, respectively, in two circuits derived from the same source of alternating currents and laminated or subdivided iron shunts or bridges of smaller cross-section than the pole-pieces and joining the free ends of all the cores or pole-pieces of one set to form closed magnetic circuits, as set forth.

4. In an alternating-current motor, the combination, with a set or series of field-poles and energizing-coils wound thereon, of an intermediate set of pole-pieces forming portions of closed magnetic circuits and coils thereon in a circuit derived from the same source of alternating currents as the other, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

ROBT. F. GAYLORD,
PARKER W. PAGE.

(No Model.)

N. TESLA.
ALTERNATING CURRENT MOTOR.

No. 433,701.

Patented Aug. 5, 1890.

Fig. 1

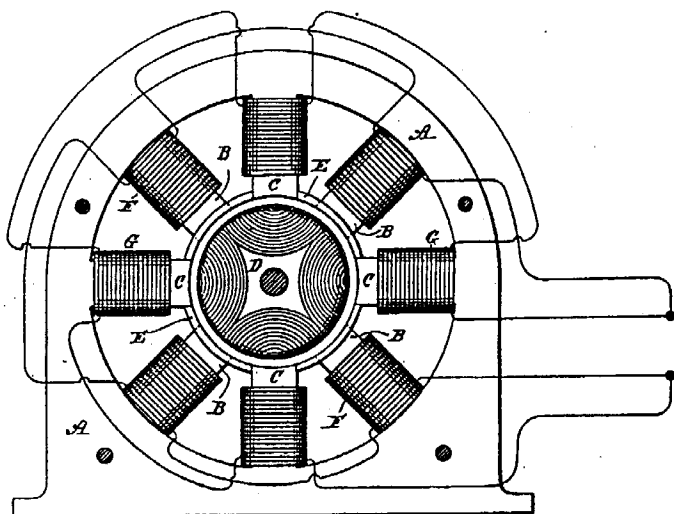
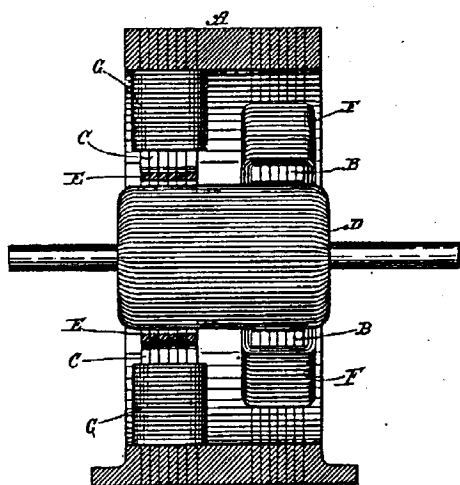


Fig. 2



Witnesses:

Raphael Netter

Ernest Hopkinson

Inventor

Nikola Tesla

by

Duncan, Curtis & Page

Attorneys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

ELECTRICAL TRANSFORMER OR INDUCTION DEVICE.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 433,702, dated August 5, 1890.

Application filed March 26, 1890. Serial No. 345,390. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria-Hungary, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Electrical Transformers or Induction Devices, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

This invention is an improvement in electrical transformers or converters, and has for its main objects the provision of means for securing, first, a phase difference between the primary and secondary currents adapted to the operation of my alternating-current motors and other like purposes, and, second, a constant current for all loads imposed upon the secondary.

In transformers as constructed now and heretofore it will be found that the electromotive force of the secondary very nearly coincides with that of the primary, being, however, of opposite sign. At the same time the currents, both primary and secondary, lag behind their respective electro-motive forces; but as this lag is practically or nearly the same in the case of each it follows that the maximum and minimum of the primary and secondary currents will nearly coincide, but differ in sign or direction, provided the secondary be not loaded or if it contain devices having the property of self-induction. On the other hand, the lag of the primary behind the impressed electro-motive force may be diminished by loading the secondary with a non-inductive or dead resistance—such as incandescent lamps—whereby the time interval between the maximum or the minimum periods of the primary and secondary currents is increased. This time interval, however, is limited, and the results obtained by phase difference in the operation of such devices as my alternating-current motors can only be approximately realized by such means of producing or securing this difference, as above indicated, for it is desirable in such cases that there should exist between the primary and secondary currents, or those which, however

produced, pass through the two circuits of the motor, a difference of phase of ninety degrees; or, in other words, the current in one circuit should be maximum when that in the other circuit is minimum. To more perfectly attain to this condition I obtain or secure an increased retardation of the secondary current in the following manner: Instead of bringing the primary and secondary coils or circuits of a transformer into the closest possible relations, as has hitherto been done, I protect in a measure the secondary from the inductive action or effect of the primary by surrounding either the primary or the secondary with a comparatively-thin magnetic shield or screen. Under these conditions or circumstances, as long as the primary current has a small value, the shield protects the secondary; but as soon as the primary current has reached a certain strength, which is arbitrarily determined, the protecting magnetic shield becomes saturated and the inductive action upon the secondary begins. It results, therefore, that the secondary current begins to flow at a certain fraction of a period later than it would without the interposed shield, and since this retardation may be obtained without necessarily retarding the primary current also, an additional lag is secured, and the time interval between the maximum or minimum periods of the primary and secondary currents is increased. I have further discovered that such a transformer may, by properly proportioning its several elements and determining in a manner well understood the proper relations between the primary and secondary windings, the thickness of the magnetic shield, and other conditions, be constructed to yield a constant current at all loads. No precise rules can be given for the specific construction and proportions for securing the best results, as this is a matter determined by experiment and calculation in particular cases; but the general plan of construction which I have described will be found under all conditions to conduce to the attainment of this result.

In the accompanying drawings I have illustrated the construction above set forth.

Figure 1 is a cross-section of a transformer embodying my improvement. Fig. 2 is a simi-

lar view of a modified form of transformer, showing diagrammatically the manner of using the same.

A A is the main core of the transformer, composed of a ring of soft annealed and insulated or oxidized iron wire. Upon this core is wound the secondary circuit or coil B B. This latter is then covered with a layer or layers of annealed and insulated iron wires C C, wound in a direction at right angles to said secondary coil. Over the whole is then wound the primary coil or wire D D. From the nature of this construction it will soon be obvious that as long as the shield formed by the wires C is below magnetic saturation the secondary coil or circuit is effectually protected or shielded from the inductive influence of the primary, although I would state that on open circuit it may exhibit some electro-motive force. When the strength of the primary reaches a certain value, the shield C, becoming saturated, ceases to protect the secondary from inductive action, and current is in consequence developed therein. For similar reasons, when the primary current weakens, the weakening of the secondary is retarded to the same or approximately the same extent.

The specific construction of the transformer is largely immaterial. In Fig. 2, for example, the core A is built up of thin insulated iron plates or disks. The primary circuit D is wound next the core A. Over this is applied the shield C, which in this case is made up of thin strips or plates of iron properly insulated and surrounding the primary, forming a closed magnetic circuit. The secondary B is wound over the shield C. In Fig. 2, also, E is a source of alternating or rapidly changing currents. The primary of the transformer is connected with the circuit of the generator.

F is a two-circuit alternating-current mo-

tor, one of the circuits being connected with the main circuit from the source E, and the other being supplied with currents from the secondary of the transformer.

Having now described my invention, what I claim is—

1. In an electrical transformer or induction device, the combination, with the main magnetic core and the primary and secondary coils or circuits, of a magnetic shield or screen interposed between said coils, as herein set forth.

2. In an electrical transformer or inductive device, the combination, with the magnetic core and the primary and secondary coils or circuits, of a magnetic shield or screen surrounding one of said coils only, as set forth.

3. In an electrical transformer or induction device, the combination, with the magnetic core and the primary and secondary coils wound thereon, of a magnetic shield or screen wound on or built up around one only of said coils, as described.

4. In an electrical transformer or induction device, the combination, with a main laminated magnetic core and primary and secondary coils thereon, of a subdivided or laminated magnetic shield or screen interposed between the coils, as set forth.

5. In an electrical transformer, the combination, with a magnetic core and primary and secondary coils wound thereon, of a magnetic shield or screen interposed between said coils and surrounding one of them and adapted to be or capable of being magnetically saturated by a predetermined current strength below the maximum in the primary, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

ROBT. F. GAYLORD,
PARKER W. PAGE.

Fig. 1

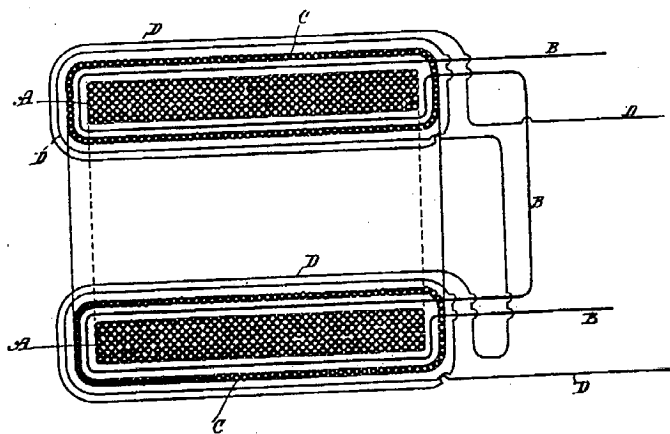
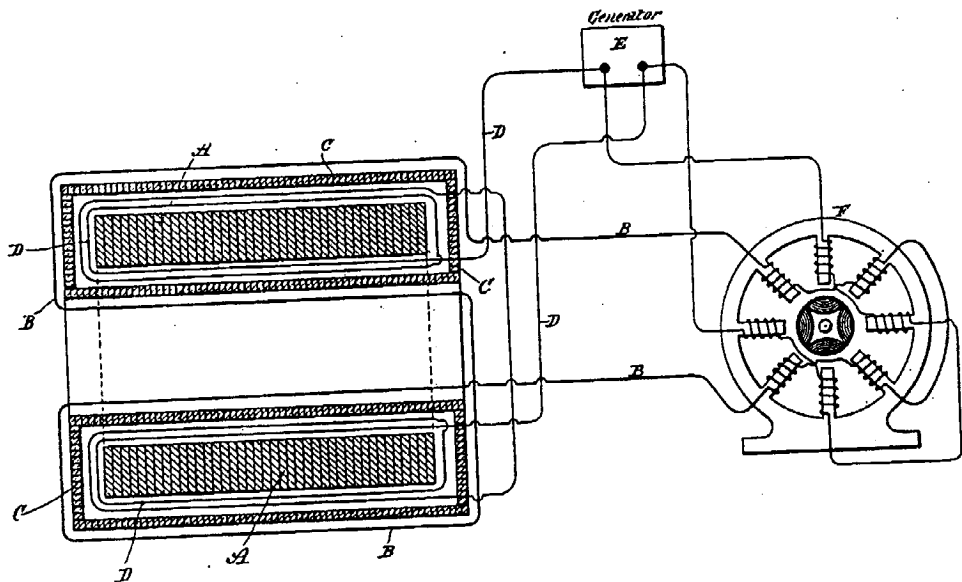


Fig. 2



Witnesses:

Raphael Netter

Emil Lupton

Inventor

Nikola Tesla

by
Duncan, Curtis & Page

Attorneys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

ELECTRO-MAGNETIC MOTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 433,703, dated August 5, 1890.

Application filed April 4, 1890. Serial No. 346,603. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria-Hungary, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Electro-Magnetic Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

This invention is an improvement in alternating-current motors, and has for its general object to produce a single-circuit alternating-current torque-motor of economical and simple construction.

The nature of the invention will be understood from the following statement.

It is well known that if a magnetic core, even if laminated or subdivided, be wound with an insulated coil and a current of electricity directed through the coil the magnetization of the entire core does not immediately ensue, the magnetizing effect not being exhibited in all parts simultaneously. This I attribute to the fact that the action of the current is to energize first those laminae or parts of the core near the surface and adjacent to the exciting-coil, and from thence the action progresses toward the interior. A certain interval of time therefore elapses between the manifestation of magnetism in the external and the internal sections or layers of the core. If the core be thin or of small mass, this effect may be inappreciable; but in the case of a thick core or even of a comparatively thin one, if the number of alternation or rate of change of the current strength be very great the time interval occurring between the manifestations of magnetism in the interior of the core and in those parts adjacent to the coil is more marked, and in the construction of such apparatus as motors which are designed to be run by alternating or equivalent currents—such as pulsating or undulating currents generally—I have found it desirable and even necessary to give due consideration to this phenomenon and to make special provisions in order to obviate its consequences. The specific object of my present invention is to take advantage of this action or effect, and

by rendering it more pronounced to utilize it in the operation of motors in general. This object I attain by constructing a field-magnet in which the parts of the core or cores that exhibit at different intervals of time the magnetic effect imparted to them by alternating or equivalent currents in an energizing coil or coils are so placed with relation to a rotating armature as to exert thereon their attractive effect successively in the order of their magnetization. By this means I secure a similar result to that which I have heretofore attained in other forms or types of motor in which by means of one or more alternating currents I have produced a rotation or progression of the magnetic poles or points of maximum attraction of the field of force.

In the drawings I have shown a simple form of motor, which will serve to demonstrate the principle of the mode of operation, which I have above described in general terms.

Figure 1 is a side elevation of such motor. Fig. 2 is a side elevation of a more practicable and efficient embodiment of the invention. Fig. 3 is a central vertical section of the same in the plane of the axis of rotation.

Referring to Fig. 1, let X represent a large iron core, which may be composed of a number of sheets or laminae of soft iron or steel. Surrounding this core is a coil Y, which is connected with a source E of rapidly-varying currents. Let us consider now the magnetic conditions existing in this core at any point, as *b*, at or near the center, and any other point, as *a*, nearer the surface. When a current-pulse is started in the magnetizing-coil Y, the section or part at *a*, being close to the coil, is immediately energized, while the section or part at *b*, which, to use a convenient expression, is "protected" by the intervening sections or layers between *a* and *b*, does not at once exhibit its magnetism. However, as the magnetization of *a* increases, *b* becomes also affected, reaching finally its maximum strength some time later than *a*. Upon the weakening of the current the magnetization of *a* first diminishes, while *b* still exhibits its maximum strength; but the continued weakening of *a* is attended by a subsequent weakening of *b*. Assuming the cur-

rent to be an alternating one, *a* will now be reversed, while *b* still continues of the first-imparted polarity. This action continues the magnetic condition of *b*, following that of *a* in the manner above described. If an armature—for instance, a simple disk *F*, mounted to rotate freely on an axis—be brought into proximity to the core, a movement of rotation will be imparted to the disk, the direction depending upon its position relatively to the core, the tendency being to turn the portion of the disk nearest to the core from *a* to *b*, as indicated in Fig. 1. This action or principle of operation I have embodied in a practicable form of motor, which is illustrated in Fig. 2. Let *A* in said figure represent a circular frame of iron, from diametrically-opposite points of the interior of which the cores project. Each core is composed of three main parts *B*, *B*, and *C*, and they are similarly formed with a straight portion or body *e*, around which the energizing-coil is wound, a curved arm or extension *c*, and an inwardly-projecting pole or end *d*. Each core is made up of two parts *B B*, with their polar extensions reaching in one direction and a part *C* between the other two and with its polar extension reaching in the opposite direction. In order to lessen in the cores the circulation of currents induced therein, the several sections are insulated from one another in the manner usually followed in such cases. These cores are wound with coils *D*, which are connected in the same circuit, either in parallel or series, and supplied with an alternating or a pulsating current, preferably the former, by a generator *E*, represented diagrammatically. Between the cores or their polar extensions is mounted a cylindrical or similar armature *F*, wound with magnetizing-coils *G*, that are closed upon themselves, as is usual in motors of this general class.

The operation of this motor is as follows: When a current impulse or alternation is directed through the coils *D*, the sections *B B* of the cores, being on the surface and in close proximity to the coils, are immediately energized. The sections *C*, on the other hand, are protected from the magnetizing influence of the coil by the interposed layers of iron *B B*. As the magnetism of *B B* increases, however, the sections *C* are also energized; but they do not attain their maximum strength until a certain time subsequent to the exhibition by the sections *B B* of their maximum. Upon the weakening of the current the magnetic strength of *B B* first diminishes, while the sections *C* have still their maximum strength; but as *B B* continue to weaken the interior

sections are similarly weakened. *B B* may then begin to exhibit an opposite polarity, which is followed later by a similar change on *C*, and this action continues. *B B* and *C* may therefore be considered as separate field-magnets, being extended so as to act on the armature in the most efficient positions, and the effect is similar to that in my other forms of motor—viz., a rotation or progression of the maximum points of the field of force. Any armature—such, for instance, as a disk—mounted in this field would rotate from the pole first to exhibit its magnetism to that which exhibits it later.

It is evident that the principle herein described may be carried out in conjunction with other means, such as I have elsewhere set forth, for securing a more favorable or efficient action of the motor. For example, the polar extensions of the sections *C* may be wound or surrounded by closed coils *L*, as indicated by dotted lines in Fig. 2. The effect of these coils will be to still more effectively retard the magnetization of the polar extensions of *C*.

I do not wish to be understood as limiting myself to any particular construction of this form of motor, as the same principle of action or operation may be carried out in a great variety of forms.

What I claim is—

1. In an alternating-current motor, the combination, with an energizing-coil and a core composed of two parts, one protected from magnetization by the other interposed between it and the coil, of an armature mounted with the influence of the fields of force produced by said parts, as set forth.
2. The combination, in an alternating-current motor, of a rotating armature, a field-magnet composed of a coil and a core with two sections in proximity to the coil and an inner section between the same, the sections being formed or provided with polar projections extending in opposite directions over or around the armature, as set forth.
3. The combination, in an alternating-current motor, of a rotating armature, a frame and field-magnets thereon, each composed of an energizing-coil wound around a core made up of outer and inner or protected magnetic sections, each of which is formed or provided with independent laterally-extended pole pieces or projections, as herein described.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

ROBT. F. GAYLORD,
PARKER W. PAGE.

(No Model.)

N. TESLA.
ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 433,703.

Patented Aug. 5, 1890.

Fig. 1

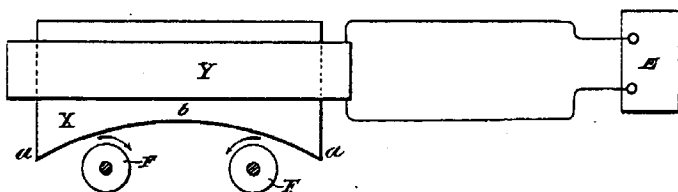


Fig. 2

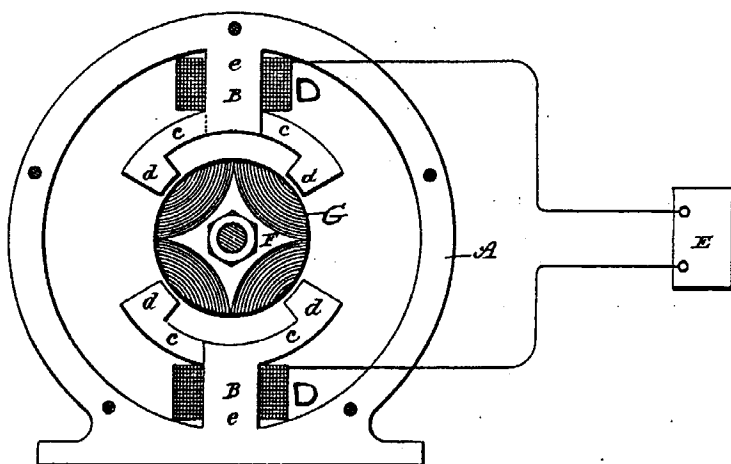
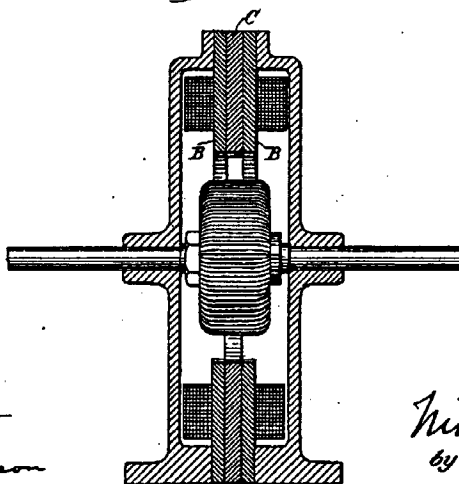


Fig. 3



Witnesses:

Haphaël Netter
Ernest Hopkinson

Inventor

Nikola Tesla

by

Duncan, Curtis & Page

Attorneys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

ELECTRO-MAGNETIC MOTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 445,207, dated January 27, 1891.

Application filed May 20, 1889. Serial No. 311,417. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria-Hungary, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Electro-Magnetic Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

Among the various forms of alternating-current motors invented by me is one which I have described in other applications, and which is constructed as follows: I build a field-core with, say, four poles, between which is mounted an armature that is generally wound with closed coils. On two of the opposite poles of the field I wind primary coils, which are connected up in the main circuit. On the same cores I also wind secondary coils, which are closed through coils on the other pair or set of poles. In this motor when an alternating current is caused to pass through the primary coils it energizes directly one set of poles and induces currents in the secondary coils, which act to energize the other poles; but the phases of the current in the secondary coils may differ in time from those of the primary current, and hence a rotation or shifting of the poles is effected that imparts rotation to the motor.

These motors may be constructed in many other ways; but for purposes of this case it is only necessary to consider the specific form which I have thus generally described, as my improvements relate mainly to such form.

The object of my present invention is to render this form of motor more efficient and to improve its action or mode of operation.

In the motors constructed in accordance with this principle I bring two energizing-circuits into inductive relation in the motor itself—that is to say, the secondary currents which energize one set of the field-cores are induced in the motor itself, and the employment of an external induction device is thus avoided. The operation of these motors, however, is dependent upon the existence of a certain difference of phase between the currents in the primary and secondary coils. To obtain a difference of phase or lag that is

suitable to working conditions is the specific object of my present invention.

The following explanations will serve to illustrate the principle upon which said invention is based. Let it be assumed that an ordinary alternating-current generator is connected up in a circuit of practically no self-induction, such, for example, as a circuit containing incandescent lamps only. On the operation of the machine alternating currents will be developed in the circuit, and the phases of these currents will theoretically coincide with the phases of the impressed electro-motive force. Such currents may be regarded and designated as the “unretarded currents.”

It will be understood, of course, that in practice there is always more or less self-induction in the circuit, which modifies to a corresponding extent these conditions; but for convenience this may be disregarded in the consideration of the principle of operation, since the same laws apply. Assume next that a path of currents be formed across any two points of the above circuit, consisting, for example, of the primary of an induction device. The phases of the currents passing through the primary, owing to the self-induction of the same, will not coincide with the phases of the impressed electro-motive force, but will lag behind the same, such lag being directly proportional to the self-induction and inversely proportional to the resistance of the said coil. The insertion of this coil will also cause a lagging or retardation of the currents traversing and delivered by the generator behind the impressed electro-motive force, such lag being the mean or resultant of the lag of the current through the primary alone and that of what I have designated the “unretarded current” in the entire working-circuit. Next consider the conditions imposed by the association in inductive relation with the primary coil of a secondary coil. The current generated in the secondary coil will react upon the primary current, modifying the retardation of the same, according to the amount of self-induction and resistance in the secondary circuit. If the secondary circuit have but little self-induction—as, for instance, when it contains incandescent lamps only—it will increase the

actual difference of phase between its own and the primary current, first, by diminishing the lag between the primary current and the impressed electro-motive force, and, second, by its own lag or retardation behind the impressed electro-motive force. On the other hand, if the secondary circuit have a high self-induction its lag behind the current in the primary is directly increased, while it will be still further increased if the primary have a very low self-induction. The better results are obtained when the primary has a low self-induction. I apply these principles to the construction of a motor which I shall now describe.

The details of the improvements are illustrated in the drawings, in which—

Figure 1 is a diagram of a motor exhibiting my invention. Fig. 2 is a similar diagram of a modification of the same.

In Fig. 1 let A designate the field-magnet of a motor which, as in all these motors, is built up of sections or plates. B C are polar projections upon which the coils are wound. Upon one pair of these poles, as C, I wind primary coils D, which are directly connected to the circuit of an alternating-current generator G. On the same poles I also wind secondary coils F, either side by side or over or under the primary coils, and these I connect with other coils E, which surround the poles B B. The currents in both primary and secondary coils in such a motor will be retarded or will lag behind the impressed electro-motive force; but to secure a proper difference in phase between the primary and secondary currents themselves I increase the resistance of the circuit of the secondary and reduce as much as practicable its self-induction. I do this by using for the secondary circuit, particularly in the coils E, wire of comparatively small diameter and having but few turns around the cores; or I use some conductor of higher specific resistance, such as German silver; or I may introduce at some point in the secondary circuit an artificial resistance R. Thus the self-induction of the secondary is kept down and its resistance increased with the result of decreasing the lag between the impressed electro-motive force and the current in the primary coils and increasing the difference of phase between the primary and secondary currents.

In the disposition shown in Fig. 2 the lag in the secondary is increased by increasing the self-induction of that circuit, while the increased tendency of the primary to lag is

counteracted by inserting therein a dead resistance. The primary coils D in this case have a low self-induction and high resistance, while the coils E F, included in the secondary circuit, have a high self-induction and low resistance. This may be done by the proper winding of the coils, or in the circuit including the secondary coils E F, I may introduce a self-induction coil S, while in the primary circuit from the generator G and including coils D, I may insert a dead resistance R. By this means the difference of phase between the primary and secondary is increased. It is evident that both means of increasing the difference of phase—namely, by the special winding as well as by the supplemental or external inductive and dead resistance—may be employed conjointly.

In the operation of this motor the current impulses in the primary coils induce currents in the secondary coils, and by the conjoint action of the two the points of greatest magnetic attraction are shifted or rotated.

In practice I have found it desirable to wind the armature with closed coils in which currents are induced by the action thereon of the primaries.

I do not claim, broadly, herein the method of operating motors by inducing in one circuit currents by means of those in another, nor the other features herein not specifically pointed out in the claims, having personally filed applications for such features.

What I claim is—

1. The combination, in a motor, of a primary energizing-circuit adapted to be connected with the circuit of a generator and a secondary energizing-circuit in inductive relation thereto, the two circuits being of different electrical character or resistance, as set forth.

2. The combination, in a motor, of a primary energizing-circuit adapted to be connected with the circuit of a generator and a secondary energizing-circuit in inductive relation thereto, the two circuits being of different self-induction, as herein set forth.

3. The combination, in a motor, of primary energizing-coils adapted to be connected to a source of current and secondary energizing-coils in a circuit in inductive relation thereto, one set of said coils being formed by conductors of small size and few turns, the other by conductors of larger size, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

R. J. STONEY, Jr.,
E. P. COFFIN.

(No Model.)

N. TESLA.
ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 445,207.

Patented Jan. 27, 1891.

Fig. 1

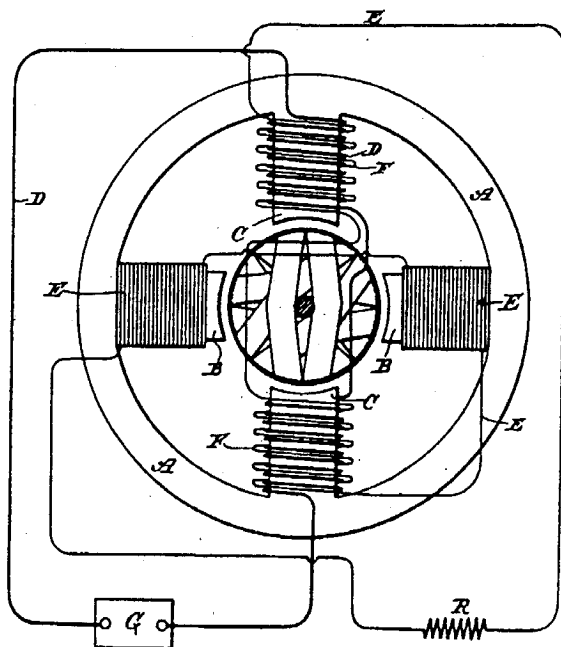
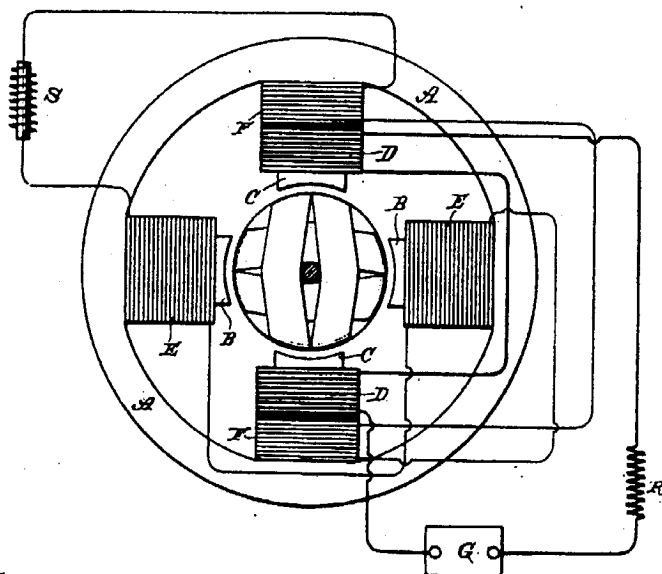


Fig. 2



Witnesses:
Raphael Netter
Frank & Hartley

Inventor:
Nikola Tesla
By
Duncan, Curtis & Page
Attorneys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

ALTERNATING-ELECTRIC-CURRENT GENERATOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 447,921, dated March 10, 1891.

Application filed November 15, 1890. Serial No. 371,654. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Alternating-Current Machines, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the accompanying drawings.

In the systems of distribution of electrical energy from alternating-current generators in present use the generators give ordinarily from one to three hundred alternations of current per second. I have recognized and demonstrated in practice that it is of great advantage, on many accounts, to employ in such systems generators capable of producing a very much greater number of alternations per second—say fifteen thousand per second or many more. To produce such a high rate of alternation, it is necessary to construct a machine with a great number of poles or polar projections; but such construction, on this account, in order to be efficient, is rendered difficult. If an armature without polar projections be used, it is not easy to obtain the necessary strength of field, mainly in consequence of the comparatively great leakage of the lines of force from pole to pole. If, on the contrary, an armature-core formed or provided with polar projections be employed, it is evident that a limit is soon reached at which the iron is not economically utilized, being incapable of following without considerable loss the rapid reversals of polarity. To obviate these and other difficulties, I have devised a form of machine embodying the following general features of construction.

I provide a field-magnet core made up of two independent parts formed with grooves for the reception of one or more energizing-coils. The energizing coil, or coils, is completely surrounded by the iron core, except on one side, where occurs the opening between the polar faces of the core, which opening is made as narrow as the conditions of the machine will permit. The polar faces of the core of the field are not smooth, but formed with a great many projections or serrations, the points of which in one side or polar face are preferably exactly opposite those in the

other. Between the faces so formed I mount or support the armature coil or coils and provide either for rotating the field-magnet or the armature, or both, and I arrange the said armature-coil or conductor so that it will be symmetrically disposed with respect to the field—that is to say, so that when one portion of the conductor is passing through the strongest portion of the field the other portion, which forms the return for the former, is passing through the weakest points or parts of the field. The strongest points of the field, it will be understood, are those between the projections or points on the polar faces, while the weakest points lie midway between them.

A field-magnet, when constructed as above described, produces, when the energizing-coil is traversed by a continuous current, a field of great strength, and one which may be made to vary greatly in intensity at points not farther distant from one another than the eighth of an inch. In a machine thus constructed there is comparatively little of that effect which is known as "magnetic leakage," and there is also but a slight armature reaction. Either the armature-conductor or the field-magnet may be stationary while the other rotates, and as it is often desirable to maintain the conductors stationary and to rotate the field-magnet I have made a special modification of the construction of the machine for this purpose, and with a view in such case of still further simplifying the machine and rendering it more easy to maintain in operation I arrange the armature-conductors and the frame or supports therefor so as to support also a fixed coil or coils for energizing the rotating field-magnet, thus obviating the employment of all sliding contacts.

In the accompanying drawings I have illustrated the two typical forms of my machine above referred to.

Figure 1 is a vertical central section of the machine, taken on lines $x x$ of Fig. 2; and Fig. 2 is a horizontal section on line $y y$ of Fig. 1. The machine in these two figures is one in which the armature-conductor and the field-coil are stationary while the field-magnet core revolves. Fig. 3 is a vertical central section of a machine embodying the same plan of construction, but having a stationary field-

magnet and rotating armature. Fig. 4 is a diagram illustrating the peculiar configuration of the polar faces and the relation of the armature conductor or conductors thereto.

5 In Figs. 1 and 2, A A designate two cylindrical castings provided with bracket-arms B B, in which latter are bushings C for the rotating shaft. The conductor in which the currents are induced may be constructed or
10 arranged in various ways; but I prefer to form it in the following manner: I take an annular plate of copper D and by means of a saw or other cutting-tool cut in it radial slots from one edge nearly through to the other, beginning alternately from opposite edges.
15 In this way a continuous zigzag conductor is formed. To the inner edge of this plate are secured two rings of non-magnetic metal E, which are insulated from the copper conductor, but held firmly thereto, as by means
20 of bolts F. Within the rings E is then placed an annular coil G, which is the energizing-coil for the field-magnet. The conductor D and the parts attached thereto are supported
25 by means of the cylindrical shell or casting A A, the two parts of which are brought together and clamped by bolts F' to the outer edge of the conductor D. The conductor D is also insulated from the shell A.
30 The core for the field-magnet is built up of two circular parts H H, formed with annular grooves I, which, when the two parts are brought together, form a space for the reception of the energizing-coil G. The central
35 parts or hubs of the cores H H are trued off, so as to fit closely against one another, while the outer portions or flanges which form the polar faces J J are reduced somewhat in thickness to make room for the conductor D, and
40 are serrated on their faces or provided in any other convenient way with polar projections. The two parts of the core H H are mounted on and fixed to the shaft K, and are bound together by bolts L. The number of serrations in the polar faces is arbitrary; but there
45 must exist between them and the radial portions of the conductor D a certain relation, which will be understood by reference to Fig. 4, in which N N represent the projections or
50 points on one face of the core of the field, and S S the points of the other face. The conductor D is shown in this figure in section, *a a'* designating the radial portions of the conductor, and *b* the insulating-divisions
55 between the same. The relative width of the parts *a a'* and the space between any two adjacent points N N or S S is such that when the radial portions *a* of the conductor are passing between the opposite points N S, where the field is strongest, the intermediate
60 radial portions *a'* are passing through the widest spaces midway between such points and where the field is weakest. Since the core on one side is of opposite polarity to the
65 part facing it, all the points or projections of one polar face will be of opposite polarity to those of the other face. Hence, although the

space between any two adjacent points on the same face may be extremely small, there will be no leakage of the magnetic lines between
70 any two points of the same name; but the lines of force will pass across from one set of points to the other. The construction followed obviates to a great degree the distortion of the magnetic lines by the action of the
75 current in the conductor D, in which it will be observed the current is flowing at any given time from the center toward the periphery in one set of radial parts *a* and in the opposite direction in the adjacent parts *a'*.
80

In order to connect the energizing coil G with a source of continuous current, I have found it convenient to utilize two adjacent radial portions of the conductor D for connecting the terminals of the coil G with two binding-posts M. For this purpose the plate D is cut entirely through, as shown, and the break thus made is bridged over by a short conductor c.

At any convenient point the plate D is cut
90 through to form two terminals *d*, which are connected to binding-posts N.

The core H H, when rotated by the driving-pulley P, generates in the conductors D an alternating current, which is taken off from
95 the binding-posts N. It will be observed that from the nature of the construction described this machine is capable of producing an alternating current of an enormously high rate of alternations.
100

When it is desired to rotate the conductor between the faces of a stationary field-magnet, I adopt the construction shown in Fig. 3. The conductor D in this case is or may be made in substantially the same manner as
105 above described by slotting an annular conducting-plate and supporting it between two heads O, held together by bolts o and fixed to the driving-shaft K. The inner edge of the plate or conductor D is preferably flanged
110 to secure a firmer union between it and the heads O. It is insulated from said head. The field-magnet in this case consists of two annular parts H H, provided with annular grooves I for the reception of the coils. The
115 flanges or faces surrounding the annular groove are brought together, while the inner flanges are serrated, as in the previous case, and form the polar faces. The two parts H H are formed with a base R, upon which the
120 machine rests.

S S are non-magnetic bushings secured or set in the central opening of the cores.

The conductor D is cut entirely through at one point to form terminals, from which insulated conductors T are led through the
125 shaft to collecting-rings V.

What I claim is—

1. The combination, in an annular field of force formed by opposing polar faces with
130 radial grooves or serrations and with said poles, of a connected series of radial conductors so disposed with relation to the serrations that while one portion of the radial conduct-

ors is passing between the strongest parts of the field, or the points where the two poles most nearly approach, the adjacent or intermediate conductors will pass through the weakest parts of the field, or the points where the two poles are most remote, as set forth.

2. The combination, with a connected series of radial conductors forming an annular coil, of a stationary two-part supporting-frame clamped to and insulated from the outer ends of said conductors, a ring formed in two parts clamped to the inner ends of the same, an energizing-coil contained in said ring, and a field-core made in two parts and inclosing said energizing-coil and presenting annular polar faces to the series of radial conductors, as described.

3. The combination, with the annular conducting-plate slotted to form a connected series of radial conductors, a sectional supporting-frame secured to and insulated from the outer edge of the slotted plate, a sectional ring secured to and insulated from the inner edge of said plate, a hollow energizing-coil contained in said ring, and a field-core composed of two parts bolted together and recessed to inclose the energizing-coil, said cores being mounted in a rotating shaft, as set forth.

4. The combination, with two annular polar faces of opposite magnetic polarity and formed with opposite points, projections, or serrations, of a conductor turned back upon itself in substantially radial convolutions and mounted in the annular field, whereby a rotation of the field or said conductor will develop therein an alternating current, as set forth.

5. The combination, with a polar face of given polarity formed with grooves or serrations, of a polar face of opposite polarity with corresponding grooves or serrations, the two

polar faces being placed with their grooves opposite to each other, and a conductor or coil mounted between said faces with the capability of movement across the lines of force in a direction at right angles to that of the grooves or serrations, as set forth.

6. In a magneto-electric machine, the combination of a sectional frame, a field-magnet core composed of two connected parts, a rotating shaft on which said core is mounted, a conductor in which currents are to be induced, the convolutions of which are radially disposed between the polar faces of the field-core and secured to and supported by the frame, and an energizing-coil for the field-core supported by the induced-current coil and contained in an annular recess formed by grooves in the faces of the two sections of the field-core.

7. The combination, with opposing field-magnet poles formed with projections or serrations in their faces, the highest parts or prominences of one face being opposite to those of the other, of a conductor the convolutions of which are adapted to pass at right angles through the magnetic lines between the opposing prominences, as set forth.

8. The combination, with a rotating field-magnet core having two opposing and annular polar faces with radial grooves or serrations therein systematically disposed, so that the highest parts or prominences of one face lie opposite to those of the other, of a stationary conductor with radial convolutions and mounted between the polar faces, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

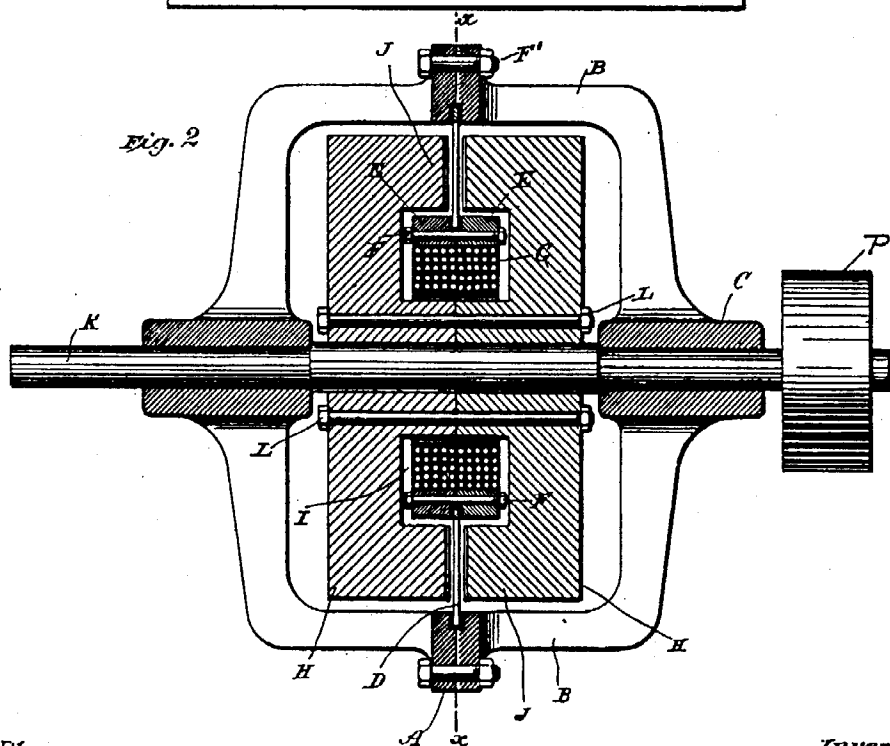
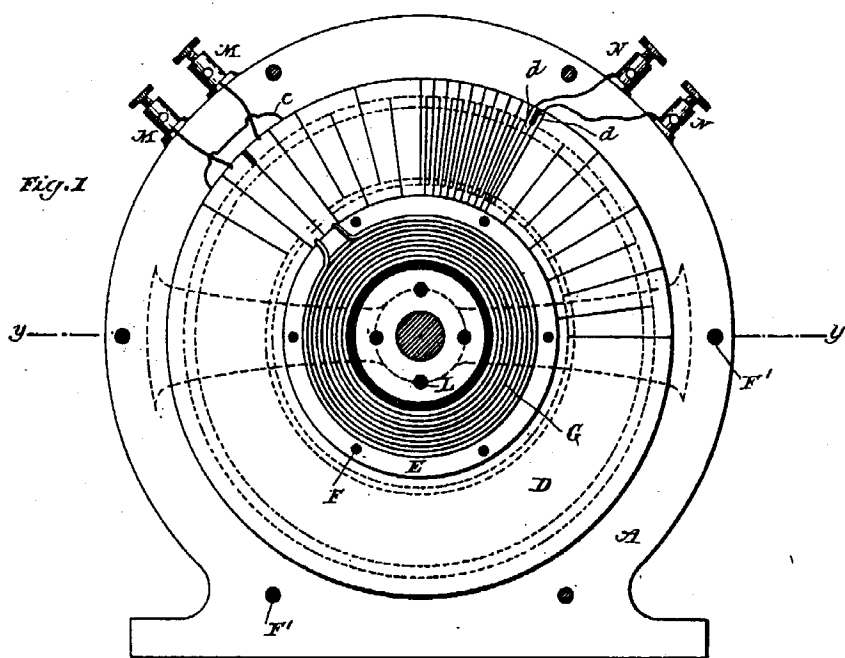
ROBT. F. GAYLORD,
PARKER N. PAGE.

N. TESLA.

ALTERNATING ELECTRIC CURRENT GENERATOR.

No. 447,921.

Patented Mar. 10, 1891.



Witnesses:

Ernest Hopkinson
Frank B. Murphy,

Inventor

Nikola Tesla
 by
Duncan & Page
 Attorneys.

N. TESLA.

ALTERNATING ELECTRIC CURRENT GENERATOR.

No. 447,921.

Patented Mar. 10, 1891.

Fig. 3

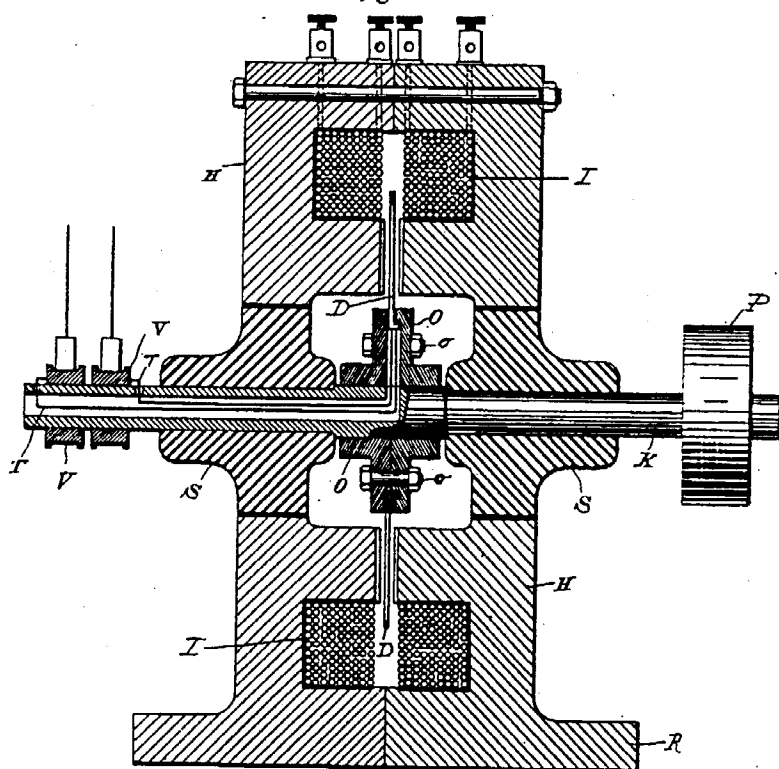


Fig. 4



Witnesses:

Ernest A. Hopkinson
Frank B. Murphy.

Inventor

Nikola Tesla
by
Duncan & Page
Attorneys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

ELECTRO-MAGNETIC MOTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 455,067, dated June 30, 1891.

Application filed January 27, 1891. Serial No. 379,251. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, and residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Electro-Magnetic Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the accompanying drawings.

The subject of my present invention is an improvement primarily designed for application to alternating-current motors of the special type invented by me, and of which the operation is due to the action of alternating currents differing in phase and directed through or developed in independent energizing-circuits in the motor, and causing a shifting or rotation of the magnetic poles or their resultant attractive forces upon the rotating element or armature.

My improvements are based upon certain laws governing the action or effects produced by a condenser when connected to an electric circuit through which an alternating or in general an undulating current is made to pass. Some of these effects, and those most important in connection with my invention, are as follows: First, if the terminals or plates of a condenser be connected with two points of a circuit, the potentials of which are made to rise and fall in rapid succession, the condenser allows the passage or, more strictly speaking, the transference of a current, although its plates or armatures may be so carefully insulated as to prevent almost completely the passage of a current of unvarying strength or direction and of moderate electro-motive force; second, if a circuit the terminals of which are connected with the plates of the condenser possess a certain self-induction, the condenser will overcome or counteract to a greater or less degree, dependent upon well-understood conditions, the effects of such self-induction; third, if two points of a closed or complete circuit through which a rapidly rising and falling current flows be shunted or bridged by a condenser, a variation in the strength of the currents in the branches and also a difference of phase of the currents therein is produced. These effects I have utilized and applied in a variety of ways in the construction

and operation of my motors, as by producing a difference in phase in the two energizing-circuits of an alternating-current motor by connecting the two circuits in derivation and connecting up a condenser in series in one of the circuits; but such applications seem to be obvious to one familiar with my motors and the facts above enumerated.

My present improvements, however, possess certain novel features of practical value and involve a knowledge of facts less generally known. These improvements comprise the use of a condenser or condensers in connection with the induced or armature circuit of a motor and certain details of the construction of such motors. In an alternating-current motor of the type to which I have particularly referred above, or in any other which has an armature coil or circuit closed upon itself, the latter represents not only an inductive resistance, but one which is periodically varying in value, both of which facts complicate and render difficult the attainment of the conditions best suited to the most efficient working of the motors. The most efficient working conditions, in other words, require, first, that for a given inductive effect upon the armature there should be the greatest possible current through the armature or induced coils, and, second, that there should always exist between the currents in the energizing and the induced circuits a given relation of phase. Hence whatever tends to decrease the self-induction and increase the current in the induced circuits will, other things being equal, increase the output and efficiency of the motor, and the same will be true of causes that operate to maintain the mutual attractive effect between the field-magnets and armature at its maximum. I secure these results by connecting with the induced circuit or circuits a condenser, in the manner hereinafter described, and I also, with this purpose in view, construct the motor in a special manner.

Referring to the drawings for a particular description of the invention, Figure 1 is a view, mainly diagrammatic, of an alternating-current motor to which my present invention is applied. Fig. 2 is a central section, in line with the shaft, of a special form of armature-core adapted to the invention. Fig. 3 is a

similar section of a modification of the same. Fig. 4 is one of the sections of the core detached. Fig. 5 is a diagram showing a modified disposition of armature or induced circuits.

The general plan of the invention is illustrated in Fig. 1. A A in this figure represents the frame and field-magnets of an alternating-current motor, the poles or projections of which are wound with coils B and C, forming independent energizing-circuits connected either to the same or to independent sources of alternating currents, as is now well understood, so that the currents flowing through the circuits, respectively, will have a difference of phase. Within the influence of this field is an armature-core D, wound with coils E. In my motors of this description heretofore these coils have been closed upon themselves, or connected in a closed series; but in the present case each coil or the connected series of coils terminates in the opposite plates of a condenser F. For this purpose the ends of the series of coils are brought out through the shaft to collecting-rings G, which are connected to the condenser by contact-brushes H and suitable conductors, the condenser being independent of the machine. The armature-coils are wound or connected in such manner that adjacent coils produce opposite poles.

The action of this motor and the effect of the plan followed in its construction are as follows: The motor being started in operation and the coils of the field-magnets being traversed by alternating currents, currents are induced in the armature-coils by one set of field-coils, as B, and the poles thus established are acted upon by the other set, as C. The armature-coils, however, have necessarily a high self-induction, which opposes the flow of the currents thus set up. The condenser F not only permits the passage or transference of these currents, but also counteracts the effects of self-induction, and by a proper adjustment of the capacity of the condenser, the self-induction of the coils, and the periods of the currents the condenser may be made to overcome entirely the effect of the self-induction.

It is preferable on account of the undesirability of using sliding contacts of all kinds to associate the condenser with the armature directly, or make it a part of the armature. In some cases I build up the armature of annular plates K K, held by bolts L between heads M, which are secured to the driving-shaft, and in the hollow space thus formed I place a condenser F, generally by winding the two insulated plates thereof spirally around the shaft. In other cases I utilize the plates of the core itself as the plates of the condenser. For example, in Figs. 3 and 4, N is the driving-shaft, M M are the heads of the armature-core, and K K' the iron plates of which the core is built up. These plates are insulated from the shaft and from one another,

and are held together by rods or bolts L. The bolts pass through a large hole in one plate and a small hole in the one next adjacent, and so on, connecting electrically all of plates K, as one armature of a condenser, and all of plates K' as the other.

To either of the condensers above described the armature-coils may be connected, as explained by reference to Fig. 1.

In motors in which the armature-coils are closed upon themselves—as, for example, in any form of alternating-current motor in which one armature coil or set of coils is in the position of maximum induction with respect to the field coils or poles, while the other is in the position of minimum induction—the coils are preferably connected in one series, and two points of the circuit thus formed are bridged by a condenser. This is illustrated in Fig. 5, in which E represents one set of armature-coils and E' the other. Their points of union are joined through a condenser F. It will be observed that in this disposition the self-induction of the two branches E and E' varies with their position relatively to the field-magnet, and that each branch is alternately the predominating source of the induced current. Hence the effect of the condenser F is twofold. First, it increases the current in each of the branches alternately, and, secondly, it alters the phase of the currents in the branches, this being the well-known effect which results from such a disposition of a condenser with a circuit, as above described. This effect is favorable to the proper working of the motor, because it increases the flow of current in the armature-circuits due to a given inductive effect, and also because it brings more nearly into coincidence the maximum magnetic effects of the coacting field and armature-poles.

It will be understood, of course, that the causes that contribute to the efficiency of condensers when applied to such uses as above must be given due consideration in determining the practicability and efficiency of the motors. Chief among these is, as is well known, the periodicity of the current, and hence the improvements which I have herein described are more particularly adapted to systems in which a very high rate of alternation or change is maintained.

Although this invention has been illustrated herein in connection with a special form of motor, it will be understood that it is equally applicable to any other alternating-current motor in which there is a closed armature-coil wherein the currents are induced by the action of the field, and, furthermore, I would state that the feature of utilizing the plates or sections of a magnetic core for forming the condenser, I regard as applicable, generally, to other kinds of alternating-current apparatus.

Having now described my invention, what I claim is—

1. In an alternating-current motor, the com-

5 combination, with the field-magnets and energizing-circuit, of an armature-circuit and a core adapted to be energized by currents induced in its circuit by the currents in the field-circuit, and a condenser connected with the armature-circuit only, as set forth.

10 2. In an alternating-current motor, the combination, with armature-coils in inductive relation to the field and connected in a closed circuit, of a condenser bridging said circuit, as set forth.

15 3. In an alternating-current motor, the combination, with an armature and two energizing-circuits formed by coils wound thereon in different inductive relations to the field and joined in a continuous or closed series, of a condenser the plates of which are connected, respectively, to the junctions of the circuits or coils, as set forth.

20 4. In an alternating-current motor, the com-

ination, with the induced energizing coil or coils of the armature, of a condenser connected therewith and made a part of the armature or rotating element of the motor.

5. In an alternating-current motor, the combination, with an armature-core composed of insulated conducting-plates alternately connected to form a condenser, of an induced energizing coil or coils wound thereon and connected to the plates or armatures of the said condenser. 25 30

6. A magnetic core for alternating-current apparatus, composed of plates or sections insulated from each other and alternately connected to form the two parts or armatures of a condenser. 35

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

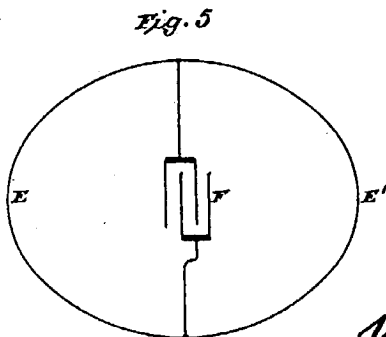
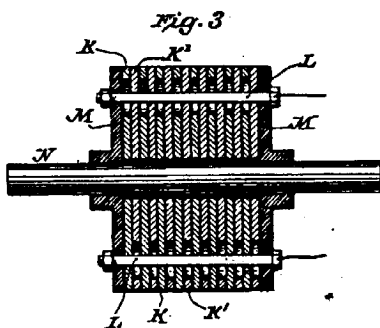
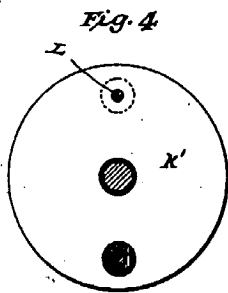
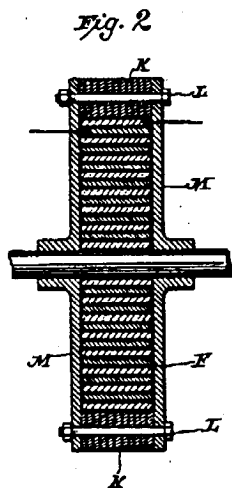
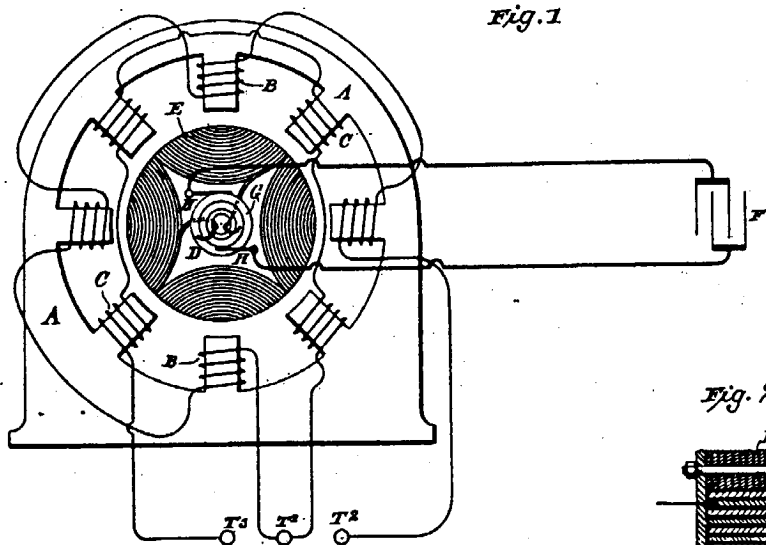
PARKER W. PAGE,
FRANK B. MURPHY.

(No Model.)

N. TESLA.
ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 455,067.

Patented June 30, 1891.



Witnesses
Raphael Nitter
Frank B. Murphy.

Inventor
Nikola Tesla
by
Duncan & Page.
Attorneys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

ELECTRO-MAGNETIC MOTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 459,772, dated September 22, 1891.

Application filed April 6, 1889. Serial No. 306,165. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Electro-Magnetic Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

As is well known, certain forms of alternating-current machines have the property, when connected in circuit with an alternating-current generator, of running as a motor in synchronism therewith; but while the alternating current will run the motor after it has attained a rate of speed synchronous with that of the generator it will not start it. Hence in all instances heretofore when these "synchronizing motors," as they are termed, have been run, some means have been adopted to bring the motors up to synchronism with the generator, or approximately so, before the alternating current of the generator is applied to drive them.

In an application filed February 18, 1889, Serial No. 300,220, I have shown and described an improved system of operating this class of motors, which consists, broadly, in winding or arranging the motor in such manner that by means of suitable switches it could be started as a multiple-circuit motor, or one operating by a progression of its magnetic poles, and then, when up to speed, or nearly so, converted into an ordinary synchronizing motor, or one in which the magnetic poles were simply alternated. In some cases, as when a large motor is used and when the number of alternations is very high, there is more or less difficulty in bringing the motor to speed as a double or multiple-circuit motor, for the plan of construction which renders the motor best adapted to run as a synchronizing motor impairs its efficiency as a torque or double-circuit motor under the assumed conditions on the start. This will be readily understood, for in a large synchronizing motor the length of the magnetic circuit of the polar projections and their mass are so great that apparently considerable time is required for magnetization and demagnetization. Hence

with a current of a very high number of alternations the motor may not respond properly. To avoid this objection and to start up a synchronizing motor in which these conditions obtain is the object of my present invention. I have therefore combined two motors, one a synchronizing motor, the other a multiple-circuit or torque motor, and by the latter I bring the first named up to speed, and then either throw the whole current into the synchronizing motor or operate jointly both of the motors.

This invention involves several novel and useful features. It will be observed, in the first place, that both motors are run without commutators of any kind, and, secondly, that the speed of the torque motor may be higher than that of the synchronizing motor, as will be the case when it contains a fewer number of poles or sets of poles, so that the motor will be more readily and easily brought up to speed. Thirdly, the synchronizing motor may be constructed so as to have a much more pronounced tendency to synchronism without lessening the facility with which it is started.

In the drawings I have illustrated the invention.

Figure 1 is a part sectional view of the two motors; Fig. 2, an end view of the synchronizing motor; Fig. 3, an end view and part section of the torque or double-circuit motor; Fig. 4, a diagram of the circuit connections employed; and Figs. 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9 are diagrams of modified dispositions of the two motors.

Inasmuch as neither motor is doing any work while the current is acting upon the other, I prefer to rigidly connect the two armatures. I therefore mount both upon the same shaft A, the field-magnets B of the synchronizing and C of the torque motor being secured to the same base D. The preferably larger synchronizing motor has polar projections on its armature, which rotate in very close proximity to the poles of the field, and in other respects it conforms to the conditions, now well understood, that are necessary to secure synchronous action. I prefer, however, to wind the pole-pieces of the armature with closed coils E, as this obviates the employment of sliding contacts. The smaller or

torque motor, on the other hand, has, preferably, a cylindrical armature F, without polar projections and wound with closed coils G, as I have described in my previous patents, notably No. 382,279, dated May 1, 1888. The field-coils of the torque motor are connected up in two series H and I, and the alternating current from the generator is directed through or divided between these two circuits in any manner to produce a progression of the poles or points of maximum magnetic effect. I secure this result in a convenient way by connecting the two motor-circuits in derivation with the circuit from the generator, inserting in one motor-circuit a dead resistance and in the other a self-induction coil, by which means a difference in phase between the two divisions of the current is secured. If both motors have the same number of field-poles, the torque motor for a given number of alternations will tend to run at double the speed of the other, for, assuming the connections to be such as to give the best results, its poles are divided into two series and the number of poles is virtually reduced one-half, which being acted upon by the same number of alternations tend to rotate the armature at twice the speed. By this means the main armature is more easily brought to or above the required speed. When the speed necessary for synchronism is imparted to the main motor, the current is shifted from the torque motor into the other.

A convenient arrangement for carrying out this invention is shown in Fig. 4. In said figure J J are the field-coils of the synchronizing, and H I the field-coils of the torque motor. L L' are the conductors of the main line. One end of, say, coils H is connected to wire L through a self-induction coil M. One end of the other set of coils I is connected to the same wire through a dead resistance N. The opposite ends of these two circuits are connected to the contact *m* of a switch the handle or lever of which is in connection with the line-wire L'. One end of the field-circuit of the synchronizing motor is connected to the wire L. The other terminates in the switch-contact *n*. From the diagram it will be readily seen that if the lever P be turned onto contact *m* the torque motor will start by reason of the difference of phase between the currents in its two energizing-circuits. Then when the desired speed is attained if the lever P be shifted onto contact *n* the entire current will pass through the field-coils of the synchronizing motor and the other will be doing no work.

The torque motor may be constructed and operated in various ways, many of which I have described in other applications; but I do not deem it necessary in illustration of the principle of construction and mode of operation of my present invention to describe these further herein. It is not necessary that one motor be cut out of circuit while the other is

in, for both may be acted upon by the current at the same time, and I have devised various dispositions or arrangements of the two motors for accomplishing this. Some of these arrangements are illustrated in Figs. 5 to 9.

Referring to Fig. 5, let T designate the torque or multiple-circuit motor and S the synchronizing motor, L L' being the line-wires from a source of alternating current. The two circuits of the torque motor of different degrees of self-induction, and designated by N M, are connected in derivation to the wire L. They are then joined and connected to the energizing-circuit of the synchronizing motor, the opposite terminal of which is connected to wire L'. The two motors are thus in series. To start them I short-circuit the synchronizing motor by a switch P', throwing the whole current through the torque motor. Then when the desired speed is reached the switch P' is opened, so that the current passes through both motors. In such an arrangement as this it is obviously desirable for economical and other reasons that a proper relation between the speeds of the two motors should be observed.

In Fig. 6 another disposition is illustrated. S is the synchronizing motor and T the torque motor, the circuits of both being in parallel. W is a circuit also in derivation to the motor-circuits and containing a switch P''. S' is a switch in the synchronizing-motor circuit. On the start the switch S' is opened, cutting out the motor S. Then P'' is opened, throwing the entire current through the motor T, giving it a very strong torque. When the desired speed is reached, switch S' is closed and the current divides between both motors. By means of switch P'' both motors may be cut out.

In Fig. 7 the arrangement is substantially the same, except that a switch T' is placed in the circuit which includes the two circuits of the torque motor.

Fig. 8 shows the two motors in series, with a shunt around both containing a switch S T. There is also a shunt around the synchronizing motor S, with a switch P'.

In Fig. 9 the same disposition is shown; but each motor is provided with a shunt, in which are switches P' and T', as shown.

The manner of operating the systems will be understood from the foregoing descriptions.

I do not claim herein the torque motor nor any part thereof, except in so far as they enter into the combination which forms the subject of this application, for I have made the distinguishing features of said motor the subject of other applications.

What I now claim is—

1. An alternating-current non-synchronizing electric motor coupled with a synchronizing alternating-current motor, substantially as set forth, whereby the former starts the latter and throws it into synchronism with

its actuating-current, and switch mechanism for directing the current through either or both of the motors, as set forth.

2. The combination of two motors the armatures of which are mounted upon the same shaft, one of said motors being an alternating-current torque motor, or one in which the magnetic points or poles are progressively shifted by the action of the energizing-current, the other motor being an alternating-currentsynchronizing motor, and switch mechanism for directing the current through either or both of said motors, as set forth.

3. The combination, with an alternating-current synchronizing motor having one energizing-field, of an alternating-current torque motor having a plurality of energizing-circuits and adapted to be operated by currents differing in phase, and a switch for directing the alternating current or currents through the several circuits of one motor or the single circuit of the other, as and for the purpose set forth.

4. The combination, with an alternating-current motor having field-cores wound with coils adapted to be connected to a source of alternating currents and an armature wound with induced coils closed upon themselves, of

a starting device for bringing said motor into synchronism with the generator with which it is connected.

5. The combination, with an alternating-current motor composed of a multipolar alternating field-magnet, and an armature having poles wound with coils closed upon themselves, of a starting device, as set forth.

6. In an alternating-current motor, the combination of a field-magnet having poles wound with coils adapted when connected with a source of alternating current to produce simultaneously opposite magnetic polarities and an armature provided with poles or projections and wound with coils connected in a continuously-closed unconnected circuit, as set forth.

7. The herein-described method of operating alternating-current motors, which consists in actuating a motor by an alternating current to bring a second alternating-current motor up to synchronizing speed relative to the actuating-current and then switching the synchronizing motor into circuit.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

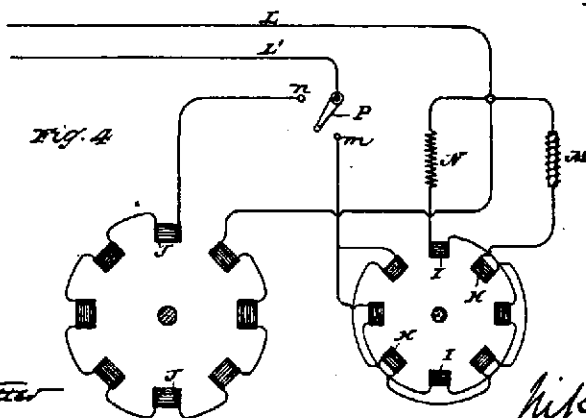
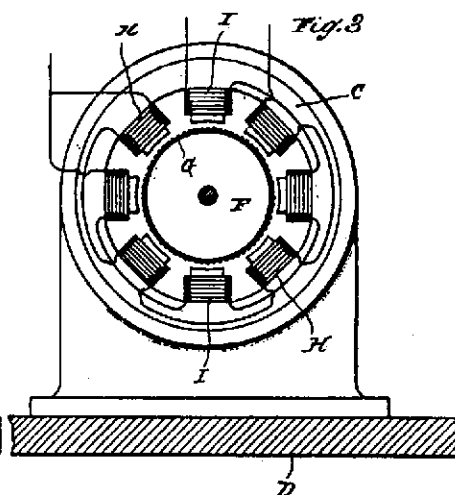
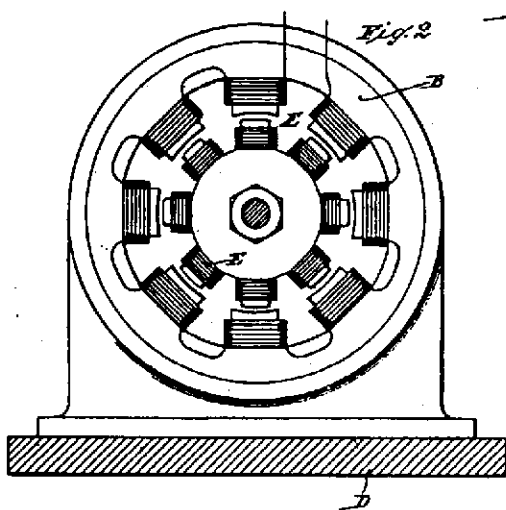
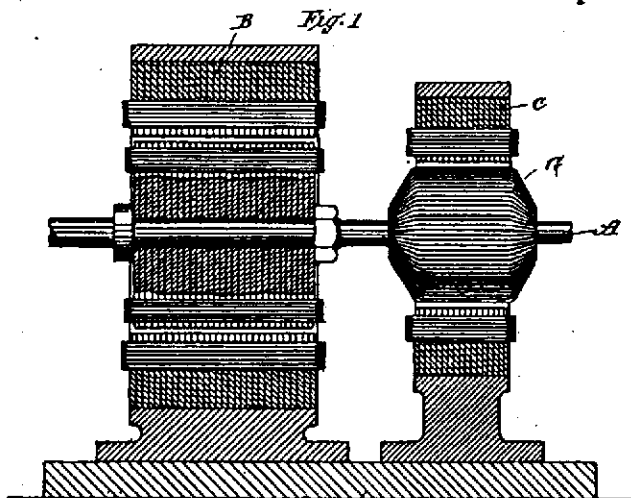
GEORGE N. MONRO,

EDWARD T. EVANS.

N. TESLA. ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 459,772.

Patented Sept. 22, 1891.



Witnesses:

Harold Newell

Robt F. Gaylord

Inventor

Nikola Tesla

By

Duncan, Cuthbert & Page

Attorneys.

N. TESLA. ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 459,772.

Patented Sept. 22, 1891,

Fig. 5

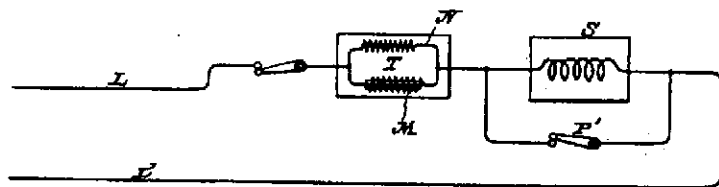


Fig. 6

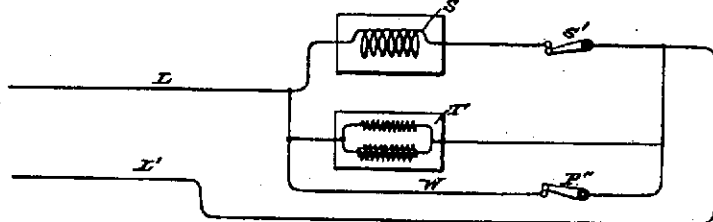


Fig. 7

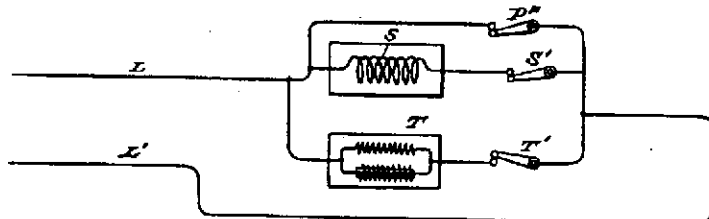


Fig. 8

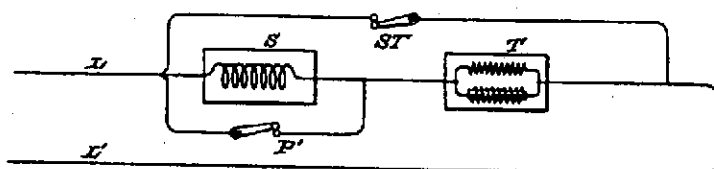
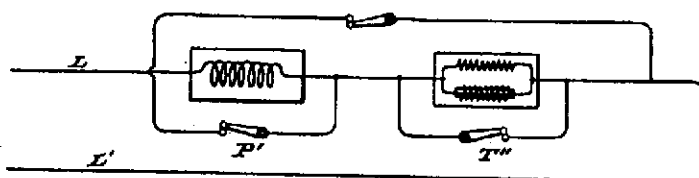


Fig. 9



Witnesses:
Raphael M. Miller
Robt. F. Gaylord

Inventor
Nikola Tesla
 by
Duncan, Curtis & Hage
 Attorneys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

METHOD OF AND APPARATUS FOR ELECTRICAL CONVERSION AND DISTRIBUTION.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 462,418, dated November 3, 1891.

Application filed February 4, 1891. Serial No. 380,182. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Methods of and Apparatus for Electrical Conversion and Distribution, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

This invention is an improvement in methods of and apparatus for electrical conversion, designed for the better and more economical distribution and application of electrical energy for general useful purposes.

My invention is based on certain electrical phenomena which have been observed by eminent scientists and recognized as due to laws which have been in a measure demonstrated, but which, so far as I am aware, have not hitherto been utilized or applied with any practically useful results. Stated briefly, these phenomena are as follows: First, if a condenser or conductor possessing capacity be charged from a suitable generator and discharged through a circuit, the discharge under certain conditions will be of an intermittent or oscillatory character; second, if two points in an electric circuit through which a current rapidly rising and falling in strength is made to flow be connected with the plates or armatures of a condenser, a variation in the current's strength in the entire circuit or in a portion of the same only may be produced; third, the amount or character of such variation in the current's strength is dependent upon the condenser capacity, the self-induction and resistance of the circuit or its sections, and the period or time rate of change of the current. It may be observed, however, that these several factors—the capacity, the self-induction, resistance, and period—are all related in a manner well understood by electricians; but to render such conversion as may be effected by condensers practically available and useful it is desirable, chiefly on account of the increased output and efficiency and reduced cost of the apparatus, to produce current-impulses succeeding each other with very great rapidity, or, in other words, to render the duration of

each impulse, alternation, or oscillation of the current extremely small. To the many difficulties in the way of effecting this mechanically, as by means of rotating switches or interrupters, is perhaps due the failure to realize practically, at least to any marked degree, the advantages of which such a system is capable. To obviate these difficulties, I have in my present invention taken advantage of the fact above referred to, and which has been long recognized, that if a condenser or a conductor possessing capacity be charged from a suitable source and be discharged through a circuit the discharge under certain conditions, dependent on the capacity of the condenser or conductor, the self-induction and resistance of the discharging circuit, and the rate of supply and decay of the electrical energy, may be effected intermittently or in the form of oscillations of extremely small period.

Briefly stated in general terms, the plan which I pursue in carrying out my invention is as follows:

I employ a generator, preferably, of very high tension and capable of yielding either direct or alternating currents. This generator I connect up with a condenser or conductor of some capacity and discharge the accumulated electrical energy disruptively through an air-space or otherwise into a working circuit containing translating devices and, when required, condensers. These discharges may be of the same direction or alternating and intermittent, succeeding each other more or less rapidly or oscillating to and fro with extreme rapidity. In the working circuit, by reason of the condenser action, the current impulses or discharges of high tension and small volume are converted into currents of lower tension and greater volume. The production and application of a current of such rapid oscillations or alternations (the number may be many millions per second) secures, among others, the following exceptional advantages: First, the capacity of the condensers for a given output is much diminished; second, the efficiency of the condensers is increased and the tendency to become heated reduced, and, third, the range of conversion is enlarged. I have thus succeeded in producing a system or method of conversion

radically different from what has been done heretofore—first, with respect to the number of impulses, alternations, or oscillations of current per unit of time, and, second, with respect to the manner in which the impulses are obtained. To express this result, I define the working current as one of an excessively small period or of an excessively large number of impulses or alternations or oscillations per unit of time, by which I mean not a thousand or even twenty or thirty thousand per second, but many times that number, and one which is made intermittent, alternating, or oscillating of itself without the employment of mechanical devices.

I now proceed to an explanation somewhat more in detail of the nature of my invention, referring to the accompanying drawings.

The two figures are diagrams, each representing a generating-circuit, a working circuit, means for producing an intermittent or oscillating discharge, and condensers arranged or combined as contemplated by my invention.

In Figure 1, A represents a generator of high tension; B B, the conductors which lead out from the same. To these conductors are connected the conductors C of a working circuit containing translating devices, such as incandescent lamps or motors G. In one or both conductors B is a break D, the two ends being separated by an air-space or a film of insulation, through which a disruptive discharge takes place. F is a condenser, the plates of which are connected to the generating-circuit. If this circuit possess itself sufficient capacity, the condenser F may be dispensed with.

In Fig. 2 the generating-circuit B B contains a condenser F and discharges through the air-gaps D into the working circuit C, to any two points of which is connected a condenser E. The condenser E is used to modify the current in any part of the working circuit, such as L.

It may conduce to a better understanding of the invention to consider more in detail the conditions existing in such a system as is illustrated in Fig. 1. Let it be assumed, therefore, that in the system there shown the rate of supply of the electrical energy, the capacity, self-induction, and the resistance of the circuits are so related that a disruptive, intermittent, or oscillating discharge occurs at D. Assume that the first-named takes place. This will evidently occur when the rate of supply from the generator is not adequate to the capacity of the generator, conductors B B, and condenser F. Each time the condenser F is charged to such an extent that the potential or accumulated charge overcomes the dielectric strength of the insulating-space at D the condenser is discharged. It is then recharged from the generator A, and this process is repeated in more or less rapid succession. The discharges will follow each other the more rapidly the more nearly the rate of supply from the generator equals the

rate at which the circuit including the generator is capable of taking up and getting rid of the energy. Since the resistance and self-induction of the working circuit C and the rapidity of the successive discharges may be varied at will, the current strength in the working and generating circuit may bear to one another any desired relation.

To understand the action of the local condenser E in Fig. 2, let a single discharge be first considered. This discharge has two paths offered—one to the condenser E, the other through the part L of the working circuit C. The part L, however, by virtue of its self-induction, offers a strong opposition to such a sudden discharge, while the condenser, on the other hand, offers no such opposition. The result is that practically no current passes at first through the branch L, but presumably opposite electricities rush to the condenser-coatings, this storing for the moment electrical energy in the condenser. Time is gained by this means, and the condenser then discharges through the branch L, this process being repeated for each discharge occurring at D. The amount of electrical energy stored in the condenser at each charge is dependent upon the capacity of the condenser and the potential of its plates. It is evident, therefore, that the quicker the discharges succeed each other the smaller for a given output need be the capacity of the condenser and the greater is also the efficiency of the condenser. This is confirmed by practical results.

The discharges occurring at D, as stated, may be of the same direction or may be alternating, and in the former case the devices contained in the working circuit may be traversed by currents of the same or alternately opposite direction. It may be observed, however, that each intermittent discharge occurring at D may consist of a number of oscillations in the working circuit or branch L.

A periodically-oscillating discharge will occur at D in Fig. 1 when the quantities concerned bear a certain relation expressed in well-known formulae and ascertained by simple experiment. In this case it is demonstrated in theory and practice that the ratio of the strength of the current in the working to that in the generating circuits is the greater the greater the self-induction, and the smaller the resistance of the working circuit the smaller the period of oscillation.

I do not limit myself to the use of any specific forms of the apparatus described in connection with this invention nor to the precise arrangement of the system with respect to its details herein shown. In the drawings return-wires are shown in the circuit; but it will be understood that in any case the ground may be conveniently used in lieu of the return-wire.

What I claim is—

1. The method of electrical conversion herein described, which consists in charging a con-

denser or conductor possessing capacity and maintaining a succession of intermittent or oscillating disruptive discharges of said conductor into a working circuit containing translating devices.

2. In a system of electrical conversion, the combination of a generator or source of electricity and a line or generating circuit containing a condenser or possessing capacity, and a working circuit operatively connected with the generating-circuit through one or

more air-gaps or breaks in the conducting medium, the electrical conditions being so adjusted that an intermittent or oscillating disruptive discharge from the generating into the working circuit will be maintained, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

ROBT. F. GAYLORD,
PARKER W. PAGE.

(No Model.)

N. TESLA.

METHOD OF AND APPARATUS FOR ELECTRICAL CONVERSION AND DISTRIBUTION.

No. 462,418.

Patented Nov. 3, 1891.

Fig. 1

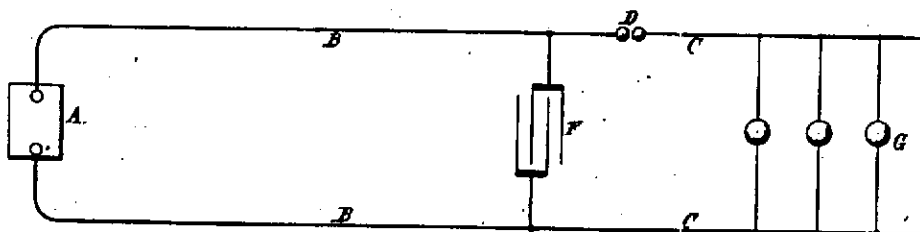
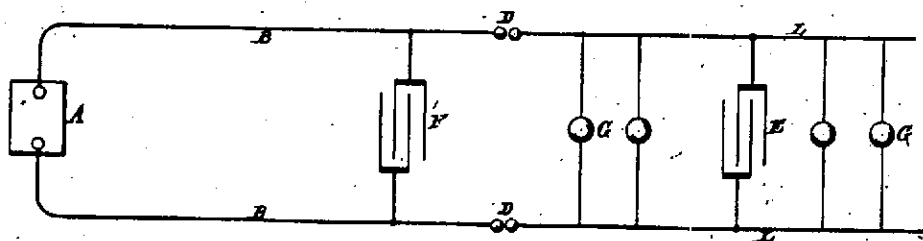


Fig. 2



Witnesses:

Raphael Nitter
Frank B. Murphy.

Inventor

Nikola Tesla
by Duncan Hage.
Attorneys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

ELECTRO-MAGNETIC MOTOR.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 464,666, dated December 8, 1891.

Application filed July 13, 1891. Serial No. 399,312. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Electro-Magnetic Motors, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawing accompanying and forming a part of the same.

The general object of my present invention is to secure artificially a difference of a quarter of a phase between the currents in the two energizing-circuits of an alternating-current electro-magnetic motor of that general class invented by me, in which the action or operation is dependent upon the inductive influence upon a rotating armature of independent field magnets or coils exerted successively and not simultaneously.

It is a well-known fact that if the field or energizing circuits of such a motor be both derived from the same source of alternating currents and a condenser of proper capacity be included in one of the same, approximately the desired difference of phase may be obtained between the currents flowing directly from the source and those flowing through the condenser; but the great size and expense of condensers for this purpose that would meet the requirements of the ordinary systems of comparatively low potential are practically prohibitory to their employment.

Another now well-known method or plan of securing a difference of phase between the energizing-currents of motors of this kind is to induce by the currents in one circuit those in the other circuit or circuits; but no means have heretofore been proposed that would secure in this way between the phases of the primary or inducing and the secondary or induced currents that difference—theoretically ninety degrees—that is best adapted for practical and economical working.

I have devised a means which renders practicable both the above-described plan or methods, and by which I am enabled to obtain an economical and efficient alternating-current motor, my invention consisting in placing a condenser in the secondary or induced circuit of the motor above described and raising the potential of the secondary currents to such a

degree that the capacity of the condenser, which is in part dependent on the potential, need be quite small. The value of this condenser will be determined in a well-understood manner with reference to the self-induction and other conditions of the circuit, so as to cause the currents which pass through it to differ from the primary currents by a quarter-phase.

The drawing is a partly-diagrammatic illustration of a motor embodying my invention.

I have illustrated the invention as embodied in a motor in which the inductive relation of the primary and secondary circuits is secured by winding them inside the motor partly upon the same cores; but it will be understood that the invention applies, generally, to other forms of motor in which one of the energizing-currents is induced in any way from the other.

Let A B represent the poles of an alternating-current motor, of which C is the armature wound with coils D, closed upon themselves, as is now the general practice in motors of this kind. The poles A, which alternate with poles B, are wound with coils of ordinary or coarse wire E in such direction as to make them of alternate north and south polarity, as indicated in the diagram by the characters N S. Over these coils or in other inductive relation to the same are wound long fine-wire coils F F and in the same direction throughout as the coils E. These coils are secondaries, in which currents of very high potential are induced. I prefer to connect all the coils E in one series and all the secondaries F in another.

On the intermediate poles B are wound fine-wire energizing-coils G, which are connected in series with one another and also with the series of secondary coils F, the direction of winding being such that a current-impulse induced from the primary coils E imparts the same magnetism to the poles B as that produced in poles A by the primary impulse. This condition is indicated by the characters N' S'.

In the circuit formed by the two sets of coils F and G is introduced a condenser H; otherwise the said circuit is closed upon itself, while the free ends of the circuit of coils E are connected to a source of alternating cur-

rents. As the condenser capacity which is needed in any particular motor of this kind is dependent upon the rate of alternation or the potential, or both, its size or cost, as before explained, may be brought within economical limits for use with the ordinary circuits if the potential of the secondary circuit in the motor be sufficiently high. By giving to the condenser proper values any desired difference of phase between the primary and secondary energizing-circuits may be obtained.

What I claim is—

1. In an alternating-current motor provided with two or more energizing or field circuits, one of which is adapted for connection with a source of currents and the other or others

in inductive relation thereto, the combination, with the secondary or induced circuit or circuits, of a condenser interposed in the same, as set forth.

2. In an alternating-current motor, the combination of two energizing-circuits, one connected or adapted for connection with a source of alternating currents, the other constituting a high-potential secondary circuit in inductive relation to the first, and a condenser interposed in said secondary circuit, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

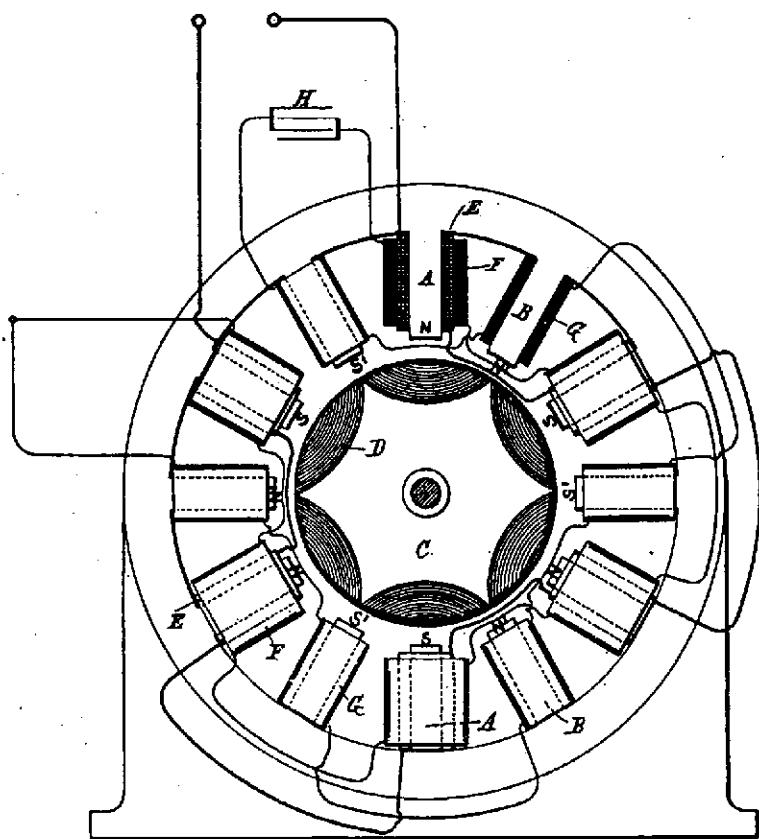
ROBT. F. GAYLORD,
ERNEST HOPKINSON.

(No Model.)

N. TESLA.
ELECTRO MAGNETIC MOTOR.

No. 464,666.

Patented Dec. 8, 1891.



Witnesses:

Raphael Netter
Frank B. Murphy

Inventor

Nikola Tesla
by
Duncan & Page
Attorneys

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

SYSTEM OF ELECTRICAL TRANSMISSION OF POWER.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 487,766, dated December 13, 1892.

Application filed May 15, 1888. Serial No. 273,892. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria-Hungary, formerly of Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, but now residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Systems for the Electrical Transmission of Power, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

This invention is an improvement in systems of electrical distribution of power wherein are employed motors having two or more independent energizing-circuits, through which are passed alternating currents differing in phase that are produced by a magneto-electric machine having independent induced circuits, or that are obtained from any other suitable source or by any other suitable means. In illustration of the various conditions which I regard as most important to an attainment of the best results from the use of motors of this character, I have heretofore used generally forms of generator in which the relations of the induced or current-generating coils and field-magnets were such that but two impulses or current are produced in each coil by a single revolution of the armature or field cores.

The rate, therefore, at which the different phases or impulses of current in the line-circuits succeeded one another was so little greater than that at which the armature of the generator revolved that without special provision the generator required to be run at very high speed to obtain the best results. It is well known that the most efficient results are secured in the operation of such motors when they are run at high speeds; but as the practicable rate of speed is much limited by mechanical conditions, particularly in the case of large generators, which would be required when a number of motors are run from a single source, I have sought to produce a greater number of current impulses by a slow or slower speed than that at which the ordinary bipolar machines may be economically operated. I therefore adapt to my system any of the various types of multipolar alternating-current machines which yield a consid-

erable number of current reversals or impulses for each revolution of the armature by observing the main condition essential to the operation of my system that the phases of the currents in the independent induced circuits of the generator should not coincide, but exhibit a sufficient difference in phase to produce the desired results. I may accomplish this in a variety of ways, which, however, vary only in detail, since they are based upon the same underlying principle. For example, to adapt a given type of alternating-current generator I may couple rigidly two complete machines, securing them so that the requisite difference in phase between the currents produced by each will be obtained, or I may secure two armatures to the same shaft within the influence of the same field and with an angular displacement that will produce the proper difference in phase between the two currents, or I may secure two armatures to the same shaft with their coils symmetrically disposed, and place two sets of field-magnets at such angle as to secure the same result, or, finally, I may wind on the same armature the two sets of coils alternately, or in such manner that they will develop currents, the phases of which differ in time sufficiently to produce rotation of the motor.

Another feature of my invention is in the plan which I have devised for utilizing generators and motors of this type, whereby a single generator may be caused to run a number of motors either at the same speed as its own or all at different speeds. This I accomplish by constructing the motors with fewer poles than the generator, in which case their speed will be greater than that of the generator, the rate of speed being higher as the number of their poles is relatively less. This will be understood from an example. Suppose the generator has two independent generating-coils which revolve between two pole-pieces oppositely magnetized and that the motor has energizing-coils that produce at any given time two magnetic poles in one element that tend to set up a rotation of the motor. A generator thus constructed yields four impulses or reversals of current by each revolution, two in each of its independent

circuits, and I have demonstrated that the effect upon a motor such as that mentioned is to shift the magnetic poles through three hundred and sixty degrees. It is obvious that if the four reversals in the same order could be produced by each half-revolution of the generator the motor would make two revolutions to the generator's one. This would be readily accomplished by adding two intermediate poles to the generator or altering it in any of the other equivalent ways above indicated. The same rule applies to generators and motors with multiple poles. For instance, if a generator be constructed with two circuits, each of which produces twelve reversals of current to a revolution, and these currents be directed through the independent energizing-coils of a motor, the coils of which are so applied as to produce twelve magnetic poles at all times, the rotation of the two will be synchronous; but if the motor-coils produce but six poles the movable element will be rotated twice while the generator rotates once, or if the motor have four poles its rotation will be three times as fast as that of the generator.

These features, so far as it is necessary to an understanding of the invention, are illustrated in the accompanying drawings.

Figure 1 is a diagrammatic illustration of a generator constructed in accordance with my invention. Fig. 2 is a similar view of a correspondingly-constructed motor. Fig. 3 is a diagram of a generator of modified construction. Fig. 4 is a diagram of a motor of corresponding character. Fig. 5 is a diagram of a system containing a generator and several motors adapted to run at various speeds.

In Fig. 1, let C represent a cylindrical armature-core wound longitudinally with insulated coils A A, which are connected up in series, the terminals of the series being connected to collecting-rings *a a* on the shaft G. By means of this shaft the armature is mounted to rotate between the poles of an annular field-magnet D, formed with polar projections wound with coils E, that magnetize the said projections. The coils E are included in the circuit of a generator F, by means of which the field-magnet is energized. If thus constructed, the machine is a well-known form of alternating-current generator. To adapt it to my system, however, I wind on armature C a second set of coils B B intermediate to the first, or, in other words, in such positions that while the coils of one set are in the relative positions to the poles of the field-magnet to produce the maximum current those of the other set will be in the position in which they produce the minimum current. The coils B are connected, also, in series and to two collecting-rings *b b*, secured generally to the shaft at the opposite end of the armature.

The motor shown in Fig. 2 has an annular field-magnet H, with four pole-pieces wound with coils I. The armature is constructed

similarly to that of the generator, but with two sets of two coils in closed circuits to correspond with the reduced number of magnetic poles in the field.

From the foregoing it is evident that one revolution of the armature of the generator producing eight current impulses in each circuit will produce two revolutions of the motor-armature.

The application of the principle of this invention is not confined to any particular form of machine. In Figs. 3 and 4 a generator and motor of another well-known type are shown. In Fig. 3, J J are magnets disposed in a circle and wound with coils K, which are in circuit with a generator which supplies the current that maintains the field of force. In the usual construction of these machines the armature-conductor L is carried by a suitable frame, so as to be rotated in face of the magnets J J or between these magnets and another similar set in face of them. The magnets are energized so as to be of alternately-opposite polarity throughout the series, so that as the conductor C is rotated the current impulses combine or are added to one another, those produced by the conductor in any given position being all in the same direction. To adapt such a machine to my system, I add a second set of induced conductors M, in all respects similar to the first, but so placed with reference to it that the currents produced in each will differ by a quarter-phase. With such relations it is evident that as the current decreases in conductor L it increases in conductor M, and conversely, and that any of the forms of motor invented by me for use in this system may be operated by such generator.

Fig. 4 is intended to show a motor corresponding to the machine in Fig. 3. The construction of the motor is identical with that of the generator, and if coupled thereto it will run synchronously therewith. J' J' are the field-magnets, and K' the coils thereon. L' is one of the armature-conductors and M' the other.

Fig. 5 shows in diagram other forms of machine. The generator N in this case is shown as consisting of a stationary ring O, wound with twenty-four coils P P', alternate coils being connected in series in two circuits. Within this ring is a disk or drum Q, with projections Q' wound with energizing-coils included in circuit with a generator R. By driving this disk or cylinder alternating currents are produced in the coils P and P', which are carried off to run the several motors.

The motors are composed of a ring or annular field-magnet S, wound with two sets of energizing-coils T T', and armatures U, having projections U' wound with coils V, all connected in series in a closed circuit or each closed independently on itself.

Suppose the twelve generator-coils P are wound alternately in opposite directions, so that any two adjacent coils of the same set

tend to produce a free pole in the ring O between them and the twelve coils P' to be similarly wound. A single revolution of the disk or cylinder Q, the twelve polar projections of which are of opposite polarity, will therefore produce twelve current impulses in each of the circuits W W'. Hence the motor X, which has sixteen coils or eight free poles, will make one and a half turns to the generator's one. The motor Y, with twelve coils or six poles, will rotate with twice the speed of the generator, and the motor Z, with eight coils or four poles, will revolve three times as fast as the generator. These multipolar motors have a peculiarity which may be often utilized to great advantage. For example, in the motor X, Fig. 5, the eight poles may be either alternately opposite or there may be at any given time alternately two like and two opposite poles. This is readily attained by making the proper electrical connections. The effect of such a change, however, would be the same as reducing the number of poles one-half, and thereby doubling the speed of any given motor. In these and other respects it will be seen that the invention involves many important and valuable features.

It is obvious that the electrical transformers described in prior patents to me and which have independent primary currents may be used with the generators herein described.

It may be stated with respect to the devices hereinafter set forth that the most perfect and harmonious action of the generators and motors is obtained when the numbers of the poles of each are even and not odd. If this is not the case, there will be a certain unevenness of action which is the less appreciable as the number of poles is greater; but even this may be in a measure corrected by special provisions which it is not here necessary to explain. It also follows, as a matter of course, and from the above it is obvious, that if the number of the poles of the motor be greater than that of the generator the mo-

tor will revolve at a slower speed than the generator.

What I claim as my invention is—

1. The combination, with an alternating-current generator comprising independent armature-circuits formed by conductors alternately disposed, so that the currents developed therein will differ in phase, and field-magnet poles in excess of the number of armature-circuits, of a motor having independent energizing-circuits connected to the armature-circuits of the generator, substantially as set forth.

2. The combination, with a source of alternating currents which differ in phase and comprising a rotating magneto-electric machine yielding a given number of current impulses or alternations for each turn or revolution, of a motor or motors having independent energizing-circuits through which the said currents are caused to flow, and poles which in number are less than the number of current impulses produced in each motor-circuit by one turn or revolution of the magneto-machine, as set forth.

3. The combination, with a multipolar alternating-current machine having independent induced or current-generating circuits, of motors having independent energizing-circuits and a smaller number of poles than the generator, as set forth.

4. The combination, with an alternating-current generator having independent induced circuits and constructed or adapted to produce a given number of current impulses or alternations for each turn or revolution, of motors having corresponding energizing-circuits and poles which in number are less than the number of current impulses produced in each circuit in a turn or revolution of the generator, as set forth.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

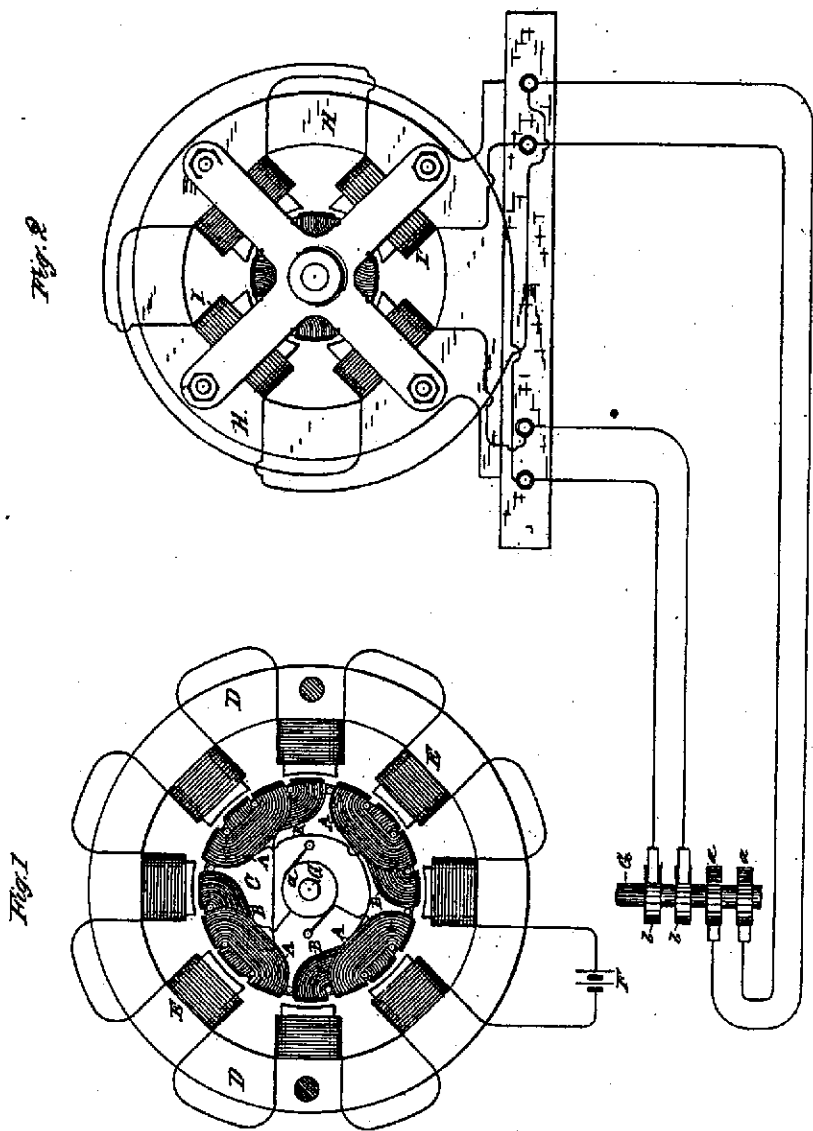
FRANK E. HARTLEY,
FRANK B. MURPHY.

N. TESLA.

SYSTEM OF ELECTRICAL TRANSMISSION OF POWER.

No. 487,796.

Patented Dec. 13, 1892.



WITNESSES:

Raphael Netter

Robert F. Gaylord

INVENTOR

Nikola Tesla

BY

Duncan, Curtis & Sage

ATTORNEYS.

N. TESLA.

SYSTEM OF ELECTRICAL TRANSMISSION OF POWER.

No. 487,796.

Patented Dec. 13, 1892.

Fig. 4

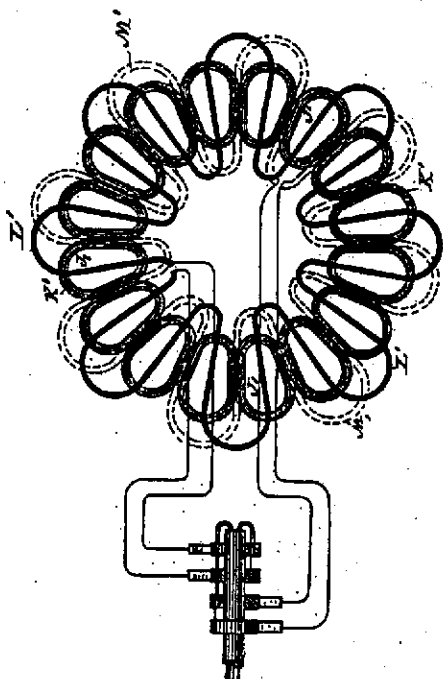
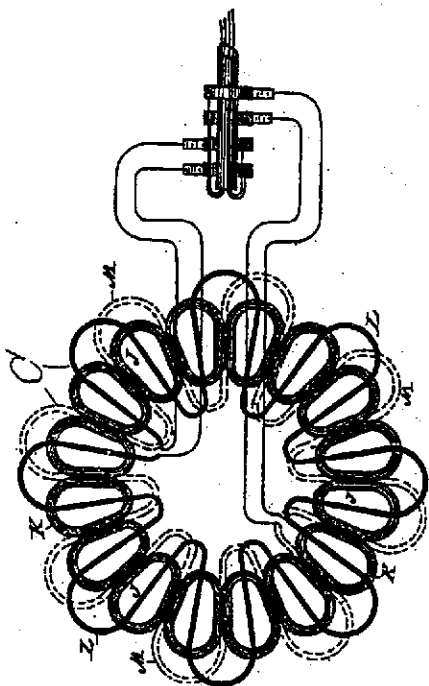


Fig. 3



WITNESSES:

Raphael Netto
Allan M. Paige

INVENTOR

Nikola Tesla

BY

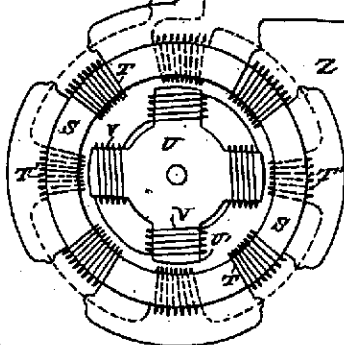
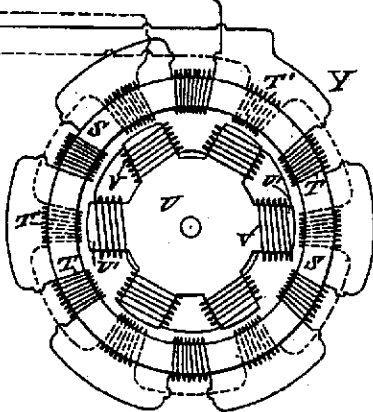
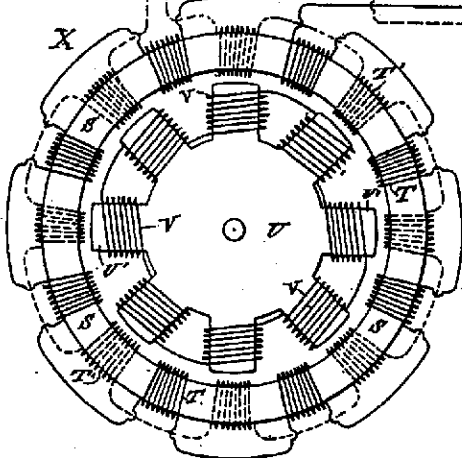
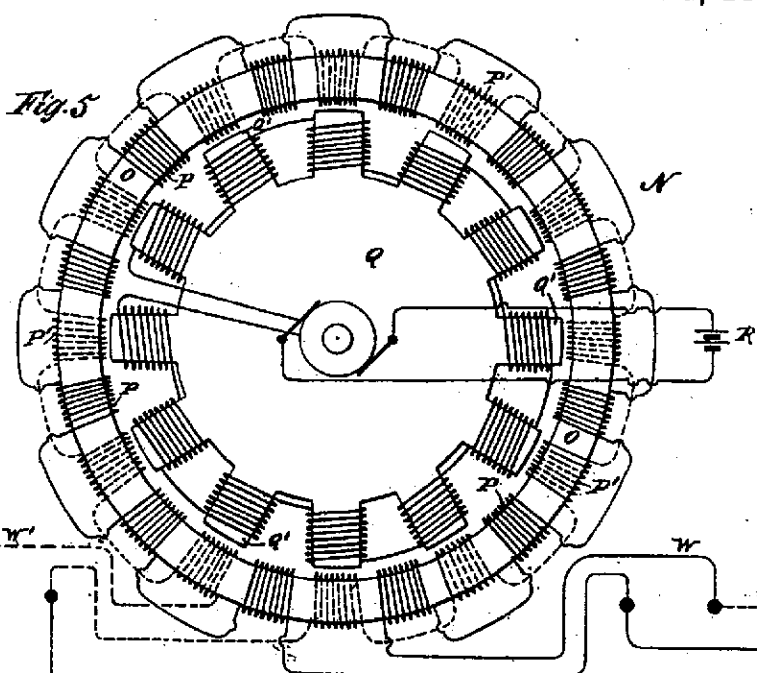
Duncan, Curtis & Hage
ATTORNEYS.

N. TESLA.

SYSTEM OF ELECTRICAL TRANSMISSION OF POWER.

No. 487,796.

Patented Dec. 13, 1892.



Witnesses:

Saphael Netter

Robert F. Gaylord

Inventor
Nikola Teslaby
Duncan, Carter & Page
Attorneys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

ELECTRICAL TRANSMISSION OF POWER.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 511,559, dated December 26, 1893.

Application filed December 8, 1888. Serial No. 293,051. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria-Hungary, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in the Electrical Transmission of Power, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

In certain patents heretofore granted, I have shown and described a system of electrical power transmission, in which each motor contained two or more independent energizing circuits through which were caused to pass alternating currents, having in each circuit such a difference of phase that by their combined or resultant action they produced a rotary progression of the poles or points of maximum magnetic effect of the motor and thereby maintained the rotation of its movable element. In the system referred to and described in said patents, the production or generation of the alternating currents upon the combined or resultant action of which the operation of the system depends, is effected by the employment of an alternating current generator with independent induced circuits which, by reason of the winding or other construction of the generator produced currents differing in phase, and these currents were conveyed directly from the generator to the corresponding motor coils by independent lines or circuits. I have, however, discovered another method of operating these motors, which dispenses with one of the line circuits and enables me to run the motors by means of alternating currents from a single original source.

Broadly stated this invention consists in passing alternating currents, obtained from one original source, through both of the energizing circuits of the motor, and retarding the phases of the current in one circuit to a greater or less extent than in the other.

The distribution of current between the two motor circuits may be effected by induction or by derivation. In other words, I may pass the alternating current from the source through one energizing circuit and induce by

such current a second current in the other energizing circuit. Or, on the other hand, I may connect up the two energizing circuits of the motor in derivation or multiple arc with the main circuit from the source. In either event I make due provision for maintaining a difference of phase between the currents in the two circuits or branches.

In carrying out my invention I have used various means for securing this result. For example, when I induce a current in one of the circuits from the current flowing in the other, I employ a form of converter or bring the two circuits into such inductive relations as will produce the necessary difference of phase. Or, when I obtain the two energizing currents by derivation, I make the two circuits of different degrees of self induction by inserting a resistance or a self induction coil in one of said circuits, or I combine these devices in different ways as I shall more specifically describe hereinafter.

The accompanying drawings to which I now refer in further illustration of my invention, are a series of diagrams illustrating, not the specific construction of the particular devices which I may or may not have used, but rather, the electrical connections and relations to be adopted in carrying out the present system by means of devices which are now well known.

Figure 1 is a diagram illustrating the method of operating the motors by inducing one of the energizing currents by the other. Fig. 2 is a similar diagram of the method of operating the motors where the two energizing currents are obtained by derivation from a single source. Fig. 3 is a modified application of this principle.

Referring to Fig. 1 let A represent the source of alternating currents which are to be utilized in operating the motor or motors. It will be understood that considered as a source of current it may be either a primary or secondary generator.

B B designate the conductors of the circuit which convey the alternating currents to one or more motors. The motor has two energizing circuits, or sets of coils CD. One of these circuits as C is connected directly with the circuit B. The other set of coils as D, is con-

5 nected up in the secondary circuit of an electrical transformer or induction coil T. The primary coil P of this transformer, is included in the circuit B. The alternations of current in the circuit B tend to establish in their passage through the coils C, a polarity at right angles to that set up by the coils D, and if the currents in the two sets of coils accorded in their phases, no rotary effect would be produced. But the secondary current developed in the coil P' of the transformer, will lag behind that in the primary which lag or retardation may be increased as I have shown in another application, to a sufficient extent to practically obtain the same result as though two independent alternating currents were used to energize the motor.

10 In Fig. 2 the two energizing circuits of the motor are shown connected in multiple arc to the circuit B B, and in one of these circuits is a resistance R. Assuming the two motor circuits to have the same self induction and resistance no rotary effect will be produced by the passage through them of an alternating current from the source A. But if one of the motor circuits, as C, be varied or modified by the introduction of a dead resistance R, the self-induction of that circuit or branch is reduced, and the phases of current therein retarded to a correspondingly less extent. The relative degrees of retardation of the phases of the current in the two motor circuits with respect to those of the unretarded current in the circuit B thus produced, will set up a rotation of the motor which may be practically utilized for many purposes.

15 In Fig. 3, the arrangement of the parts is similar to that shown in Fig. 2, except that a self-induction coil as S is introduced into one branch or energizing circuit of the motor. The effect of thus increasing the self-induction in one of the circuits is to retard the phases of the current passing therein to a

greater extent than in the other circuit, and in this way to secure the necessary difference in phase between the two energizing currents to produce the rotation of the motor. 45

In an application filed, of even date herewith, I have shown and described other ways of accomplishing this result, among which may be noted the introduction of a resistance capable of variation in each motor circuit, or the use of a resistance in one circuit and a self-induction coil in the other. 50

In the above description I have referred mainly to motors with two energizing circuits, but it is evident that the invention applies equally to those in which there are more than two of such circuits, the adaptation of the same being a matter well understood by those skilled in the art. 55 60

I do not claim in this application the specific devices employed by me in carrying out the invention, having made these the subjects of other applications. 65

What I claim herein is—

1. The method of operating motors having independent energizing circuits, as herein set forth, which consists in passing alternating currents through both of the said circuits and retarding the phases of the current in one circuit to a greater or less extent than in the other. 70

2. The method of operating motors having independent energizing circuits, as herein set forth, which consists in directing an alternating current from a single source through both circuits of the motor and varying or modifying the relative resistance or self-induction of the motor circuits and thereby producing in the currents differences of phase, as set forth. 75 80

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

FRANK E. HARTLEY,
FRANK B. MURPHY.

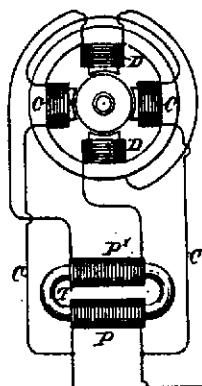
(No Model.)

N. TESLA.
ELECTRICAL TRANSMISSION OF POWER.

No. 511,559.

Patented Dec. 26, 1893.

Fig. 1



Generator:

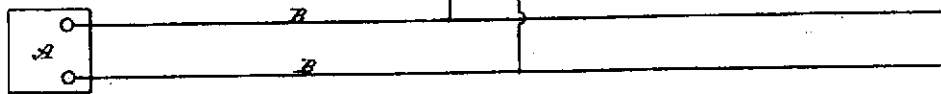


Fig. 2

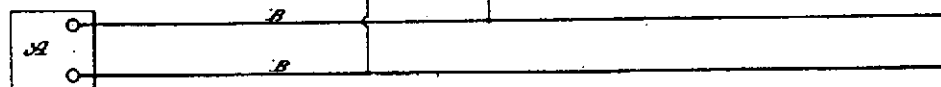
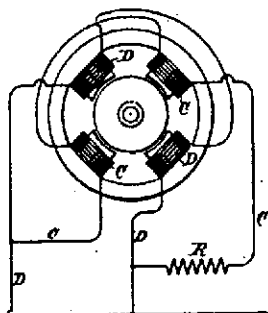
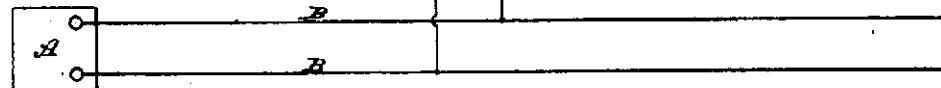
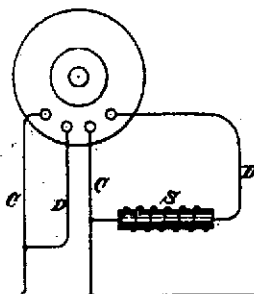


Fig. 3



WITNESSES:

Raphael Netter
Ernest Hopkinson

INVENTOR

Nikola Tesla

BY

Duncan, Curtis & Page

ATTORNEYS.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

NIKOLA TESLA, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO THE TESLA ELECTRIC COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

SYSTEM OF ELECTRICAL POWER TRANSMISSION.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 511,560, dated December 26, 1893.

Application filed December 8, 1888. Serial No. 293,052. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, NIKOLA TESLA, a subject of the Emperor of Austria-Hungary, from Smiljan, Lika, border country of Austria-Hungary, residing at New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Systems of Electrical Power Transmission, of which the following is a specification, reference being had to the drawings accompanying and forming a part of the same.

In certain patents heretofore granted, I have shown and described a system of electrical power transmission in which each motor contained two or more independent energizing circuits through which were caused to pass alternating currents having in each circuit such difference of phase that by their combined or resultant action they produced a rotary progression of the poles or points of maximum magnetic effect of the motor and thereby maintained the rotation of its movable element. In the system referred to and described in the said patents the production or generation of the alternating currents, upon the combined or resultant effect of which the operation of the system depends, is effected by the employment of an alternating current generator with independent induced circuits which, by reason of the winding or other construction of the generator, produces currents differing in phase, and these currents are conveyed directly from the generator to the corresponding motor coils by independent lines or circuits. I have, however, discovered that I may produce the same or a similar result by an alternating current from a single original source using between the generator and motors but one line or transmission circuit. Broadly stated, this system or method involves a source of alternating or equivalent currents, a single transmission circuit, a motor having independent energizing circuits connected with or adapted for connection with the transmission circuit, means for rendering the magnetic effects due to the energizing circuits of different phase, and an armature within the influence of the energizing circuits; the means for accomplishing this result being of such a nature as to retard the current in one energizing circuit to a greater

or less extent than in the other. The distribution of the main or original current through the two motor circuits may be effected by induction or by derivation. In other words, I may pass the alternating current from the source through one energizing circuit, and induce by such current a second current in the other energizing circuit. Or, on the other hand, I may connect up the two energizing circuits of the motor in derivation or multiple arc with the main circuit from the source. In either event I make due provision for maintaining a difference of phase between the currents in the two circuits or branches.

In an application filed by me May 15, 1888, Serial No. 273,993, I have shown and described the means which I have employed for securing this result by inducing one energizing current from the other.

My present application relates to the means employed when the two energizing currents are obtained from a single original source by derivation.

In explanation of what appears to be the principle of the operation of my invention and of the functions of the several instrumentalities comprised thereby, let it be assumed that the two energizing circuits of an alternating current motor, such, for example, as I have described in my Patent No. 382,280, dated May 1, 1888, are connected up in derivation or multiple arc with the conductors of a circuit including an alternating current generator. It is obvious that if both circuits are alike and offer the same resistance to the passage of the current no rotary effect will be produced, for although the periods of the currents in both circuits will lag or be retarded to a certain extent with respect to an unretarded current from the main circuit, their phases will coincide. If, however, the coils of one circuit have a greater number of convolutions around the cores, or a self induction coil be included in one of the circuits, the phases of the current in that circuit are retarded by the increased self induction. The degree of retardation may readily be secured by these means which will produce the difference in electrical phase between the two currents necessary for the practical operation of the motor. If in lieu of increasing the

self induction of one circuit a dead resistance be inserted, the self induction of such circuit exerts a correspondingly diminished effect, and the phases of the current flowing in that branch are brought more nearly in unison with those of an unretarded current from the main line and the necessary difference of phase between the currents in the two energizing circuits thus secured. I take advantage of these results in several ways. For example, I may insert variable resistances in both branches or energizing circuits and by varying one or the other so as to bring the phases of the two currents more or less in unison with those of the unretarded current, I may thus vary the direction of the rotation of the motor. In lieu of resistances I may employ variable self induction coils, in both circuits. Or I may use a resistance in one and a self induction coil in the other and vary either or both. This system or means of operating the motors is rendered of great practical value by employing an armature wound with energizing coils closed upon themselves, in which currents are induced by the alternating currents passing in the field coils that serve to greatly increase the mutual attractive effect between the armature and the field magnets. This use of the armature with closed coils I regard as an important feature of my invention. These several features of the invention I shall now describe more in detail by reference to the accompanying drawings.

Figure 1 is a diagram of the system in which the motor coils or energizing circuits are in derivation to the main line with a dead resistance inserted in one circuit. Fig. 2 is a diagram showing dead resistances in both motor circuits. Fig. 3 is a diagram showing a self induction coil in one motor circuit. Fig. 4 is a diagram showing a dead resistance in one circuit and a self induction coil in the other. Fig. 5 in like manner shows a self induction coil in each motor circuit. Fig. 6 is a diagram showing the two motor circuits of different electrical character. Fig. 7 is a diagram illustrating means for varying at will the electrical character of the motor circuits.

Referring to Fig. 1, A designates a suitable source of alternating currents and B B the line wires running therefrom. It will be understood that the generator A may be a primary or secondary generator, and the line B B may be the main transmission circuit or a local circuit from a transformer connected at any point in the line of a main or transmission circuit. For convenience in this case, it will be considered as a line from a given source of current to one or more motors. The motor contains a given number of pole pieces wound with two sets of coils C and D. The armature is wound with permanently closed energizing coils E in which currents are developed by inductive action when the motor is in operation which magnetize the armature core and greatly increase the effi-

ciency of the motor. Assuming the two motor circuits to have the same degree of self induction and resistance no rotary effect will be produced by the passage through them of an alternating current from the source A. But if in one of the motor circuits, as D, a dead resistance represented by R be introduced, the self induction of that circuit or branch is reduced and the phases of current therein retarded to a correspondingly less extent. The relative degrees of retardation of the phases of the current in the two motor circuits with respect to those of an unretarded current from the circuit B thus produced will set up a rotation of the motor which may be practically utilized for many purposes.

If, as in Fig. 2, a dead resistance R, R' be introduced into each motor circuit, no rotary effect will be produced as long as the resistances are equal, but by varying the resistance in one circuit the retardation of the current in that circuit will be varied, and corresponding effects produced. For example, a reduction of the resistance in one circuit imparts to the motor rotation in one direction while a reduction of the resistance in the other circuit will produce a rotation in the opposite direction. By means of the two resistances, therefore, capable of variation or of being bodily withdrawn from or inserted in the circuits by any well known means, a perfect regulation of the motors is secured.

In Fig. 3 the arrangement of all the parts is similar to that shown in Fig. 1 except that a self induction coil as S is introduced into one branch or energizing circuit of the motor. The effect of thus increasing the self induction in one of the circuits is to retard the phases of the current passing therein to a greater extent than in the other circuit and in this way to secure the necessary difference in phase between the two energizing currents to produce the rotation of the motor.

In Fig. 4 a self induction coil S is included in one of the motor circuits and a dead resistance R in the other. The increased self induction in one circuit thus produced acts to increase the difference of phase between the current in such motor circuit and the unretarded current in the main line B. On the other hand, the introduction of the dead resistance in the other motor circuit reduces the retardation and brings the phases of the current therein more closely in accord with those of the unretarded current, thus producing a correspondingly greater difference of phase between the two currents in the energizing circuits C and D.

In Fig. 5, two self induction coils S, S' are shown, one in each motor or energizing circuit. One of these coils as S' is much smaller than the other and has less self induction or counter electro motive force than the other, so that the phases of current will be retarded to a less extent than in the other. The two self induction coils may be of the same character or size if it is desired to use but one at

a time for the purpose of reversing the motor, or if they be constructed in well known ways so that they may be varied.

In Fig. 7 the usual means for varying the resistance or self-induction of the motor circuits at will are indicated by the lever M sliding over a series of resistance plates, and by a core N which is adapted to be moved in and out of the induction coil S.

Similar results may be secured by such a construction or organization of the motor as will yield the necessary differences of phase. For example, one set of energizing coils may be of finer wire than the other, or have a greater number of convolutions, or each circuit may contain the same number of convolutions, but composed of different conductors, as, for instance, one of copper, the other of German silver. I have represented this in Fig. 6, in which the coils C are indicated by closer lines than coils D.

There are other ways of varying the retardation due to the self induction in the two energizing circuits. For example, the motor coils may be all alike, but those of one energizing circuit connected in parallel while the others are connected in series, or the connection in each energizing circuit may be alike, but the currents directed through them may be of different strength, as when one of the currents is supplied from a source of higher electro-motive force.

In the above description I have referred mainly to motors with two energizing circuits, but it is evident that the invention applies equally to those in which there are more than two of such circuits, the adaptation of the same being a matter well understood by those skilled in the art.

In using in the claims the term active resistance as applied to the motor circuits in this case, it will be understood that the term refers to the opposing or retarding force existing in the circuits to the passage of the alternating currents. Thus, the two circuits may have the same dead resistance, but different degrees of self induction.

What I claim as my invention is—

1. The combination with a source of alternating currents, and a circuit from the same, of a motor having independent energizing circuits connected with the said circuit, and

means for rendering the magnetic effects due to said energizing circuits of different phase and an armature within the influence of said energizing circuits.

2. The combination with a source of alternating currents and a circuit from the same, of a motor having independent energizing circuits connected in derivation or multiple arc with the said circuit, the motor or energizing circuits being of different electrical character whereby the alternating currents therein will have a difference of phase, as set forth.

3.—The combination with a source of alternating currents and a circuit from the same, of a motor having independent energizing circuits connected in derivation or multiple arc with the said circuit and of different active resistance, as set forth.

4. In an alternating current motor, the combination with field magnets, of independent energizing circuits, adapted to be connected in multiple arc with the conductors of the line or transmission circuit and a resistance or self induction coil in one or both of the said motor circuits, as set forth.

5. In an alternating current motor, the combination with the field magnets or cores of independent energizing coils adapted to be connected in multiple arc with the line or transmission circuit, and a variable resistance or self induction coil included in one or both of the motor circuits as set forth.

6. In an alternating current motor, the combination with the field magnets or cores and independent energizing circuits of different active resistance and adapted to be connected with the line or transmission circuit, of an armature wound with closed energizing coils or conductors, as set forth.

7. The combination of a generator of alternating currents, a pair of mains connected thereto, a multiple circuit differential phase, and an electric motor having one circuit connected directly to said mains, and the other circuit connected to said mains through an interposed electro-motive phase-changing device adapted to change the time period of the currents passing through it.

NIKOLA TESLA.

Witnesses:

FRANK E. HARTLEY,
FRANK B. MURPHY.

It is hereby certified that in Letters Patent No. 511,560, granted December 26, 1893, upon the application of Nikola Tesla, of New York, N. Y., for an improvement in "Systems of Electrical Power Transmission," an error appears in the printed specification requiring correction, as follows: In line 95, page 3, the words "and an" should be stricken out; and that the said Letters Patent should be read with this correction therein that the same may conform to the record of the case in the Patent Office.

Signed and sealed this 9th day of June, A. D., 1903.

[SEAL.]

F. I. ALLEN,
Commissioner of Patents.

N. TESLA.

SYSTEM OF ELECTRICAL POWER TRANSMISSION.

No. 511,560.

Patented Dec. 26, 1893.

Fig. 1

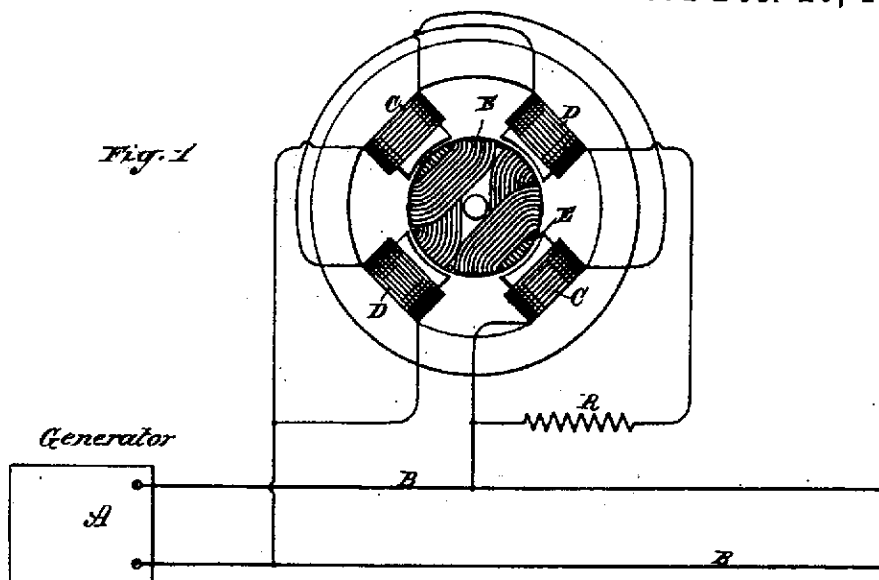
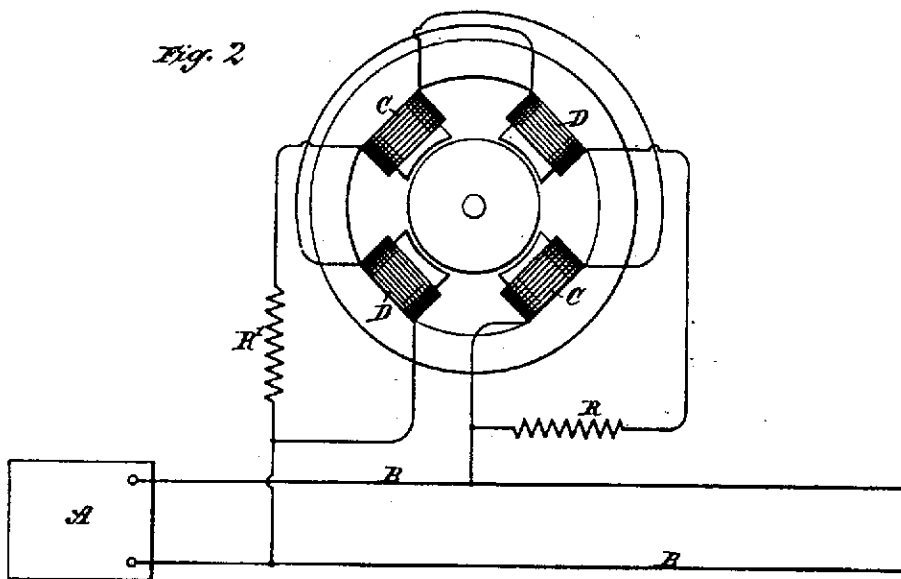


Fig. 2



WITNESSES:

Hopkiss, Nutter
Ernest Hopkinson

INVENTOR

Nikola Tesla

BY

Duncan, Curtis & Co.
ATTORNEYS.

N. TESLA.

SYSTEM OF ELECTRICAL POWER TRANSMISSION.

No. 511,560.

Patented Dec. 26, 1893.

Fig. 3

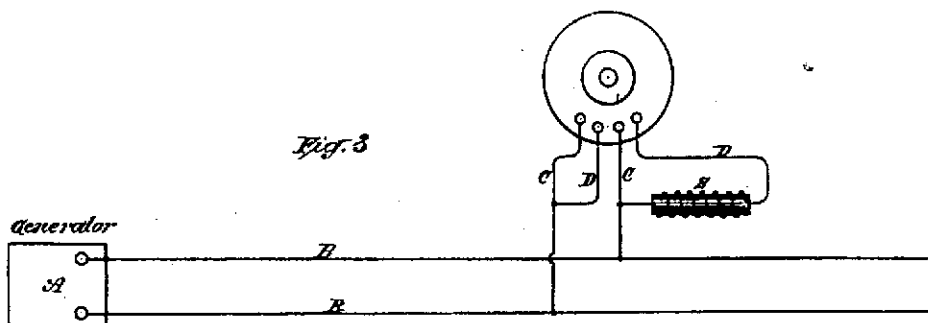


Fig. 4

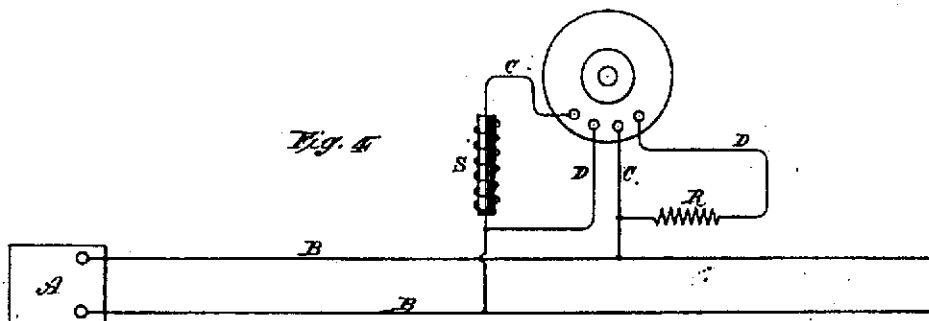


Fig. 5

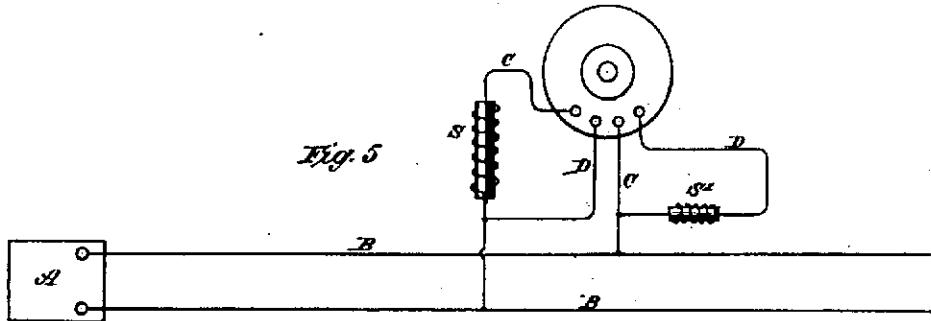
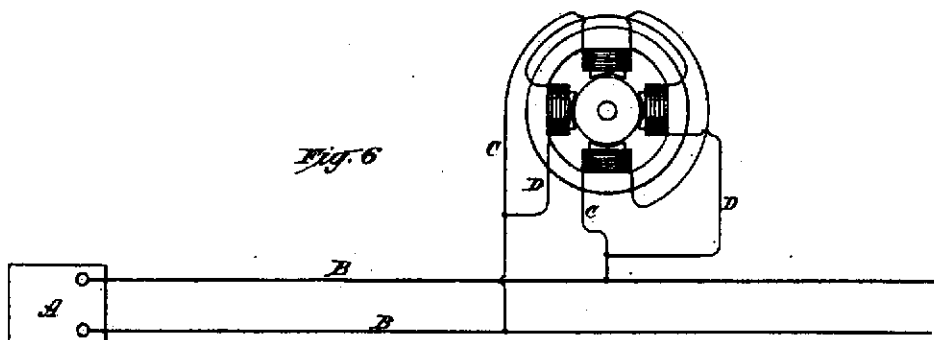


Fig. 6



WITNESSES:

Raphael Tetten

Ernest Hopkinson

INVENTOR

Nikola Tesla

BY

Duncan, Carter & Page

ATTORNEYS.

N. TESLA.

SYSTEM OF ELECTRICAL POWER TRANSMISSION.

No. 511,560.

Patented Dec. 26, 1893.

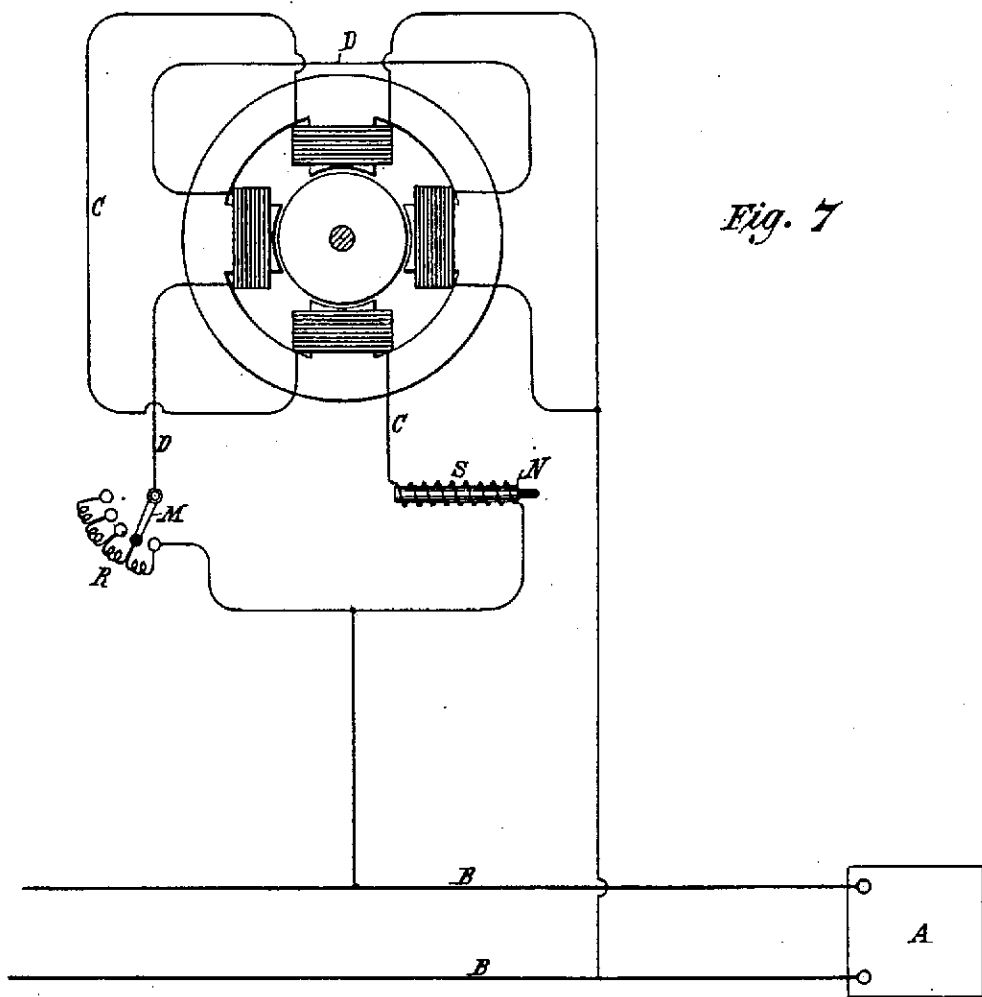


Fig. 7

WITNESSES

Raphael Netter
James H. Matthews

INVENTOR

Nikola Tesla
BY
Duncan & Page

ATTORNEYS.

[MORE FREE ENERGY RESOURCES](#)



[BECOME A MEMBER TODAY](#)